THE FOUR BOOKS

THE GREAT LEARNING

THE DOCTRINE OF THE MEAN

CONFUCIAN ANALECTS

THE WORKS OF MENCIUS

BY: JAMES LEGGE

THE INTERNATIONAL PUBLICATION SOCIETY
HONG KONG
GREAT LEARNING

My master, the philosopher Ch'ang, says: "The Great Learning is a Book transmitted by the Confucian School, and forms the gate by which first learners enter into virtue. That we can now perceive the order in which the ancients pursued their learning is solely owing to the preservation of this work, the Analects and Mencius coming after it. Learners must commence their course with this, and then it may be hoped they will be kept from error."

THE TEXT OF CONFUCIUS

1. 大學之道,在明明德,在親民;在止於至善。 2. 知止,而后有定,定而后能靜,靜而后能安,安而后能慮,慮而后能得。 3. 物有本末,事有終始,知所先後,則近道矣。 4. 古之欲明明德於天下者,先治其國,欲治其國者,先齊其家,欲齊其家者,先修其身,欲修其身者,先正其心,欲正其心者,先誠其意,欲誠其意者,先致其知,致知在格物。 5. 物格,而後知至,知至,而後意誠,意誠,而後心正,心正,而後身脩,身脩,而後家齊,家齊,而後國治,國治,而後天下平。 6. 自天子以至於庶人,壹是皆以脩身為本。 7. 其本亂而末治者否矣,其所厚者薄,而其所薄者厚,未之有也。
Chap. 1. 1. In the Announcement to K'ang, it is said, "He was able to make his virtue illustrious."

2. In the Tai Chia, it is said, "He contemplated and studied the illustrious decrees of Heaven."

3. In the Canon of the emperor (Yao), it is said, "He was able to make illustrious his lofty virtue."

4. These passages all show how those sovereigns made themselves illustrious.

The above first chapter of commentary explains the illustration of illustrious virtue.

Chap. 11. 1. On the bathing tub of T'ang, the following words were engraved: "If you can one day renovate yourself, do so from day to day. Yea, let there be daily renovation."

2. In the Announcement to K'ang, it is said, "To stir up the new people."
3. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "Although Chau was an ancient state, the ordinance which lighted on it was new."

4. Therefore, the superior man in every thing uses his utmost endeavors.

右傳之二章, 釋新民

The above second chapter of commentary explains the renovating of the people.

第三章 1. 詩云, 邦畿千里, 惟民所止。 2. 詩云, 絡織黃鳥,止於丘隅。子曰, 於止, 知其所止, 可以人而不如鳥乎。 3. 詩云, 窮蹙文王, 於緇熙敬止, 爲人君, 止於仁, 爲人臣, 止於敬, 爲人子, 止於孝, 人父, 止於慈, 人國人交, 止於信。 4. 詩云, 瞻彼淇澳, 蒹葭萋萋, 有斐君子, 如切如磋, 如琢如磨,瑟兮僈兮, 恽兮喧兮, 有斐君子, 終不可諷兮。如切如磋者,道學也, 如琢如磨者, 自修也, 愜兮僈兮者, 慎獨也, 恽兮喧兮者, 威儀也, 有斐君子, 終不可諷兮者, 道盛德至善,民之不能忘也。 5. 詩云, 於戲前王不忘, 君子賢其賢, 而親其親, 小人樂其所, 而利其利, 此以沒世不忘也。

Chap. III. 1. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "The royal domain of a thousand li is where the people rest."

2. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "The twittering yellow bird rests on a corner of the mound." The Master said, "When it rests, it knows where to rest. Is it possible that a man should not be equal to this bird?"

3. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "Profound was King Wan. With how bright
and unceasing a feeling of reverence did he regard his resting places!" As a sovereign, he rested in benevolence. As a minister, he rested in reverence. As a son, he rested in filial piety. As a father, he rested in kindness. In communication with his subjects, he rested in good faith.

4. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "Look at that winding course of the Ch'i, with the green bamboos so luxuriant! Here is our elegant and accomplished prince! As we cut and then file; as we chisel and then grind: so has he cultivated himself. How grave is he and dignified! How majestic and distinguished! Our elegant and accomplished prince never can be forgotten." That expression—"As we cut and then file," indicates the work of learning. "As we chisel and then grind," indicates that of self-culture. "How grave is he and dignified!" indicates the feeling of cautious reverence. "How commanding and distinguished!" indicates an awe-inspiring deportment. "Our elegant and accomplished prince never can be forgotten," indicates how, when virtue is complete and excellence extreme, the people cannot forget them.

5. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "Ah! the former kings are not forgotten." Future princes deem worthy what they deemed worthy,
and love what they loved. The common people delight in what delighted them, and are benefited by their beneficial arrangements. It is on this account that the former kings, after they have quit the world, are not forgotten.

The above third chapter of commentary explains resting in the highest excellence.

Chap. iv. The Master said, "In hearing litigations, I am like any other body. What is necessary to cause the people to have no litigations?" So, those who are devoid of principle find it impossible to carry out their speeches, and a great awe would be struck into men's minds:—this is called knowing the root.

The above fourth chapter of commentary explains the root and the issue.

Chap. v. 1. This is called knowing the root. 2. This is called the perfecting of knowledge.
The above fifth chapter of the commentary explained the meaning of "investigating things and carrying knowledge to the utmost extent," but it is now lost. I have ventured to take the views of the scholar Ch'ang to supply it, as follows: The meaning of the expression, "The perfecting of knowledge depends on the investigation of things," is this: If we wish to carry our knowledge to the utmost, we must investigate the principles of all things we come into contact with, for the intelligent mind of man is certainly formed to know, and there is not a single thing in which its principles do not inhere. But as long as all principles are not investigated, man's knowledge is incomplete. On this account, the Learning for Adults, at the outset of its lessons, instructs the learner, in regard to all things in the world, to proceed from what knowledge he has of their principles, and pursue his investigation of them, till he reaches the extreme point. After exerting himself in this way for a long time, he will suddenly find himself possessed of a wide and far-reaching penetration. Then, the qualities of all things, whether external or internal, the subtle or the coarse, will all be apprehended, and the mind, in its entire substance and its relations to things, will be perfectly intelligent. This is called the investigation of things. This is called the perfecting of knowledge.

第六章 1. 所謂誠其意者,毋自欺也,如惡惡臭,如好好色,此之謂自誠,故君子必慎其獨也。 2. 小人聞之不善,無所不至,見君子,而后厭然,撫其不善,而著其善,人之見己,如見其肺肝然,則何益矣,此謂誠於中,形於外,故君子必慎其獨也。 3. 曾子曰,十目所視,十手所指,其嚴乎。 4. 畔潤屋,德潤身,心廣體胖,故君子必誠其意。  

Chap. vi. 1. What is meant by "making the
thoughts sincere," is the allowing no self-deception, as when we hate a bad smell, and as when we love what is beautiful. This is called self-enjoyment. Therefore, the superior man must be watchful over himself when he is alone.

2. There is no evil to which the mean man, dwelling retired, will not proceed, but when he sees a superior man, he instantly tries to disguise himself, concealing his evil, and displaying what is good. The other beholds him, as if he saw his heart and reins;—of what use is his disguise? This is an instance of the saying—"What truly is within will be manifested without." Therefore, the superior man must be watchful over himself when he is alone.

3. The disciple Tsang said,"What ten eyes behold, what ten hands point to, is to be regarded with reverence!"

4. Riches adorn a house, and virtue adorns the person. The mind is expanded, and the body is at ease. Therefore, the superior man must make his thoughts sincere.

The above sixth chapter of commentary explains making the thoughts sincere.
Chap. vii. 1. What is meant by, "The cultivation of the person depends on rectifying the mind," may be thus illustrated:—If a man be under the influence of passion, he will be incorrect in his conduct. He will be the same, if he is under the influence of terror, or under the influence of fond regard, or under, that of sorrow and distress.

2. When the mind is not present, we look and do not see; we hear and do not understand; we eat and do not know the taste of what we eat.

3. This is what is meant by saying that the cultivation of the person depends on the rectifying of the mind.
they feel affection and love; partial where they despise and dislike; partial where they stand in awe and reverence; partial where they feel sorrow and compassion; partial where they are arrogant and rude. Thus it is that there are few men in the world who love and at the same time know the bad qualities of the object of their love, or who hate and yet know the excellences of the object of their hatred.

2. Hence it is said, in the common adage, “A man does not know the wickedness of his son; he does not know the richness of his growing corn.”

3. This is what is meant by saying that if the person be not cultivated, a man cannot regulate his family.

The above eighth chapter of commentary explains cultivating the person and regulating the family.
Chap. ix. 1. What is meant by “In order rightly to govern the state, it is necessary first to regulate the family,” is this:—It is not possible for one to teach others, while he cannot teach his own family. Therefore, the ruler, without going beyond his family, completes the lessons for the state. There is filial piety:—therewith the sovereign should be served. There is fraternal submission:—therewith elders and superiors should be served. There is kindness:—therewith the multitude should be treated.

2. In the Announcement to K’ang, it is said, “Act as if you were watching over an infant.” If (a mother) is really anxious about it, though she may not hit exactly the wants of her infant, she will not be far from doing so. There never has been a girl who learned to bring up a child, that she might afterwards marry

3. From the loving example of one family a whole state becomes loving, and from its courtesies the whole state become courteous, while, from the ambition and perverseness of
the One man, the whole state may be led to rebellious disorder;—such is the nature of the influence. This verifies the saying, “Affairs may be ruined by a single sentence; a kingdom may be settled by its One man.”

4. Yao and shum led on the kingdom with benevolence, and the people followed them. Chieh and Chau led on the kingdom with violence, and the people followed them. The orders which these issued were contrary to the practices which they loved, and so the people did not follow them. On this account, the ruler must himself be possessed of the good qualities, and then he may require them in the people. He must not have the bad qualities in himself, and then he may require that they shall not be in the people. Never has there been a man, who, not having reference to his own character and wishes in dealing with others, was able effectually to instruct them.

5. Thus we see how the government of the state depends on the regulation of the family.

6. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, “That peach tree, so delicate and elegant! How luxuriant is its foliage! This girl is going to her husband’s house. She will rightly order her household.” Let the household be rightly ordered, and then the people of the state may be taught.
7. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, “They can discharge their duties to their elder brothers. They can discharge their duties to their younger brothers.” Let the ruler discharge his duties to his elder and younger brothers, and then he may teach the people of the state.

8. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, “In his deportment there is nothing wrong; he rectifies all the people of the state.” Yes; when the ruler, as a father, a son, and a brother, is a model, then the people imitate him.

9. This is what is meant by saying, “The government of his kingdom depends on his regulation of the family.”

右傳之九章，釋齊家治國。

The above ninth chapter of commentary explains regulating the family and governing the kingdom.

第十章

1. 所謂平天下，在治其國者，上老老，而民興孝，上長長，而民興弟，上恤孤，而民不倍，是以君子，有絜矩之道也。2. 所惡於上，毋以使下，所惡於下，毋以事上，所惡於前，毋以先後，所惡於後，毋以從前，所惡於右，毋以交於左，所惡於左，毋以交於右，此之謂絜矩之道。3. 詩云，桀只君子，民之父母，民之所好好之，民之所惡惡之。此之謂民之父母。4. 詩云，節彼南山，維石巖巖，赫赫師尹，民具爾瞻，有國者，不可以不懼，辟，則為天下僇矣。5. 詩云，殷之末喪師，克配上帝，儀肅于殷，峻命不易，道得衆，則得國，失衆，則失國。6. 是故君子，先懼乎德，有德，此有人，
Chap. x. 1. What is meant by “The making the whole kingdom peaceful and happy de-
pends on the government of his state," is this:— When the sovereign behaves to his aged, as the aged should be behaved to, the people become filial; when the sovereign behaves to his elders, as the elders should be behaved to, the people learn brotherly submission; when the sovereign treats compassionately the young and helpless, the people do the same. Thus the ruler has a principle with which, as with a measuring square, he may regulate his conduct.

2. What a man dislikes in his superiors, let him not display in the treatment of his inferiors; what he dislikes in inferiors, let him not display in the service of his superiors; what he hates in those who are before him, let him not therewith precede those who are behind him; what he hates in those who are behind him, let him not therewith follow those who are before him; what he hates to receive on the right, let him not bestow on the left; what he hates to receive on the left, let him not bestow on the right:—this is what is called "The principle with which, as with a measuring square, to regulate one's conduct."

3. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "How much to be rejoiced in are these princes, the parents of the people!" When a prince loves what the people love, and hates what the people
hate, then is he what is called the parent of the people.

4. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "Lofty is that southern hill; with its rugged masses of rocks! Greatly distinguished are you, O grand-teacher Yin, the people all look up to you." Rulers of states may not neglect to be careful. If they deviate to a mean selfishness, they will be a disgrace in the kingdom.

5. In the Book of Poetry, it is said, "Before the sovereigns of the Yin dynasty had lost the hearts of the people, they could appear before God. Take warning from the house of Yin. The great decree is not easily preserved." This shows that, by gaining the people, the kingdom is gained, and, by losing the people, the kingdom is lost.

6. On this account, the ruler will first take pains about his own virtue. Possessing virtue will give him the people. Possessing the people will give him the territory. Possessing the territory will give him its wealth. Possessing the wealth, he will have resources for expenditure.

7. Virtue is the root; wealth is the result.

8. If he make the root his secondary object, and the result his primary, he will only wrangle with his people, and teach them rapine.
9. Hence, the accumulation of wealth is the way to scatter the people; and the letting it be scattered among them is the way to collect the people.

10. And hence, the ruler's words going forth contrary to right, will come back to him in the same way, and wealth, gotten by improper ways, will take its departure by the same.

11. In the Announcement to K'ang, it is said, "The decree indeed may not always rest on us;" that is, goodness obtains the decree, and the want of goodness loses it.

12. In the Book of Ch'u, it is said, "The kingdom of Ch'u does not consider that to be valuable. It values, instead, its good men."

13. Duke Wan's uncle, Fan, said, "Our fugitive does not account that to be precious. What he considers precious is the affection due to his parent."

14. In the Declaration of the duke of Ch'in, it is said, "Let me have but one minister, plain and sincere, not pretending to other abilities, but with a simple, upright, mind; and possessed of generosity, regarding the talents of others as if he himself possessed them, and; where he finds accomplished and perspicacious men, loving them in his heart more than his
mouth expresses, and really showing himself able to bear them and employ them:—such a minister will be able to preserve my sons and grandsons and black-haired people, and benefits likewise to the kingdom may well be looked for from him. But if it be his character, when he finds men of ability, to be jealous and hate them; and, when he finds accomplished and perspicacious men, to oppose them and not allow their advancement, showing himself really not able to bear them:—such a minister will not be able to protect my sons and grandsons and black-haired people; and may he not also be pronounced dangerous to the state?"

15. It is only the truly virtuous man who can send away such a man and banish him, driving him out among the barbarous tribes around, determined not to dwell along with him in the Middle Kingdom. This is in accordance with the saying, "It is only the truly virtuous man who can love or who can hate others."

16. To see men of worth and not be able to raise them to office; to raise them to office, but not to do so quickly:—this is disrespectful. To see bad men and not be able to remove them; to remove them, but not to do so to a distance:—this is weakness.
17. To love those whom men hate, and to hate those whom men love;—this is to outrage the natural feeling of men. Calamities cannot fail to come down on him who does so.

18. Thus we see that the sovereign has a great course to pursue. He must show entire self-devotion and sincerity to attain it, and by pride and extravagance he will fail of it.

19. There is a great course also for the production of wealth. Let the producers be many and the consumers few. Let there be activity in the production, and economy in the expenditure. Then the wealth will always be sufficient.

20. The virtuous ruler, by means of his wealth, makes himself more distinguished. The vicious ruler accumulates wealth, at the expense of his life.

21. Never has there been a case of the sovereign loving benevolence, and the people not loving righteousness. Never has there been a case where the people have loved righteousness, and the affairs of the sovereign have not been carried to completion. And never has there been a case where the wealth in such a state, collected in the treasuries and arsenals, did not continue in the sovereign's possession.

22. The officer Mang Hsien said: "He who keeps horses and a carriage does not look after
fowls and pigs. The family which keeps its stores of ice does not rear cattle or sheep. So, the house which possesses a hundred chariots should not keep a minister to look out for imposts that he may lay them on the people. Than to have such a minister, it were better for that house to have one who should rob it of its revenues.” This is in accordance with the saying:—“In a state, pecuniary gain is not to be considered to be prosperity, but its prosperity will be found in righteousness.”

23. When he who presides over a state or a family makes his revenues his chief business, he must be under the influence of some small, mean man. He may consider this man to be good, but when such a person is employed in the administration of a state or family, calamities from Heaven, and injuries from men, will befall it together, and, though a good man may take his place, he will not be able to remedy the evil. This illustrates again the saying, “In a state, gain is not to be considered prosperity, but its prosperity will be found in righteousness.”
The above tenth chapter of commentary explains the government of the state, and the making the kingdom peaceful and happy.

There are thus, in all, ten chapters of commentary, the first four of which discuss, in a general manner, the scope of the principal topic of the Work; while the other six go particularly into an exhibition of the work required in its subordinate branches. The fifth chapter contains the important subject of comprehending true excellence, and the sixth, what is the foundation of the attainment of true sincerity. Those two chapters demand the especial attention of the learner. Let not the reader despise them because of their simplicity.
My master, the philosopher Ch'ang, says—"Being without inclination to either side is called CHUNG; admitting of no change is called YUNG. By CHUNG is denoted the correct course to be pursued by all under heaven; by YUNG is denoted the fixed principle regulating all under heaven. This work contains the law of the mind, which was handed down from one to another, in the Confucian school, till Tsze-sze; fearing lest in the course of time errors should arise about it, committed it to writing, and delivered it to Mencius. The Book first speaks of one principle; it next spreads this out, and embraces all things; finally, it returns and gathers them all up under the one principle. Unroll it, and it fills the universe; roll it up, and it retires and lies hid in mysteriousness. The relish of it is inexhaustible. The whole of it is solid learning. When the skillful reader has explored it with delight till he has apprehended it, he may carry it in to practice all his life, and will find that it cannot be exhausted."
Chap. 1. 1. What Heaven has conferred is called THE NATURE; an accordance with this nature is called THE PATH of duty the regulation of this path is called INSTRUCTION.

2. The path may not be left for an instant. If it could be left, it would not be the path. On this account, the superior man does not wait till he sees things, to be cautious, nor till he hears things, to be apprehensive.

3. There is nothing more visible than what is secret, and nothing more manifest than what is minute. Therefore the superior man is watchful over himself, when he is alone.

4. While there are no stirrings of pleasure anger, sorrow, or joy, the mind may be said to be in the state of EQUILIBRIUM. When those feelings have been stirred, and they act in their due degree, there ensues what may be called the state of HARMONY. This EQUILIBRIUM is the great root from which grow all the human actings in the world, and this HARMONY is the universal path which they all should pursue.

5. Let the states of equilibrium and harmony exist in perfection, and a happy order will
prevail throughout heaven and earth, and all things will be nourished and flourish.

右第一章, 子思述所傳之意, 以立言, 首明道之本原出於天, 而不可易, 其實體備於己, 而不可離, 次言存養省察之要, 終言聖神功化之極, 蓋欲學者於此, 反求諸身, 而自得之, 以去夫外誘之私, 並其本然之善, 楊氏所謂一篇之體要者也, 其下十章, 蓋子思引夫子之言, 以終此章之義.

In the first chapter, which is given above, Tsze-sze states the views which had been handed down to him, as the basis of his discourse. First, it shows clearly how the path of duty is to be traced to its origin in Heaven, and is unchangeable, while the substance of it is provided in ourselves, and may not be departed from. Next, it speaks of the importance of preserving and nourishing this, and of exercising a watchful self-scrutiny with reference to it. Finally, it speaks of the meritorious achievements and transforming influence of sage and spiritual men in their highest extent. The wish of Tsze-sze was that hereby the learner should direct his thoughts inwards, and by searching in himself, there find these truths, so that he might put aside all outward temptations appealing to his selfishness, and fill up the measure of the goodness which is natural to him. This chapter is what the writer Yang called it—"The sum of the whole work." In the ten chapters which follow, Tsze-sze quotes the words of the Master to complete the meaning of this.

章第二章 1. 仲尼曰, 君子中庸, 小人反中庸. 2. 君子之中庸也, 君子而時中. 小人之中庸也, 小人而無忌憚也.

Chap. II. 1. Chung-ni said, "The superior man embodies the course of the Mean; the mean man acts contrary to the course of the course of the Mean.

2. "The superior man's embodying the course of the Mean is because he is a superior
man, and so always maintains the Mean. The mean man's acting contrary to the course of the Mean is because he is a mean man, and has no caution."

第一章 子曰,中庸其至矣乎,民鮮能久矣。

Chap. III. The Master said, "Perfect is the virtue which is according to the Mean! Rare have they long been among the people, who could practice it!"

第四章 1 子曰,道之不行也,我知之矣,知者過之,愚者不及也。道之不明也,我知之矣,賢者過之,不肖者不及也。2. 人莫不飲食也,鮮能知味也。

Chap. IV. 1. The Master said, "I know how it is that the path of the Mean is not walked in:---The knowing go beyond it, and the stupid do not come up to it. I know how it is that the path of the Mean is not understood:—The men of talents and virtue go beyond it, and the worthless do not come up to it.

2. "There is no body but eats and drinks. But they are few who can distinguish flavors."

第五章 子曰,道其不行矣夫。

Chap. V. The Master said, "Alas! How is the path of the Mean untrodden!"

第六章 子曰,舜其大知也與,舜好問,而好察過言,隱惡而揚善,執其兩端,用其中於民,其斯以爲舜乎。
Chap. vi. The Master said, "There was Shun:—He indeed was greatly wise! Shun loved to question others, and to study their words, though they might be shallow. He concealed what was bad in them, and displayed what was good. He took hold of their two extremes, determined the Mean, and employed it in his government of the people. It was by this that he was Shun!"

Chap. vii. The Master said, "Men all say, 'We are wise'; but being driven forward and taken in a net, a trap, or a pitfall, they know not how to escape. Men all say, 'We are wise'; but happening to choose the course of the Mean, they are not able to keep it for a round month."

Chap. viii. The Master said, "This was the manner of Hui:—he made choice of the Mean, and whenever he got hold of what was good, he clasped it firmly, as if wearing it on his breast, and did not lose it."

Chap. ix. The Master said, "This was the manner of T'ang:—he made choice of the Mean, and whenever he got hold of what was good, he clasped it firmly, as if wearing it on his breast, and did not lose it."
Chap. IX. The Master said, "The kingdom, its states, and its families, may be perfectly ruled; dignities and emoluments may be declined; naked weapons may be trampled under the feet;—but the course of the Mean cannot be attained to."

第十一章 1. 子路問強。 2. 子曰,南方之強與,北方之強與,抑而強與。 3. 寬柔以教,不報無道,南方之強也,君子居之。 4. 祕金革,死而不厭,北方之強也,而強者居之。 5. 故君子,和而不流,強哉嘗,中立而不倚,強哉嘗,國有道,不變塞焉,強哉嘗,國無道,至死不變,強哉嘗。

Chap. X. 1. Tsze-lu asked about energy.

2. The Master said, "Do you mean the energy of the South, the energy of the North, or the energy which you should cultivate yourself?

3. "To show forbearance and gentleness in teaching others; and not to revenge unreasonable conduct:—this is the energy of southern regions, and the good man makes it his study.

4. "To lie under arms; and meet death without regret:—this is the energy of northern regions, and the forceful make it their study.

5. "Therefore, the superior man cultivates a friendly harmony, without being weak.—How firm is he in his energy! He stands erect in the middle, without inclining to either
side.—How firm is he in his energy! When good principles prevail in the government of his country, he does not change from what he was in retirement.—How firm is he in his energy! When bad principles prevail in the country, he maintains his course to death without changing.—How firm is he in his energy!"

第一章 1. 子曰, 素隱, 行怪, 後世有述焉, 吾弗為之矣。2. 君子遵道而行, 半途而廢, 吾弗能已矣。3. 君子依乎中庸, 遥世不見知, 而不悔, 唯聖者能之。

Chap. XI. 1. The Master said, “To live in obscurity, and yet practice wonders, in order to be mentioned with honor in future ages:—this is what I do not do.

2. “The good man tries to proceed according to the right path, but when he has gone halfway, he abandons it:—I am not able so to stop.

3. “The superior man accords with the course of the Mean. Though he may be all unknown, unregarded by the world, he feels no regret.—It is only the sage who is able for this.”

第十二章 1. 君子之道, 饋而隱。2. 夫婦之道, 可以與知焉。及其至也, 雖聖人亦有所不知焉。夫婦之不肖, 可以能行。及其至也, 雖聖人亦有所不能焉。天地之大也, 人猶有
Chap. xii

1. The way which the superior man pursues, reaches wide and far, and yet is secret.

2. Common men and women, however ignorant, may intermeddle with the knowledge of it; yet in its utmost reaches, there is that which even the sage does not know. Common men and women, however much below the ordinary standard of character, can carry it into practice; yet in its utmost reaches, there is that which even the sage is not able to carry into practice. Great as heaven and earth are, men still find some things in them with which to be dissatisfied. Thus it is that, were the superior man to speak of his way in all its greatness, nothing in the world would be found able to embrace it, and were he to speak of it in its minuteness, nothing in the world would be found able to split it.

3. It is said in the Book of Poetry, "The hawk flies up to heaven; the fishes leap in the deep." This expresses how this way is seen above and below.

4. The way of the superior man may be found, in its simple elements, in the intercourse
of common men and women; but in its utmost reaches, it shines brightly through heaven and earth.

The twelfth chapter above contains the words of Tsze-sze, and is designed to illustrate what is said in the first chapter, that "The path may not be left." In the eight chapters which follow, he quotes, in a miscellaneous way, the words of Confucius to illustrate it.

Chap. xiii. 1. The Master said, "The path is not far from man. When men try to pursue a course, which is far from the common indications of consciousness, this course cannot be considered THE PATH.

2. "In the Book of Poetry, it is said, 'In hewing an ax handle, in hewing an ax handle, the pattern is not far off.' We grasp one ax handle to hew the other; and yet, if we look askance from the one to the other, we may
consider them as apart. Therefore, the superior man governs men, according to their nature, with what is proper to them, and as soon as they change what is wrong, he stops.

3. "When one cultivates to the utmost the principles of his nature, and exercises them on the principle of reciprocity, he is not far from the path. What you do not like when done to yourself, do not do to others.

4. "In the way of the superior man there are four things, to not one of which have I as yet attained.—To serve my father, as I would require my son to serve me: to this I have not attained; to serve my prince, as I would require my minister to serve me: to this I have not attained; to serve my elder brother, as I would require my younger brother to serve me: to this I have not attained; to set the example in behaving to a friend, as I would require him to behave to me; to this I have not attained. Earnest in practicing the ordinary virtues, and careful in speaking about them, if, in his practice, he has anything defective, the superior man dares not but exert himself; and if, in his words, he has any excess, he dares not allow himself such license. Thus his words have respect to his actions, and his actions have respect to his words; is it not just an entire sincerity which marks the superior man?"
Chap. xiv. 1. The superior man does what is proper to the station in which he is; he does not desire to go beyond this.

2. In a position of wealth and honor, he does what is proper to a position of wealth and honor. In a poor and low position, he does what is proper to a poor and low position. Situated among barbarous tribes, he does what is proper to a situation among barbarous tribes. In a position of sorrow and difficulty, he does what is proper to a position of sorrow and difficulty. The superior man can find himself in no situation in which he is not himself.

3. In a high situation, he does not treat with contempt his inferiors. In a low situation, he does not court the favor of his superiors. He rectifies himself, and seeks for nothing from others, so that he has no dissatisfactions. He does not murmur against Heaven, nor grumble against men.

4. Thus it is that the superior man is quiet and calm, waiting for the appointments of
Heaven, while the mean man walks in dangerous paths, looking for lucky occurrences.

5. The Master said, "In archery we have something like the way of the superior man. When the archer misses the center of the target, he turns round and seeks for the cause of his failure in himself."

Chap. xv. 1. The way of the superior man may be compared to what takes place in traveling, when to go to a distance we must first traverse the space that is near, and in ascending a height, when we must begin from the lower ground.

2. It is said in the Book of Poetry, "Happy union with wife and children is like the music of lutes and harps. When there is concord among brethren, the harmony is delightful and enduring. Thus may you regulate your family, and enjoy the pleasure of your wife and children."

3. The Master said, "In such a state of things, parents have entire complacency!"
Chap. xvi. 1. The Master said, "How abundantly do spiritual beings display the powers that belong to them!

2. "We look for them, but do not see them; we listen to, but do not hear them; yet they enter into all things, and there is nothing without them.

3. "They cause all the people in the kingdom to fast and purify themselves, and array themselves in their richest dresses, in order to attend at their sacrifices. Then, like overflowing water, they seem to be over the heads, and on the right and left of their worshipers.

4. "It is said in the Book of Poetry, 'The approaches of the spirits, you cannot surmise; —and can you treat them with indifference?'

5. "Such is the manifestness of what is minute! Such is the impossibility of repressing the outgoings of sincerity!"
Chap. xvii. 1. The Master said, "How greatly filial was Shun! His virtue was that of a sage; his dignity was the throne; his riches were all within the four seas. He offered his sacrifices in his ancestral temple, and his descendants preserved the sacrifices to himself.

2. "Therefore having such great virtue, it could not but be that he should obtain the throne, that he should obtain those riches, that he should obtain his fame, that he should attain to his long life.

3. "Thus it is that Heaven, in the production of things, is sure to be bountiful to them, according to their qualities. Hence the tree that is flourishing, it nourishes, while that which is ready to fall, it overthrows.

4. "In the Book of Poetry, it is said. 'The admirable, amiable prince displayed conspicuously his Excelling virtue. adjusting his people, and adjusting his officers. Therefore, be received from Heaven the emoluments of dignity. It protected him, assisted him, decreed him the throne; sending from Heaven these favors, as it were repeatedly.'

5. "We may say therefore that he who is greatly virtuous will be sure to receive the appointment of Heaven."
Chap.  XVIII.  1.  The Master said, "It is only King Wan of whom it can be said that he had no cause for grief! His father was King Chi, and his son was King Wu. His father laid the foundations of his dignity, and his son transmitted it.

2. "King Wu continued the enterprise of King T'ai, King Chi, and King Wan. He once buckled on his armor, and got possession of the kingdom. He did not lose the distinguished personal reputation which he had throughout the kingdom. His dignity was the royal throne. His riches were the possession of all within the four seas. He offered his sacrifices in his ancestral temple, and his descendants maintained the sacrifices to himself.

3. "It was in his old age that King Wu received the appointment to the throne, and the duke of Chau completed the virtuous course of Wan and Wu. He carried up the title of
king to T'ai and Chí, and sacrificed to all the former dukes above them with the royal ceremonies. And this rule he extended to the princes of the kingdom, the great officers, the scholars, and the common people. If the father were a great officer and the son a scholar, then the burial was that due to a great officer, and the sacrifice that due to a scholar. If the father were a scholar and the son a great officer, then the burial was that due to a scholar, and the sacrifice that due to a great officer. The one year's mourning was made to extend only to the great officers, but the three years' mourning extended to the Son of Heaven. In the mourning for a father or mother, he allowed no difference between the noble and the mean.'
2. "Now filial piety is seen in the skillful carrying out of the wishes of our forefathers, and the skillful carrying forward of their undertakings.

3. "In spring and autumn, they repaired and beautified the temple halls of their fathers, set forth their ancestral vessels, displayed their various robes, and presented the offerings of the several seasons.

4. "By means of the ceremonies of the ancestral temple, they distinguished the royal kindred according to their order of descent. By ordering the parties present according to their rank, they distinguished the more noble and the less. By the arrangement of the services, they made a distinction of talents and worth. In the ceremony of general pledging, the inferiors presented the cup to their superiors, and thus something was given the lowest to do. At the concluding feast, places were given according to the hair, and thus was made the distinction of years.

5. "They occupied the places of their forefathers, practiced their ceremonies, and performed their music. They reverenced those whom they honored, and loved those whom they regarded with affection. Thus they served the dead as they would have served them alive:
they served the departed as they would have served them had they been continued among them.

6. "By the ceremonies of the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth they served God, and by the ceremonies of the ancestral temple they sacrificed to their ancestors. He who understands the ceremonies of the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth, and the meaning of the several sacrifices to ancestors, would find the government of a kingdom as easy as to look into his palm!"
Chap. xx. 1. The duke Ai asked about government.
2. The Master said, "The government of Wan and Wu is displayed in the records,—the tablets of wood and bamboo. Let there be the men and the government will flourish; but without the men, their government decays and ceases.

3. "With the right men the growth of government is rapid, just as vegetation is rapid in the earth; and, moreover, their government might be called an easilygrowing rush.

4. "Therefore the administration of government lies in getting proper men. Such men are to be got by means of the ruler's own character. That character is to be cultivated by his treading in the ways of duty. And the treading those ways of duty is to be cultivated by the cherishing of benevolence.

5. "Benevolence is the characteristic element of humanity, and the great exercise of it is in loving relatives. Righteousness is the accordance of actions with what is right, and the great exercise of it is in honoring the worthy. The decreasing measures of the love due to relatives, and the steps in the honor due to the worthy, are produced by the principle of propriety.

6. "When those in inferior situations do not possess the confidence of their superiors, they cannot retain the government of the people."
"Hence the sovereign may not neglect the cultivation of his own character. Wishing to cultivate his character, he may not neglect to serve his parents. In order to serve his parents, he may not neglect to acquire a knowledge of men. In order to know men, he may not dispense with a knowledge of Heaven.

S. "The duties of universal obligation are five, and the virtues wherewith they are practiced are three. The duties are those between sovereign and minister, between father and son, between husband and wife, between elder brother and younger, and those belonging to the intercourse of friends. Those five are the duties of universal obligation. Knowledge, magnanimity, and energy, these three, are the virtues universally binding. And the means by which they carry the duties into practice is singleness.

9. "Some are born with the knowledge of those duties; some know them by study; and some acquire the knowledge after a painful feeling of their ignorance. But the knowledge being possessed, it comes to the same thing. Some practice them with a natural ease; some from a desire for their advantages; and some by strenuous effort. But the achievement being made, it comes to the same thing."
10 The Master said, "To be fond of learning is to be near to knowledge. To practice with vigor is to be near to magnanimity. To possess the feeling of shame is to be near to energy.

11. "He who knows these three things knows how to cultivate his own character. Knowing how to cultivate his own character, he knows how to govern other men. Knowing how to govern other men, he knows how to govern the kingdom with all its states and families.

12. "All who have the government of the kingdom with its states and families have nine standard rules to follow;—viz., the cultivation of their own characters; the honoring of men of virtue and talents; affection towards their relatives; respect towards the great ministers; kind and considerate treatment of the whole body of officers; dealing with the mass of the people as children; encouraging the resort of all classes of artisans; indulgent treatment of men from a distance; and the kindly cherishing of the princes of the states.

13. "By the ruler's cultivation of his own character, the duties of universal obligation are set forth. By honoring men of virtue and talents, he is preserved from errors of judg-
ment. By showing affection to his relatives, there is no grumbling nor resentment among his uncles and brethren. By respecting the great ministers, he is kept from errors in the practice of government. By kind and considerate treatment of the whole body of officers, they are led to make the most grateful return for his courtesies. By dealing with the mass of the people as his children, they are led to exhort one another to what is good. By encouraging the resort of all classes of artisans, his resources for expenditure are rendered ample. By indulgent treatment of men from a distance, they are brought to resort to him from all quarters. And by kindly cherishing the princes of the states, the whole kingdom is brought to revere him.

14. "Self-adjustment and purification, with careful regulation of his dress, and the not making a movement contrary to the rules of propriety:—this is the way for a ruler to cultivate his person. Discarding slanderers, and keeping himself from the seductions of beauty; making light of riches, and giving honor to virtue:—this is the way for him to encourage men of worth and talents. Giving them places of honor and large emolument, and sharing with them in their likes and dislikes:—this is the way for him to encourage
his relatives, to love him. Giving them numerous officers to discharge their orders and commissions:—this is the way for him to encourage the great ministers. According to them a generous confidence, and making their emoluments large:—this is the way to encourage the body of officers. Employing them only at the proper times, and making the imposts light:—this is the way to encourage the people. By daily examinations and monthly trials, and by making their rations in accordance with their labors:—this is the way to encourage the classes of artisans. To escort them on their departure and meet them on their coming; to commend the good among them, and show compassion to the incompetent:—this is the way to treat indulgently men from a distance. To restore families whose line of succession has been broken, and to revive states that have been extinguished; to reduce to order states that are in confusion, and support those which are in peril, to have fixed times for their own reception at court, and the reception of their envoys. to send them away after liberal treatment, and welcome their coming with small contributions:—this is the way to cherish the princes of the states.

15 "All who have the government of the kingdom with its states and families have the
above nine standard rules. And the means by which they are carried into practice if singleness.

16. "In all things success depends on previous preparation, and without such previous preparation there is sure to be failure. If what is to be spoken be previously determined, there will be no stumbling. If affairs be previously determined, there will be no difficulty with them. If one's actions have been previously determined, there will be no sorrow in connection with them. If principles of conduct have been previously determined, the practice of them will be inexhaustible.

17. "When those in inferior situations do not obtain the confidence of the sovereign, they cannot succeed in governing the people. There is a way to obtain the confidence of the sovereign;—if one is not trusted by his friends, he will not get the confidence of his sovereign. There is a way to being trusted by one's friends;—if one is not obedient to his parents he will not be true to friends. There is a way to being obedient to one’s parents;—if one, on turning his thoughts in upon himself, finds a want of sincerity, he will not be obedient to his parents. There is a way to the attainment of sincerity in one's self;—if a man do not
understand what is good, he will not attain sincerity in himself.

18. "Sincerity is the way of Heaven. The attainment of sincerity is the way of men. He who possesses sincerity is he who, without an effort, hits what is right, and apprehends without the exercise of thought;—he is the sage who naturally and easily embodies the right way. He who attains to sincerity is he who chooses what is good, and firmly holds it fast.

19. "To this attainment there are requisite the extensive study of what is good, accurate inquiry about it, careful reflection on it, the clear discrimination of it, and the earnest practice of it.

20. "The superior man, while there is anything he has not studied, or while in what he has studied there is anything he cannot understand, will not intermit his labor. While there is anything he has not inquired about, or anything in what he has inquired about which he does not know, he will not intermit his labor. While there is anything which he has not reflected on, or anything in what he has reflected on which he does not apprehend, he will not intermit his labor. While there is anything which he has not discriminated, or his discrimination is not clear, he will not
intermit his labor. If there be anything which he has not practiced, or his practice fails in earnestness, he will not intermit his labor. If another man succeed by one effort, he will use a hundred efforts. If another man succeed by ten efforts, he will use a thousand.

21. "Let a man proceed in this way, and, though dull, he will surely become intelligent; though weak, he will surely become strong."

第二十一章 自明之謂之性,自明之謂之教, 誠則明矣,明則誠矣。

Chap. xxi. When we have intelligence resulting from sincerity, this condition is to be ascribed to nature; when we have sincerity resulting from intelligence, this condition is to be ascribed to instruction. But given the sincerity, and there shall be the intelligence; given the intelligence, and there shall be the sincerity.

The above is the twenty-first chapter. Tsze-sze takes up in it, and discourses the subjects of "the way of Heaven" and "the way of men," mentioned in the preceding chapter. The twelve chapters that follow are all from Tsze-sze, repeating and illustrating the meaning of this one.

第二十二章 唯天下至誠, 爲能盡其性, 能盡其性, 則能盡人之性, 能盡人之性, 則能盡物之性, 能盡物之性, 則可以贊
Chap. XXII. It is only he who is possessed of the most complete sincerity that can exist under heaven who can give its full development to his nature. Able to give its full development to his own nature, he can do the same to the nature of other men. Able to give its full development to the nature of other men, he can give their full development to the natures of animals and things. Able to give their full development to the natures of creatures and things, he can assist the transforming and nourishing powers of Heaven and Earth. Able to assist the transforming and nourishing powers of Heaven and Earth, he may with Heaven and Earth form a ternion.

第二十三章 其次致曲, 曲能有誠, 誠, 則形, 形, 則著, 著, 則 明, 明, 則動, 動, 則變, 變, 則化, 唯天下至誠, 爲能化

Chap. XXIII. Next to the above is he who cultivates to the utmost the shoots of goodness in him. From those he can attain to the possession of sincerity. This sincerity becomes apparent. From being apparent, it becomes manifest. From being manifest, it becomes brilliant. Brilliant, it affects others. Affecting others, they are changed by it. Changed by it, they are transformed. It is only he who is possessed of the most complete sincerity that can exist under heaven, who can transform.
Chap. xxiv. It is characteristic of the most entire sincerity to be able to foreknow. When a nation or family is about to flourish, there are sure to be happy omens; and when it is about to perish, there are sure to be unlucky omens. Such events are seen in the milfoil and tortoise, and affect the movements of the four limbs. When calamity or happiness is about to come, the good shall certainly be foreknown by him, and the evil also. Therefore the individual possessed of the most complete sincerity is like a spirit.

Chap. xxv. 1. Sincerity is that whereby self-completion is effected, and its way is that by which man must direct himself.

2. Sincerity is the end and beginning of things; without sincerity there would be nothing. On this account, the superior man regards the attainment of sincerity as the most excellent thing.
3. The possessor of sincerity does not merely accomplish the self-completion of himself. With this quality he completes other men and things also. The completing himself shows his perfect virtue. The completing other men and things shows his knowledge. Both these are virtues belonging to the nature, and this is the way by which a union is effected of the external and internal. Therefore, whenever he—the entirely sincere man—employs them, that is, these virtues, their action will be right.

第二十六章 1. 故至誠無息。 2. 不息則久，久，則微。 3. 微，則悠遠，悠遠，則博厚，博厚，則高明。 4. 博厚，所以載物也，高明，所以覆物也，悠久，所以成物也。 5. 博厚配地，高明配天，悠久無疆。 6. 如此者，不見而章，不動而變，無為而成。 7. 天地之道，可一言而盡也，其為物不貳，則其生物不測。 8. 天地之道，博也，厚也，高也，明也，悠也，久也。 9. 今夫天，斯昭昭之多，及其無窮也，日月星辰繫焉，萬物覆焉，今夫地，一撮土之多，及其廣厚，載華嶽而不重，振河海而不洩，萬物載焉，今夫山，一卷石之多，及其廣大，草木生之，禽獸居之，寶藏興焉。 今夫水，一勺之多，及其不測。龍，鱉，蛟，龍，魚，鼉，生焉，貨財殖焉。 10. 詩云，維天之命，於穆不已，蓋曰，天之所以為天也，於乎不顯，文王之德之純，蓋曰，文王之所以為文也，純亦不已。

Chap. xxvi. 1. Hence to entire sincerity there belongs ceaselessness.
2. Not ceasing, it continues long. Continuing long, it evidences itself.

3. Evidencing itself, reaches far. Reaching far, it becomes large and substantial. Large and substantial, it becomes high and brilliant.

4. Large and substantial;—this is how it contains all things. High and brilliant;—this is how it overspreads all things. Reaching far and continuing long;—this is how it perfects all things.

5. So large and substantial, the individual possessing it is the co-equal of Earth. So high and brilliant, in makes him the co-equal of Heaven. So far-reaching and long-continuing, it makes him infinite.

6. Such being its nature, without any display, it becomes manifested; without any movement, it produces changes; and without any effort, it accomplishes its ends.

7. The way of Heaven and Earth may be completely declared in one sentence.—They are without any doubleness, and so they produce things in a manner that is unfathomable.

8. The way of Heaven and Earth is large and substantial, high and brilliant, far-reaching and longenduring.

9. The heaven now before us is only this bright shining spot; but when viewed in its
inexhaustible extent, the sun, moon, stars, and constellations of the zodiac, are suspended in it, and all things are overspread by it. The earth before us is but a handful of soil; but when regarded in its breadth and thickness, it sustains mountains like the Hwa and the Yo, without feeling their weight, and contains the rivers and seas, without their leaking away. The mountain now before us appears only a stone; but when contemplated in all the vastness of its size, we see how the grass and trees are produced on it, and birds and beasts dwell on it, and precious things which men treasure up are found on it. The water now before us appears but a ladleful; yet extending our view to its unfathomable depths, the largest tortoises, iguanas, iguanodons, dragons, fishes, and turtles, are produced in them, articles of value and sources of wealth abound in them.

10. It is said in the Book of Poetry. "The ordinances of Heaven, how profound are they and unceasing!" The meaning is, that it is thus that Heaven is Heaven. And again, "How illustrious was it, the singleness of the virtue of King Wan!" indicating that it was thus that King Wan was what he was. Singleness likewise is unceasing.

第二十七章 1. 大哉聖人之道。2. 洋洋乎,發育萬物, 峃極子天。3. 優優大哉, 禮義三百, 威儀三千。4. 待其人而後
Chap. xxvii. 1. How great is the path proper to the Sage!

2. Like overflowing water, it sends forth and nourishes all things, and rises up to the height of heaven.

3. All-complete is its greatness! It embraces the three hundred rules of ceremony, and the three thousand rules of demeanor.

4. It waits for the proper man, and then it is trodden.

5. Hence it is said, "Only by perfect virtue can the perfect path, in all its courses, be made a fact."

6. Therefore, the superior man honors his virtuous nature, and maintains constant inquiry and study, seeking to carry it out to its breadth and greatness, so as to omit none of the more exquisite and minute points which it embraces, and to raise it to its greatest height and brilliancy, so as to pursue the course of the Mean. He cherishes his old knowledge, and
is continually acquiring new. He exerts an honest, generous earnestness, in the esteem and practice of all propriety.

7. Thus, when occupying a high situation he is not proud, and in a low situation he is not insubordinate. When the kingdom is well governed, he is sure by his words to rise; and when it is ill governed, he is sure by his silence to command forbearance to himself. Is not this what we find in the Book of Poetry, — “Intelligent is he and prudent, and so preserves his person?”

第二十八章 1. 子曰, 悼而好自用, 賤而好自專, 生乎今之世, 反古之道, 如此者, 戒及其身者也。2. 非天子, 不議禮, 不制度, 不考文。3. 今天下, 車同軌, 書同文, 行同倫。4. 雖有其位, 苟無其德, 不敢作禮樂焉, 雖有其德, 苟無其位, 亦不敢作禮樂焉。5. 子曰, 吾說夏禮, 杞不足徵也, 吾學殷禮, 有宋存焉。吾學周禮, 今用之, 吾從周。

Chap. xxviii. 1. The Master said, “Let a man who is ignorant be fond of using his own judgment; let a man without rank be fond of assuming a directing power to himself; let a man who is living in the present age go back to the ways of antiquity; — on the persons of all who act thus calamities will be sure to come.

2. To no one but the Son of Heaven does it belong to order ceremonies, to fix the
measures, and to determine the written characters:

3. Now, over the kingdom, carriages have all wheels of the same size; all writing is with the same characters; and all conduct there are the same rules.

4. One may occupy the throne, but if he have not the proper virtue, he may not dare to make ceremonies or music. One may have the virtue, but if he do not occupy the throne, he may not presume to make ceremonies or music.

5. The Master said, “I may describe the ceremonies of the Hsia dynasty, but Chi cannot sufficiently attest my words. I have learned the ceremonies of the Yin dynasty, and in Sung they still continue. I have learned the ceremonies of Chau, which are now used, and I follow Chau.”
Chap. xxix. 1. He who attains to the sovereignty of the kingdom, having those three important things, shall be able to effect that there shall be few errors under his government.

2. However excellent may have been the regulations of those of former times, they cannot be attested. Not being attested, they cannot command credence, and not being credited, the people would not follow them. However excellent might be the regulations made by one in an inferior situation, he is not in a position to be honored. Unhonored, he cannot command credence, and not being credited, the people would not follow his rules.

3. Therefore the institutions of the Ruler are rooted in his own character and conduct and sufficient attestation of them is given by the masses of the people. He examines them by comparison with those of the three kings, and finds them without mistake. He sets them up before heaven and earth, and finds nothing in them contrary to their mode of operation. He presents himself with them before spiritual beings, and no doubts about them arise. He is prepared to wait for the rise of a sage a hundred age. after, and has no misgivings.
4. His presenting himself with his institutions before spiritual beings, without any doubts arising about them, shows that he knows Heaven. His being prepared, without any misgivings, to wait for the rise of a sage a hundred ages after, shows that he knows men.

5. Such being the case, the movements of such a ruler, illustrating his institutions, constitute an example to the world for ages. His acts are for ages a law to the kingdom. His words are for ages a lesson to the kingdom. Those who are far from him look longingly for him; and those who are near him are never wearied with him.

6. It is said in the Book of Poetry,—“Not disliked there, not tired of here, from day to day and night to night, will they perpetuate their praise.” Never has there been a ruler, who did not realize this description, that obtained an early renown throughout the kingdom.

Chap. xxx. 1. Chung-ni handed down the doctrines of Yao and Shun, as if they had been his ancestors, and elegantly displayed the
regulations of Wan and Wu, taking them as his model. Above, he harmonized with the times of heaven, and below, he was conformed to the water and land.

2. He may be compared to heaven and earth in their supporting and containing, their overshadowing and curtaining, all things. He may be compared to the four seasons in their alternating progress, and to the sun and moon in their successive shining.

3. All things are nourished together without their injuring one another. The courses of the seasons, and of the sun and moon, are pursued without any collision among them. The smaller energies are like river currents; the greater energies are seen in mighty transformations. It is this which makes heaven and earth so great.

第三十一章 1. 唯天下至聖，為能聰明，慎知，足以有臨也，寬，裕，溫，柔，足以有容也，發，強，剛，毅，足以有執也，齊，莊，中，正，足以有敬也，文，理，密，察，足以有別也。 2. 滌博，淵泉，而時出之。 3. 滌博如天，淵泉如淵，見而民莫不敬，言而民莫不信，行而民莫不說。 4. 是以聲名洋溢乎中國，施及蠻貊，舟車所至，人力所通，天之所覆，地之所載，日月所照，霜露所降，凡有血氣者，莫不尊親，故曰配天。

Chap. xxxi. 1. It is only he, possessed of all sagely qualities that can exist under heaven,
who shows himself quick in apprenension, clear in discernment, of far-reaching intelligence, and all-embracing knowledge, fitted to exercise rule: magnanimous, generous, benign, and mild, fitted to exercise forbearance; impulsive, energetic firm, and enduring, fitted to maintain a firm hold; self-adjusted, grave, never swerving from the Mean, and correct, fitted to command reverence; accomplished, distinctive, concentrative, and searching, fitted to exercise discrimination.

2. All-embracing is he and vast, deep and active as a fountain, sending forth in their due season his virtues.

3. All-embracing and vast, he is like heaven. Deep and active as a fountain, he is like the abyss. He is seen, and the people all reverence him; he speaks, and the people all believe him; he acts, and the people all are pleased with him.

4. Therefore his fame overspreads the Middle Kingdom, and extends to all barbarous tribes. Wherever ships and carriages reach; wherever the strength of man penetrates; wherever the heavens overshadow and the earth sustains; wherever the sun and moon shine; wherever frosts and dews fall:—all who have blood and breath unfeignedly honor and love
him. Hence it is said,—"He is the equal of Heaven."

Chap. XXXII. 1. It is only the individual possessed of the most entire sincerity that can exist under heaven, who can adjust the great invariable relations of mankind, establish the great fundamental virtues of humanity, and know the transforming and nurturing operations of Heaven and Earth;—shall this individual have any being or anything beyond himself on which he depends?

2. Call him man in his ideal, how earnest is he! Call him an abyss, how deep is he! Call him Heaven, how vast is he!

3. Who can know him, but he who is indeed quick in apprehension, clear in discernment, of far-reaching intelligence, and all-embracing knowledge possessing all heavenly virtue?

Chap. XXXIII. 1. 詩日,:友錦尚網,惡其文之著也,故君子之道闊然而日章,小人之道,的然而日亡,君之子道,淡而不變,簡而文,溫而理,知遠之近,知風之自,知微之顯,可與入德矣。2. 詩云,龍鳴伏矣 亦孔之昭,故君子,內省不疚,無惡
Chap. XXXIII. 1. It is said in the Book of Poetry, “Over her embroidered robe she puts a plain, single garment,” intimating a dislike to the display of the elegance of the former. Just so, it is the way of the superior man to prefer the concealment of his virtue, while it daily becomes more illustrious, and it is the way of the mean man to seek notoriety, while he daily goes more and more to ruin. It is characteristic of the superior man, appearing insipid, yet never to produce satiety; while showing a simple negligence, yet to have his accomplishments recognized; while seemingly plain, yet to be discriminating. He knows how what is distant lies in what is near. He knows where the wind proceeds from. He knows how what is minute becomes manifested. Such a one, we may be sure, will enter into virtue.

2. It is said in the Book of Poetry, “Although the fish sink and lie at the bottom,
it is still quite clearly seen." Therefore the superior man examines his heart, that there may be nothing wrong there, and that he may have no cause for dissatisfaction with himself. That wherein the superior man cannot be equalled is simply this,—his work which other men cannot see.

3. It is said in the Book of Poetry, "Looked at in your apartment, be there free from shame as being exposed to the light of heaven." Therefore, the superior man, even when he is not moving, has a feeling of reverence, and while he speaks not, he has the feeling of truthfulness.

4. It is said in the Book of Poetry, "In silence is the offering presented, and the spirit approached to; there is not the slightest contention." Therefore the superior man does not use rewards, and the people are stimulated in virtue. He does not show anger, and the people are awed more than by hatchets and battleaxes.

5. It is said in the Book of Poetry, "What needs no display is virtue. All the princes imitate it." Therefore, the superior man being sincere and reverential, the whole world is conducted to a state of happy tranquillity.

6. It is said in the Book of Poetry, "I regard with pleasure your brilliant virtue.
making no great display of itself in sounds and appearances.” The Master said, “Among the appliances to transform the people, sounds and appearances are but trivial influences. It is said in another ode, ‘His virtue is light as a hair.’ Still, a hair will admit of comparison as to its size. ‘The doings of the supreme Heaven have neither sound nor smell.’—That is perfect virtue.”

The above is the thirty-third chapter. Tsze-sze having carried his descriptions to the extremest point in the preceding chapters, turns back in this, and examines the source of his subject; and then again from the work of the learner, free from all selfishness, and watchful over himself when he is alone, he carries out his description, till by easy steps he brings it to the consummation of the whole kingdom tranquilized by simple and sincere reverentialness. He further eulogizes its mysteriousness, till he speaks of it at last as without sound or smell. He here takes up the sum of his whole Work, and speaks of it in a compendious manner. Most deep and earnest was he in thus going again over his ground, admonishing and instructing men:—shall the learner not do his utmost in the study of the Work?
Chap. 1. The Master said, "Is it not pleasant to learn with a constant perseverance and application?
2. "Is it not delightful to have friends coming from distant quarters?
3. "Is he not a man of complete virtue, who feels no discomposure though men may take no note of him?"

Chap. II. 1. The philosopher Yu said, "They are few who, being filial and fraternal, are fond of offending against their superiors. There have been none, who, not liking to offend against their superiors, have been fond of stirring up confusion.
2. "The superior man bends his attention to what is radical. That being established, all practical courses naturally grow up. Filial
piety and fraternal submission!—are they not the root of all benevolent actions?" 

Chap. III. The Master said, "Fine words and an insinuating appearance are seldom associated with true virtue."

Chap. IV The philosopher Tsang said, "I daily examine myself on three points:—whether, in transacting business for others, I may have been not faithful;—whether, in intercourse with friends, I may have been not sincere;—whether I may have not mastered and practiced the instructions of my teacher."

Chap. V. The Master said, "To rule a country of a thousand chariots, there must be reverent attention to business and sincerity; economy in expenditure, and love for men; and the employment of the people at the proper seasons."

Chap. VI. The Master said, "A youth, when at home, should be filial, and, abroad,
respectful to his elders. He should be earnest and truthful. He should overflow in love to all, and cultivate the friendship of the good. When he has time and opportunity, after the performance of these things, he should employ them in polite studies.”

Chap. VII. Tsze-hsia aid, “If a man with draws his mind from the love of beauty, and applies it as sincerely to the love of the virtuous; if, in serving his parents, he can exert his utmost strength; if, in serving his prince, he can devote his life; if, in his intercourse with his friends, his words are sincere:—although men say that he has not learned, I will thercertainly say that he has.”

Chap. VIII. 1. The Master said, “If the scholar be not grave, he will not call forth any veneration, and his learning will not be solid.

2. “Hold faithfulness and sincerity as first principles.

3. “Have no friends not equal to yourself.

4. “When you have faults, do not fear to abandon them.”

Chap. IX. 1. Tsze-kung said, “A statesman’s duty is to promote the good of his people.”
Chap. IX. The philosopher Tsang said, "Let there be a careful attention to perform the funeral rites to parents, and let them be followed when long gone with the ceremonies of sacrifice;—then the virtue of the people will resume its proper excellence."

Chap. x. 1. Tsze-ch'in asked Tsze-kung, saying, "When our master comes to any country, he does not fail to learn all about its government. Does he ask his information? or is it given to him?"

2. Tsze-kung said, "Our master is benign, upright, courteous, temperate, and complaisant, and thus he gets his information. The master's mode of asking information!—is it not different from that of other men?"

Chap. XI. The Master said, "While a man's father is alive, look at the bent of his will; when his father is dead, look at his conduct. (If for three years he does not alter from the way of his father, he may be called filial.)"
Chap. XII. 1. The philosopher Yu said, “In practicing the rules of propriety, a natural ease is to be prized. In the ways prescribed by the ancient kings, this is the excellent quality, and in things small and great we follow them.

2. “Yet it is not to be observed in all cases. If one, knowing how such ease should be prized, manifests it without regulating it by the rules of propriety, this likewise is not to be done.”

Chap. XIII. The philosopher Yu said, “When agreements are made according to what is right, what is spoken can be made good. When respect is shown according to what is proper, one keeps far from shame and disgrace. When the parties upon whom a man leans are proper persons to be intimate with, he can make them his guides and masters.”

Chap. XIV. The Master said, “He who aims to be a man of complete virtue in his food does not seek to gratify his appetite, nor in his dwelling place does he seek the appliances of
ease; he is earnest in what he is doing, and careful in his speech he frequents the company of men of principle that he may be rectified:—such a person may be said indeed to love to learn.”

Chap. xv. 1. Tsze-kung said, “What do you pronounce concerning the poor man who yet does not flatter, and the rich man who is not proud?” The Master replied, “They will do; but they are not equal to him, who though poor, is yet cheerful, and to him, who, though rich, loves the rules of propriety.”

2. Tsze-kung replied, “It is said in the Book of Poetry, ‘As you cut and then file, as you carve and then polish.’—The meaning is the same, I apprehend, as that which you have just expressed.”

3. The Master said, “With one like Ts‘ze, I can begin to talk about the odes. I told him one point, and he knew its proper sequence.”

Chap. xvi. The Master said, “I will not be afflicted at men’s not knowing me; I will be afflicted that I do not know men.”
BOOK II. WEI CHANG 為政 第二

第一章 子曰，為政以德，譬如，北辰，居其所，而衆星共之。
Chap. I. The Master said, "He who exercises government by means of his virtue may be compared to the north polar star, which keeps its place and all the stars turn towards it."

第二章 子曰，詩三百，一言以蔽之，曰，思無邪。
Chap. II. The Master said, "In the Book of Poetry are three hundred pieces, but the design of them all may be embraced in one sentence—'Having no depraved thoughts.'"

第三章 1. 子曰，道之以政，齊之以刑，民免而無恥。 2. 道之以德，齊之以禮，有恥且格。
Chap. III. 1. The Master said, "If the people be led by laws, and uniformity sought to be given them by punishments, they will try to avoid the punishment, but have no sense of shame.

2. "If they be led by virtue, and uniformity sought to be given them by the rules of propriety, they will have the sense of shame, and moreover will become good."

第四章 1. 子曰，吾十有五，而志于學。 2. 三十而立 3. 四十而不惑 4. 五十而知天命 5. 六十而耳順。 6. 七十而從心所欲，不踰矩。
Chap.  iv.  1. The Master said, “At fifteen, I had my mind bent on learning.
2. “At thirty, I stood firm.
3. “At forty, I had no doubts.
4. “At fifty, I knew the decrees of Heaven.
5. “At sixty, my ear was an obedient organ for the reception of truth.
6. “At seventy, I could follow what my heart desired, without transgressing what was right.”

Chap.  v.  1. Mang I asked what filial piety was. The Master said, “It is not being disobedient.”
2. Soon after, as Fan Ch’ih was driving him, the Master told him, saying, “Mang-sun asked me what filial piety was, and I answered him,—‘not being disobedient.’”
3. Fan Ch’ih said, “What did you mean?” The Master replied, “That parents, when alive, should be served according to propriety; that, when dead, they should be buried according to propriety; and that they should be sacrificed to according to propriety.”

Chap. vi. Mang Wu asked what filial
piety was. The Master said, "Parents are anxious lest their children should be sick."

第七章 子游問孝，子曰，今之孝者，是謂能養，至於犬馬，皆能有養，不敬，何以別乎。

Chap. VII. Tsze-vu asked what filial piety was. The Master said, "The filial piety of nowadays means the support of one's parents. But dogs and horses likewise are able to do something in the way of support;—without reverence, what is there to distinguish the one support given from the other?"

第八章 子夏問孝，子曰，色難，有事，弟子服其勞，有酒食，先生饌，曾是以為孝乎。

Chap. VIII. Tsze-hsia asked what filial piety was. The Master said, "The difficulty is with the countenance. If, when their elders have any troublesome affairs, the young take the toil of them, and if, when the young have wine and food, they set them before their elders, is THIS to be considered filial piety?"

第九章 子曰，吾與爾言終日，不遂。如愚，退而省其私，亦足以發，俗也不愚。

Chap. IX. The Master said, "I have talked with Hui for a whole day, and he has not made any objection to anything I said;—as if he were stupid. He has retired, and I have examined his conduct when away from me, and found him able to illustrate my
teachings. Hui!—He is not stupid."

Chap. x. 1. The Master said, "See what a man does.
2. "Mark his motives.
4. "How can a man conceal his character? How can a man conceal his character?"

Chap. xi. The Master said, "If a man keeps cherishing his old knowledge, so as continually to be acquiring new, he may be a teacher of others."

Chap. xii. The Master said, "The accomplished scholar is not a utensil."

Chap. xiii. Tsze-kung asked what constituted the superior man. The Master said, "He acts before he speaks, and afterwards speaks according to his actions."

Chap. xiv. The Master said, "The superior man is catholic and no partisan. The mean man is a partisan and not catholic."
第十五章 子曰，學而不思則罔，思而不學則殆。

Chap. XV. The Master said, "Learning without thought is labor lost; thought without learning is perilous."

第十六章 子曰，攻乎異端，斯害也已。

Chap. XVI. The Master said, "The study of strange doctrines is injurious indeed!"

第十七章 子曰，由，誘女知之乎，知之為知之，不知為不知，是知也。

Chap. XVII. The Master said, "Yu, shall I teach you what knowledge is? When you know a thing, to hold that you know it; and when you do not know a thing, to allow that you do not know it:—this is knowledge.

第十八章 1. 子張學干祿。 2. 子曰，多聞闌疑，慎言其餘，則寡尤，多見闌殆，慎行其餘，則寡悔，言寡尤，行寡悔，祿在其中矣。

Chap. XVIII. 1. Tsze-chang was learning with a view to official emolument.

2. The Master said, "Hear much and put aside the points of which you stand in doubt, while you speak cautiously at the same time of the others:—then you will afford few occasions for blame. See much ynd put aside the things which seem perilous, while you are cautious at the same time in carrying the others into practice:—then you will have few occasions
for repentance. When one gives few occasions for blame in his words, and few occasions for repentance in his conduct, he is in the way to get emolument."

Chap. xix. The duke Ai asked, saying, "What should be done in order to secure the submission of the people?" Confucius replied, "Advance the upright and set aside the crooked, then the people will submit. Advance the crooked and set aside the upright, then the people will not submit."

Chap. xx. Chi Kang asked how to cause the people to reverence their ruler, to be faithful to him, and to go on to nerve themselves to virtue. The Master said, "Let him preside over them with gravity:—then they will reverence him. Let him be filial and kind to all:—then they will be faithful to him. Let him advance the good and teach the incompetent;—then they will eagerly seek to be virtuous."

Chap. xxii. 1. Some one addressed Con-
CONFUCIAN ANALECTS

Confucius, saying, “Sir, why are you not engaged in the government?”

2. The Master said, “What does the Shu-ching say of filial piety?—‘You are filial, you discharge your brotherly duties. These qualities are displayed in government.’ This then also constitutes the exercise of government. Why must there be THAT—making one be in the government?”

第二十二章 子曰。人而無信，不知其可也。大車無軛，小車無軏，其何以行之哉。

Chap. XXII. The Master said, “I do not know how a man without truthfulness is to get on. How can a large carriage be made to go without the crossbar for yoking the oxen to, or a small carriage without the arrangement for yoking the horses?”

第二十三章 1. 子張問十世，可知也。 2. 子曰，殷因於夏禮，所損益，可知也。周因於殷禮，所損益，可知也。其或繼周者，雖百世，可知也。

Chap. XXIII. 1. Tsze-chan gasked whether the affairs of ten ages after could be known.

2. Confucius said, “The Yin dynasty followed the regulations of the Hsia: where in it took from or added to them may be known. The Chau dynasty has followed the regulations of the Yin: where in it took from or added to them may be known. Some other may follow
the Chau, but though it should be at the distance
of a hundred ages, its affairs may be known.”

第二十四章 1. 子曰，非其鬼而祭之，誅也。 2. 見義不為。無勇也。

Chap. XXIV. 1. The Master said, “For a man
to sacrifice to a spirit which does not belong to
him is flattery
2. “To see what is right and not to do it
is want of courage.”

BOOK III PA YIH 八佾 第三

第一章 孔子謂季氏，八佾舞於庭，是可忍也，孰不可忍也。

Chap. I. Confucius said of the head of the
Chi family, who had eight rows of pantomimes
in his area, “If he can bear to do this, what may
he not bear to do?”

第二章 三家者，以雍徹。子曰，相維辟公，天子穆穆，奚取於
三家之堂。

Chap. II. The three families used the YUNG
ode, while the vessels were being removed, at
the conclusion of the sacrifice. The Master said,
“Assisting are the princes;—the son of heaven
looks profound and grave’;—what application
can these words have in the hall of the three
families?”

第三章 子曰，人而不仁，如禮何？人而不仁，如樂何。

Chap. III. The Master said, “If a man be
without the virtues proper to humanity, what
has he to do with the rites of propriety? If a man be without the virtues proper to humanity, what has he to do with music?"

第四章 1. 林放問禮之本。2. 子曰,大哉問。3. 禮,與其奢也,寧儉;與其易也,寧戚。

Chap. iv. 1. Lin Fang asked what was the first thing to be attended to in ceremonies.
2. The Master said, "A great question indeed!
3. "In festive ceremonies, it is better to be sparing than extravagant. In the ceremonies of mourning, it is better that there be deep sorrow than a minute attention to observances."

第五章 子曰,夷狄之有君,不如諸夏之亡也。

Chap. v. The Master said, "The rude tribes of the east and north have their princes, and are not like the States of our great land which are without them."

第六章 季氏旅於泰山 子謂冉有曰,女弗能救與。對曰,不能。子曰,嗚呼,曾謂泰山,不如林放乎。

Chap. vi. The chief of the Chi family was about to sacrifice to the T'ai mountain. The Master said to Zan Yu, "Can you not save him from this?" He answered, "I cannot." Confucius said, "Alas! will you say that the T'ai mountain is not so discerning as Lin Fang?"

第七章 子曰,君子無所爭,必也射乎,揖讓而升,下而飲,其
Chap. VII. The Master said, "The student of virtue has no contentions. If it be said he cannot avoid them, shall this be in archery? But he bows complaisantly to his competitors; thus he ascends the hall, descends, and exacts the forfeit of drinking. In his contention, he is still the Chun-tsze."

Chap. VIII. 1. Tsze-hsia asked, saying, "What is the meaning of the passage—'The pretty dimples of her artful smile! The well-defined black and white of her eye! The plain ground for the color's?'"

2. The Master said, "The business of laying on the colors follows (the preparation of) the plain ground."

3. "Ceremonies then are a subsequent thing?" The Master said, "It is Shang who can bring out my meaning. Now I can begin to talk about the odes with him."

Chap. IX. The Master said, "I could describe the ceremonies of the Hsia dynasty, but Chi cannot sufficiently attest my words. I could
describe the ceremonies of the Yin dynasty, but
Sung cannot sufficiently attest my words.
(They cannot do so) because of the insufficiency
of their records and wise men. If those were
sufficient, I could adduce them in support of
my words.'

Chap. x. The Master said, "At the great
sacrifice, after the pouring out of the libation,
I have no wish to look on."

Chap. xi. Some one asked the meaning of
the great sacrifice. The Master said, "I do not
know. He who knew its meaning would find
it as easy to govern the kingdom as to look on
tcis:"—pointing to his palm.

Chap. xii. 1. He sacrificed to the dead, as
if they were present. He sacrificed to the spirits,
as if the spirits were present.

2. The Master said, "I consider my not
being present at the sacrifice, as if I did not
sacrifice."

Chap. xiii. 1. 王孫賈問曰,與其媚於奧,寧媚於室,何謂也.

2. 子曰,不然,獲罪於天,無所禱也.
Chap. XIII. 1. Wang-sun Chia asked saying, "What is the meaning of the saying, 'It is better to pay court to the furnace than to the southwest corner?'"

2. The Master said, "Not so. He who offends against Heaven has none to whom he can pray."

Chap. XIV. The Master said, "Chau had the advantage of viewing the two past dynasties. How complete and elegant are its regulations! I follow Chau."

Chap. XV. The Master, when he entered the grand temple, asked about everything. Some one said, "Who will say that the son of the man of Tsau knows the rules of propriety! He has entered the grand temple and asks about everything." The Master heard the remark, and said, "This is a rule of propriety."

Chap. XVI. The Master said, "In archery it is not going through the leather which is the principal thing;—because people's strength is not equal. This was the old way."

Chap. XVII. 1.子貢欲去告朔之饌羊。 2. 子曰，賜也，爾愛其羊，我愛其禮。
Chap. XVII. 1. Tsze-kung wished to do away with the offering of a sheep connected with the inauguration of the first day of each month.

2. The Master said, “Ts’ze, you love the sheep; I love the ceremony.”

Chap. XIII. The Master said, “The full observance of the rules of propriety in serving one’s prince is accounted by people to be flattery.”

Chap. XIX. The duke Ting asked how a prince should employ his ministers, and how ministers should serve their prince. Confucius replied, “A prince should employ his minister according to the rules of propriety: ministers should serve their prince with faithfulness.”

Chap. XX. The Master said, “The Kwan Tsu is expressive of enjoyment without being licentious, and of grief without being hurtfully excessive.”

Chap. XXI. 1. Kwan Tsu said, “A prince should be governed by me. When I am not there, the warlike officials, led by the lieutenants, regulate the people.” 2. The Master said, “If a matter is not decided with a resolve, the people will wander.”
Chap. xxI. 1. The duke Ai asked Tsai Wo about the altars of the spirits of the land. Tsai Wo replied, "The Hsia sovereign planted the pine tree about them; the men of the Yin planted the cypress; and the men of the Chau planted the chestnut tree, meaning thereby to cause the people to be in awe."

2. When the Master heard it, he said, "Things that are done, it is needless to speak about; things that have had their course, it is needless to remonstrate about; things that are past, it is needless to blame."

第二十二章 1. 子曰,管仲之器小哉。2. 或曰,管仲儉乎。3. 曰,管氏有三歸,官事不聦,焉得儉。4. 然則管仲知禮乎。5. 曰,邦君樹塞門,管氏亦樹塞門。邦君為兩君之好有反坫,管氏亦有反坫。管氏而知禮,孰不知禮。

Chap. xxII. 1. The Master said, "Small indeed was the capacity of Kwan Chung!"

2. Some one said, "Was Kwan Chung parsimonious?" "Kwan," was the reply, "had the San Kwei, and his officers performed no double duties: how can he be considered parsimonious?"

3. "Then, did Kwan Chung know the rules of propriety?" The Master said, "The princes of States have a screen intercepting the view at their gates. Kwan had likewise a screen at his gate. The princes of States on any friendly meeting
between two of them, had a stand on which to place their inverted cups. Kwan had also such
a stand. If Kwan knew the rules of propriety, who does not know them?"

Chap. xxiii. The Master instructing the Grand music master of Lu said, "How to play
music may be known. At the commencement of the piece, all the parts should sound together.
As it proceeds, they should be in harmony while severally distinct and flowing without
break, and thus on to the conclusion."

Chap. xxiv. The border warden at I requested to be introduced to the Master, saying,
"When men of superior virtue have come to this, I have never been denied the privilege of
seeing them." The followers of the sage introduced him, and when he came out from the
interview, he said, "My friends, why are you distressed by your master's loss of office? The
kingdom has long been without the principles of truth and right; Heaven is going to use your
master as a bell with its wooden tongue."
Chap. xxv. The Master said of the Shao that it was perfectly beautiful and also perfectly good. He said of the Wu that it was perfectly beautiful but not perfectly good.

Chap. xxvi. The Master said, "High station filled without indulgent generosity; ceremonies performed without reverence; mourning conducted without sorrow;—where with should I contemplate such way?"

BOOK IV LE JIN 里仁 第四

第一章 子曰,里仁為美,擇不處仁,焉得知.

Chap. 1. The Master said, "It is virtuous manners which constitute the excellence of a neighborhood. If a man in selecting a residence, do not fix on one where such prevail, how can he be wise?"

第二章 子曰,不仁者,不可以久處約,不可以長處樂,仁者安仁,知者利仁.

Chap. 11. The Master said, "Those who are without virtue cannot abide long either in a condition of poverty and hardship, or in a condition of enjoyment. The virtuous rest in virtue; the wise desire virtue.

第三章 子曰,惟仁者,能好人,能惡人.

Chap. 111. The Master said, "It is only the (truly) virtuous man, who can love, or who can
hate, others."

Chap. iv. The Master said, "If the will be set on virtue, there will be no practice of wickedness."

Chap. v. 1. The Master said, "Riches and honors are what men desire. If it cannot be obtained in the proper way, they should not be held. Poverty and meanness are what man dislike. If it cannot be obtained in the proper way, they should not be avoided.

2. "If a superior man abandon virtue, how can he fulfill the requirements of that name?

3. "The superior man does not, even for the space of a single meal, act contrary to virtue. In moments of haste, he cleaves to it. In seasons of danger, he cleaves to it."

Chap. vi. 1. The Master said, "I have not seen a person who loved virtue, or one who hated what was not virtuous. He who loved
virtue, would esteem nothing above it. He who hated what is not virtuous, would practice virtue in such a way that he would not allow anything that is not virtuous to approach his person.

2. "Is any one able for one day to apply his strength to virtue? I have not seen the case in which his strength would be insufficient.

3. "Should there possibly be any such case, I have not seen it."

Chap. vii. The Master said, "The faults of men are characteristic of the class to which they belong. By observing a man's faults, it may be known that he is virtuous."

Chap. viii. The Master said, "If a man in the morning hear the right way, he may die in the evening without regret."

Chap. xi. The Master said, "A scholar, whose mind is set on truth, and who is ashamed of bad clothes and bad food, is not fit to be discoursed with."

Chap. x. The Master said, "The superior man, in the world, does not set his mind either
for anything, or against anything; what is right he will follow.”

Chap. XI. The Master said, “The superior man thinks of virtue; the small man thinks of comfort. The superior man thinks of the sanctions of law; the small man thinks of favors which he may receive.”

Chap. XII. The Master said, “He who acts with a constant view to his own advantages will be much murmured against.”

Chap. XIII. The Master said, “Is a prince able to govern his kingdom with the complaisance proper to the rules of propriety, what difficulty will he have? If he cannot govern it with that complaisance, what has he to do with the rules of propriety?”

Chap. XIV The Master said, “A man should say, I am not concerned that I have no place, I am concerned how I may fit myself for one. I am not concerned that I am not known, I seek to be worthy to be known.”
Chap. XV. 1. The Master said, "Shan, my doctrine is that of an all-pervading unity." The disciple Tsang replied, "Yes."

2. The Master went out, and the other disciples asked, saying, "What do his words mean?" Tsang said, "The doctrine of our master is to be true to the principles of our nature and the benevolent exercise of them to others,—this and nothing more."

Chap. XVI. The Master said, "The mind of the superior man is conversant with righteousness; the mind of the mean man is conversant with gain."

Chap. XVII. The Master said, "When we see men of worth, we should think of equaling them; when we see men of a contrary character we should turn inwards and examine ourselves."

Chap. XVIII. The Master said, "In serving his parents, a son may remonstrate with them, but gently; when he sees that they do not incline to follow his advice, he shows an increased degree of reverence, but does not abandon his
purpos; and should they punish him, he does not allow himself to murmur.”

第十九章 子曰,父母在,不远遊,遊必有方。

Chap XIX. The Master said, “While his parents are alive, the son may not go abroad to a distance. If he does go abroad, he must have a fixed place to which he goes.”

第二十章 子曰,三年無改於父之道,可謂孝矣。

Chap. XX. The Master said, “If the son for three years does not alter from the way of his father, he may be called filial.”

第二十一章 子曰,父母之年,不可不知也,一則以喜,一則以懼。

Chap. XXI. The Master said, “The years of parents may by no means not be kept in the memory, as an occasion at once for joy and for fear.”

第二十二章 子曰,古者言之不出,恥躬之不逮也。

Chap. XXII. The Master said, “The reason why the ancients did not readily give utterance to their words, was that they feared lest their actions should not come up to them.”

第二十三章 子曰,以約,失之者鮮矣。

Chap. XXIII. The Master said, “The cautious seldom err.”

第二十四章 子曰,君子欲訥於言,而敏於行。

Chap. XXIV. The Master said, “The superior
man wishes to be slow in his speech and earnest in his conduct."

第二十五章 子曰：德不孤，必有邻。

Chap. xxv. The Master said, "Virtue is not left to stand alone. He who practices it will have neighbors."

第二十六章 子游曰：事君數，斯辱矣。朋友數，斯疏矣。

Chap. xxvi. Tsze-yu said, "In serving a prince, frequent remonstrances lead to disgrace. Between friends, frequent reproofs make the friendship distant."

BOOK, V. KUNG-YE CH'ANG

第一章 1. 子謂公冶長，可妻也，雖有縛縲之中，非其罪也，以其子妻之。 2. 子謂南容，邦有道不廢，邦無道免於刑戮，以其兄之子妻之。

Chap. 1. 1. The Master said of Kung-ye Ch'ang that he might be wived; although he was put in bonds, he had not been guilty of any crime. Accordingly, he gave him his own daughter to wife."

2. Of Nan Yung he said that if the country were well governed he would not be out of office, and if it were ill governed, he would escape punishment and disgrace. He gave him the daughter of his own elder brother to wife."
The Master said of Tsze-chien, “Of superior virtue indeed is such a man! If there were not virtuous men in Lu, how could this man have acquired this character?”


Chap. IV. 1. Some one said, “Yung is truly virtuous, but he is not ready with his tongue.”

2. The Master said, “What is the good of being ready with the tongue? They who encounter men with smartnesses of speech for the most part procure themselves hatred. I know not whether he be truly virtuous, but why should he show readiness of the tongue?”

Chap. V. The Master was wishing Ch'i-tiao K'ai to enter on official employment. He replied, “I am not yet able to rest in the assurance of THIS.” The Master was pleased.

Chap. VI. The Master said, “The path is not practicable, and I am like a sea, following in the track of the voyage. Whence comes it?” The Master said, “Thus he shows his strength, and I am at a loss for what to compare with him.”
Chap. vi. The Master said, "My doctrines make no way. I will get upon a raft, and float about on the sea. He that will accompany me will be Yu, I dare to say." Tsze-lu hearing this was glad, upon which the Master said, "Yu is fonder of daring than I am. He does not exercise his judgment upon matters."

第七章 1. 孟武伯問子路仁乎。子曰，不知也。 2. 又問。子曰，由也，千乘之國，可使治其賦也，不知其仁也。 3. 求也何如。子曰，求也，千室之邑，百乘之家，可使爲宰也，不知其仁也。 4. 赤也何如。子曰，赤也，束帶立於朝，可使與賓客言也，不知其仁也。

Chap. vii. 1 Mang Wu asked about Tsze-lu, whether he was perfectly virtuous. The Master said, "I do not know."

2. He asked again, when the Master replied, "In a kingdom of a thousand chariots, Yu might be employed to manage the military levies, but I do not know whether he be perfectly virtuous."

3. "And what do you say of Ch‘iu?" The Master replied, "In a city of a thousand families, or a clan of a hundred chariots, Ch‘iu might be employed as governor, but I do not know whether he is perfectly virtuous."

4. "What do you say of Ch‘ih?" The Master replied, "With his sash girt and standing in a court, Ch‘ih might be employed to converse with the visitors and guests, but I do not know
whether he is perfectly virtuous.”

Chap. VIII. 1. The Master said to Tsze-kung, “Which do you consider superior, yourself or Hui?”

2. Tsze-kung replied, “How dare I compare myself with Hui? Hui hears one point and knows all about a subject; I hear one point and know a second.”

3. The Master said, “You are not equal to him. I grant you, you are not equal to him.”

Chap. IX. 1. Ts'ai Yu being asleep during the daytime, the Master said, “Rotten wood cannot be carved; a wall of dirty earth will not receive the trowel. This Yu!—what is the use of my reproving him?”

2. The Master said, “At first, my way with men was to hear their words, and give them credit for their conduct. Now my way is to hear their words, and look at their conduct. It is from Yu that I have learned to make this change.”
Chap x. The Master said, "I have not seen a firm and unbending man." Some one replied, "There is Shan Ch'ang." "Ch'ang," said the Master, "is under the influence of his passions; how can he be pronounced firm and unbending?"

Chap xi. Tsze-kung said, "What I do not wish men to do to me, I also wish not to do to men." The Master said, "Ts'ze, you have not attained to that."

Chap. xii. Tsze-kung said, "The Master's personal displays of his principles and ordinary descriptions of them may be heard. His discourses about man's nature, and the way of Heaven, cannot be heard."

Chap xiii. When Tsze-lu heard anything, if he had not yet succeeded in carrying it into practice, he was only afraid lest he should hear something else.

Chap xiv. If Tsze-wu said, "What is it to be called literature?" He said, "Admirable and good in study. When the young and old, brave and timid, see this, will not it be literature?"
Chap. XIV. Tsze-kung asked, saying, "On what ground did Kung-wan get that title of WAN?" The Master said, "He was of an active nature and yet fond of learning, and he was not ashamed to ask and learn of his inferiors!—On these grounds he has been styled WAN."

第十五章 子謂子產,有君子之道焉,其行己也恭,其事上也敬,其養民也惠,其使民也義。

Chap. XV. The Master said of Tsze-ch’ an that he had four of the characteristics of a superior man—in his conduct of himself, he was humble; in serving his superior, he was respectful; in nourishing the people, he was kind; in ordering the people, he was just."

第十六章 子曰, 晉平仲, 善與人交, 久而敬之。

Chap. XVI. The Master said, "Yen P‘ing knew well how to maintain friendly intercourse. The acquaintance might be long, but he showed the same respect as at first."

第十七章 子曰, 韩文仲, 居蔡, 山節藻棁, 何如其知也。

Chap. XVII. The Master said, "Tsang Wan kept a large tortoise in a house on the capitals of the pillars of which he had hills made, with representations of duckweed on the small pillars above the beams supporting the rafters.—Of what sort was his wisdom?"

第十八章 子張問曰, 令尹子文, 三仕為令尹, 無喜色, 三
Chap. XVIII. 1 Tsze-chang asked, saying, “The minister Tsze-wan thrice took office, and manifested no joy in his countenance. Thrice he retired from office, and manifested no displeasure. He made it a point to inform the new minister of the way in which he had conducted the government;—what do you say of him?” The Master replied, “He was loyal. Was he perfectly virtuous?” “I do not know. How can he be pronounced perfectly virtuous?”

2. Tsze-chang proceeded, “When the officer Ch‘ui killed the prince of Ch‘i, Ch‘an Wan, though he was the owner of forty horses, abandoned them and left the country. Coming to another state, he said, ‘They are here like our great officer, Ch‘ui,’ and left it. He came to a second state, and with the same observation left it also;—what do you say of him?” The Master replied, “He was pure. Was he perfectly virtuous?” “I do not know. How can he be pronounced perfectly virtuous?”
Chap. xix. Chi Wan thought thrice, and then acted. When the Master was informed of it, he said, "Twice may do."

第二十章 子曰，甯武子，邦有道，則知；邦無道，則愚，其知可及也，其愚不可及也。

Chap. xx. The Master said, "When good order prevailed in his country, Ning Wu acted the part of a wise man. When his country was in disorder, he acted the part of a stupid man. Others may equal his wisdom, but they cannot equal his stupidity."

第二十一章 子在陳曰，歸與歸與，吾黨之小子，狂簡，斐成然章，不知所以裁之。

Chap. xxi. When the Master was in Ch'an, he said, "Let me return! Let me return! The little children of my school are ambitious and too hasty. They are accomplished and complete so far, but they do not know how to restrict and shape themselves."

第二十二章 子曰，伯夷叔齊，不念舊惡，怨是用希。

Chap. xxii. The Master said, "Po-i and Shuch'i did not keep the former wickednesses of men in mind, and hence the resentments directed towards them were few."

第二十三章 子曰，孰謂微生高直，或乞醯焉，乞諸其鄰而與之。

Chap. xxiii. The Master said, "Who says
of Wei-shang Kao that he is upright? One begged some vinegar of him, and he begged it of a neighbor and gave it to the man.”

第二十四章 子曰，巧言令色，足恭，左丘明恥之，丘亦恥之。匿怨而友其人，左丘明恥之，丘亦恥之。

Chap. xxiv. The Master said, “Fine words, an insinuating appearance, and excessive respect;—Tso Ch‘iu-ming was ashamed of them. I also am ashamed of them. To conceal resentment against a person, and appear friendly with him;—Tso Ch‘iu-ming was ashamed of such conduct. I am also ashamed of it.”

第二十五章 1. 頓淵季路侍。子曰，盍各言爾志。2. 子路曰，願車馬，衣輕裘，與朋友共，敝之而無憾。3. 風淵曰，願無伐善，無施勞。4. 子路曰，願聞子之志。子曰，老者安之，朋友信之，少者懷之。

Chap. xxv 1. Yen Yuan and Chi Lu being by his side, the Master said to them, “Come, let each of you tell his wishes.”

2. Tsze-lu said, “I should like, having chariots and horses, and light fur dresses, to share them with my friends, and though they should spoil them, I would not be displeased.”

3. Yen Yuan said, “I should like not to boast of my excellence, nor to make a display of my meritorious deeds.”

4. Tsze-lu then said, “I should like sir,
to hear your wishes.” — The Master said, “They are, in regard to the aged, to give them rest; in regard to friends, to show them sincerity; in regard to the young, to treat them tenderly.”

Chap. xxvi. The Master said, “It is all over. I have not yet seen one who could perceive his faults, and inwardly accuse himself.”

Chap. xxvii. The Master said, “In a hamlet of ten families, there may be found one, honorable and sincere as I am, but not so fond of learning.”

BOOK VI  YUNG YEY 雍也 第六

第一章 1. 子曰, 雍也, 可使南面. 2. 仲弓問子桑伯子. 子曰, 可也, 簡. 3. 仲弓曰, 居敬而行簡, 以臨其民, 不亦可乎, 居簡而行簡, 無乃太簡乎. 4. 子曰, 雍之言然.

Chap. 1. 1 The Master said, “There is Yung!—He might occupy the place of a prince.”

2. Chung-kung asked about Tsze-sang Po-tsze. The Master said, “He may pass. He does not mind small matters.”

3. Chung-kung said, “If a man cherish in
himself a reverential feeling of the necessity of attention to business, though he may be easy in small matters in his government of the people, that may be allowed. But if he cherish in himself that easy feeling, and also carry it out in his practice, is not such an easy mode of procedure excessive?"

4. The Master said, "Yung's words are right."

Chap. u. 1. The duke Ai asked which of the disciples loved to learn.

2. Confucius replied to him, "There was Yen Hui; HE loved to learn. He did not transfer his anger; he did not repeat a fault. Unfortunately, his appointed time was short and he died; and now there is not such another. I have not yet heard of any one who loves to learn as he did."

Chap. III. 1. Tsze-hwa being employed on mission to Ch'i, the disciple Zan requested grain for his mother. The Master said, "Give
her a *fu.*” Yen requested more. “Give her a *yu,*” said the Master. Yen gave her five ping.

2. The Master said, “When Ch‘ih was proceeding to Ch‘i, he had fat horses to his carriage, and wore light furs. I have heard that a superior man helps the distressed, but does not add to the wealth of the rich.”

3. Yuan Sze being made governor of his town by the Master, he gave him nine hundred measures of grain, but Sze declined them.

4. The Master said, “Do not decline them. May you not give them away in the neighborhoods, hamlets, towns, and villages?”

第四章 子謂仲弓曰,犂牛之子,駿且角,雖曰勿用,山川其舍諸。

Chap. iv The Master speaking of Chung-kung, said, “If the calf of a brindled cow be red and horned, although men may not wish to use it, would the spirits of the mountains and rivers put it aside?”

第五章 子曰,同也,其心三月不違仁,其餘,則日月至焉而已矣。

Chap. v. The Master said, “Such was Hui that for three months there would be nothing in his mind contrary to perfect virtue. The others may attain to this on some days or in some months, but nothing more.”
Chap vi. Chi K'ang asked about Chung-yu, whether he was fit to be employed as an officer of government. The Master said, "Yu is a man of decision; what difficulty would he find in being an officer of government?" K'ang asked, "Is Ts'ze fit to be employed as an officer of government?" and was answered, "Ts'ze is a man of intelligence; what difficulty would he find in being an officer of government?" And to the same question about Ch'iu the Master gave the same reply, saying, "Ch'iu is a man of various ability."

Chap vii. The chief of the Chi family sent to ask Min Tsze-ch'ien to be governor of Pi. Min Tsze-ch'ien said, "Decline the offer for me politely. If any one come again to me with a second invitation, I shall be obliged to go and live on the banks of the Wan."

Chap. viii. Po-niu being ill, the Master went to ask for him. He took hold of his hand through the window, and said, "It is killing
him. It is the appointment of Heaven, alas! That such a man should have such a sickness! That such a man should have such a sickness!"

第九章 子曰，賢哉回也。一簞食，一瓢飲，在陋巷，人不堪其憂，回也不改其樂，賢哉回也。

Chap. ix. The Master said, "Admirable indeed was the virtue of Hui! With a single bamboo dish of rice, a single gourd dish of drink, and living in his mean narrow lane, while others could not have endured the distress, he did not allow his joy to be affected by it. Admirable indeed was the virtue of Hui!"

第十章 冉求曰，非不說子之道，力不足也。子曰，力不足者，中道而廢。今女晉。

Chap. x. Yen Ch'iu said, "It is not that I do not delight in your doctrines, but my strength is insufficient." The Master said, "Those whose strength is insufficient give over in the middle of the way but now you limit yourself."

第十一章 子謂子夏曰，女為君子儒，無為小人儒。

Chap. xi. The Master said to Tsze-hsia, "Do you be a scholar after the style of the superior man, and not after that of the mean man."

第十二章 子遊為武城宰，子曰，女得人焉耳乎？曰，有澹臺滅明者，行不由徑，非公事，未嘗至於偃之室也。

Chap. xii. Tsze-yu being governor of Wu-ch'ang, the Master said to him, "Have you got good men there?" He answered, "There is
Tan-t'ai Miehming, who never in walking takes a short cut, and never comes to my office, excepting on public business.''

第十三章 子曰,孟之反不伐,奔而殿,將入門,策其馬,曰,非敢後也,馬不進也.

Chap. xiii. The Master said, "Mang Chih-fan does not boast of his merit. Being in the rear on an occasion of flight, when they were about to enter the gate, he whipped up his horse, saying, "It is not that I dare to be last. My horse would not advance.''

第十四章 子曰,不有祝鮎之佞,而有宋朝之美,難乎免於今之世矣.

Chap. xiv. The Master said, "Without the specious speech of the litanist T'o and the beauty of the prince Chao of Sung, it is difficult to escape in the present age.''

第十五章 子曰,誰能出不由戶,何莫由斯道也.

Chap. xv. The Master said, "Who can go out but by the door? How is it that men will not walk according to these ways?''

第十六章 子曰,質勝文則野,文勝質則史,文質彬彬,然後君子.

Chap. xvi. The Master said, "Where the solid qualities are in excess of accomplishments, we have rusticity; where the accomplishments are in excess of the solid qualities, we have the manners
of a clerk. When the accomplishments and solid qualities are equally blended, we then have the man of virtue.”

Chap. XVII. The Master said, “Man is born for uprightness. If a man lose his uprightness and yet live his escape from death is the effect of mere good fortune.”

Chap. XVIII. The Master said, “They who know the truth are not equal to those who love it, and they who love it are not equal to those who delight in it.”

Chap. XIX. The Master said, “To those whose talents are above mediocrity, the highest subject may be announced. To those who are below mediocrity, the highest subjects may not be announced.”

Chap. XX. Fan Ch’ih asked what constituted wisdom. The Master said, To give one’s self earnestly to the duties due to men, and, while respecting spiritual beings, to keep aloof from them, may be called wisdom.” He asked about
perfect virtue. The Master said, "The man of virtue makes the difficulty to be overcome his first business, and success only a subsequent consideration;—this may be called perfect virtue."

第二十一章 子曰，知者樂水，仁者樂山。知者動，仁者靜。知者樂，仁者壽。

Chap. xxI. The Master said, "The wise find pleasure in water; the virtuous find pleasure in hills. The wise are active; the virtuous are tranquil. The wise are joyful; the virtuous are long-lived."

第二十二章 子曰，齊一變，至於魯，魯一變，至於道。

Chap. xxII. The Master said, "Ch'i, by change, would come to the State of Lu. by one change, would come to a state true principles predominated."

第二十三章 子曰，觚，不觚，觚哉觚哉。

Chap. xxIII. The Master said, "A cornered vessel without corners.—A strange cornered vessel! A strange cornered vessel!"

第二十四章 宰我問曰，仁者誡告之曰，井有仁焉，其從之也。子曰，何為其然也，君子可逝也，不可陷也，可欺也，不可罔也。

Chap. xxIV Ts'ai Wo asked, saying, "A benevolent man, though it be told him,—‘there is a man in the well,’ will go in after him. I
suppose.” Confucius said, “Why should he do so?” A superior man may be made to go to the well, but he cannot be made to go down into it. He may be imposed upon, but he cannot be befooled.”

Chap. xxv. The Master said, “The superior man, extensively studying all learning, and keeping himself under the restraint of the rules of propriety, may thus likewise not overstep what is right.”

Chap. xxvi. The Master having visited Nantsze, Tsze-lu was displeased, on which the Master swore, saying, “Wherein I have done improperly, may Heaven reject me! may Heaven reject me!”

Chap. xxvii. The Master said, “Perfect is the virtue which is according to the Constant Mean! Rare for a long time has been its practice among the people.”

Chap. xxviii. 1. 子貢曰, 如有博施於民, 而能濟衆, 何如, 可謂仁乎. 子曰, 何事於仁, 必也聖乎, 堯舜其猶病諸. 2. 夫仁者, 己欲立而立人. 己欲達而達人. 3. 能近取譬, 可謂
Chap. xxviii. 1. Tsze-kung said, "Suppose the case of a man extensively conferring benefits on the people, and able to assist all, what would you say of him? Might he be called perfectly virtuous?" The Master said, "Why speak only of virtue in connection with him? Must he not have the qualities of a sage? Even Yao and Shun were still solicitous about this.

2. "Now the man of perfect virtue, wishing to be established himself, seeks also to establish others; wishing to be enlarged himself, he seeks also to enlarge others.

3. "To be able to judge of others by what is nigh in ourselves;—this may be called the art of virtue."

BOOK VII. SHU R 述而 第七

第一章 子曰，述而不作，信而好古，竊比於我老彭。

Chap. 1. The Master said, "A transmitter and not a maker, believing in and loving the ancients, I venture to compare myself with our old P‘ang."

第二章 子曰，默而識之，學而不厭，誨人不倦，何有於我哉。

Chap. 11. The Master said, "The silent treasuring up of knowledge; learning without satiety; and instructing others without being wearied:—which one of these things belongs to me?"
Chap. III. The Master said, “The leaving virtue without proper cultivation; the not thoroughly discussing what is learned; not being able to move towards righteousness of which a knowledge is gained; and not being able to change what is not good:—these are the things which occasion me solicitude.”

Chap. IV. When the Master was unoccupied with business, his manner was easy, and he looked pleased.

Chap. V. The Master said, “Extreme is my decay. For a long time, I have not dreamed, as I was wont to do, that I saw the duke of Chau.”

Chap. VI. 1. The Master said, “Let the will be set on the path of duty.
2. “Let every attainment in what is good be firmly grasped.
3. “Let perfect virtue be accorded with.
4. “Let relaxation and enjoyment be found in the polite arts.”

Chap. VII. The Master said, “I was only one who was superior to others in manner, and I never said anything.”
Chap. vii. The Master said, “From the man bringing his bundle of dried flesh for my teaching upwards, I have never refused instruction to any one.”

第八章 子曰，不憤不啓，不悱不發，舉一隅，不以一隅反，則不復也。

Chap. viii. The Master said, “I do not open up the truth to one who is not eager to get knowledge, nor help out any one who is not anxious to explain himself. When I have presented one corner of a subject to any one, and he cannot from it learn the other three, I do not repeat my lesson.”

第九章 1. 子食於有喪者之側，未嘗飽也。 2. 子於是日哭，則不歌。

Chap. ix. 1. When the Master was eating by the side of a mourner, he never ate to the full.

2. He did not sing on the same day in which he had been weeping.

第十章 1. 子謂顏淵曰，用之則行，舍之則藏，惟我與爾有是夫。 2. 子路曰，子行三軍則誰與。 3. 子曰，暴虎負河，死而無悔者，吾不與也，必也臨事而懼，好謀而成者也。

Chap. x. 1. The Master said to Yen Yuan, “When called to office, to undertake its duties; when not so called, to lie retired;—it is only I and you who have attained to this.”

2. Tsze-lu said, “If you had the conduct of
the armies of a great state, whom would you have to act with you?"

3. The Master said, "I would not have him to act with me, who will unarmed attack a tiger, or cross a river without a boat, dying without any regret. My associate must be the man who proceeds to action full of solicitude, who is fond of adjusting his plans, and then carries them into execution."

第十一章 子曰，富而可求也，雖執鞭之士，吾亦為之，如不可求，從吾所好。

Chap. XI. The Master said, "If the search for riches is sure to be successful, though I should become a groom with whip in hand to get them, I will do so. As the search may not be successful, I will follow after that which I love."

第十二章 子之所懼，齊，戰，疾。

Chap. XII. The things in reference to which the Master exercised the greatest caution were—fasting, war, and sickness.

第十三章 子在齊聞韶，三月不知肉味，曰，不圖為樂之至於斯也。

Chap. XIII. When the Master was in Ch‘i, he heard the Shao, and for three months did not know the taste of flesh. "I did not think." he said, "that music could have been made so excellent as this."
Chapter XIV. 1. Yen Yu said, “Is our Master for the ruler of Wei?” Tsze-kung said, “Oh! I will ask him.”

2. He went in accordingly, and said, “What sort of men were Po-i and Shu-ch‘i?” “They were ancient worthies,” said the Master. “Did they have any repinings because of their course?” The Master again replied, “They sought to act virtuously, and they did so; what was there for them to repine about?” On this, Tsze-kung went out and said, “Our Master is not for him.”

Chapter XV. The Master said, “With coarse rice to eat, with water to drink, and my bended arm for a pillow;—I have still joy in the midst of these things. Riches and honors acquired by unrighteousness are to me as a floating cloud.”

Chapter XVI. The Master said, “If some years were added to my life, I would give fifty to the study of the Yi, and then I might come to be without great faults.”
Chapter XVII. The Master's frequent themes of discourse were—the Odes, the History, and the maintenance of the Rules of Propriety. On all these he frequently discoursed.

Chapter XVIII. 1. The duke of Sheh asked Tsze-lu about Confucius, and Tsze-lu did not answer him.

2. The Master said, "Why did you not say to him,—He is simply a man, who in his eager pursuit (of knowledge) forgets his food, who in the joy of its attainment forgets his sorrows, and who does not perceive that old age is coming on?"

Chapter XIX. The Master said, "I am not one who was born in the possession of knowledge; I am one who is fond of antiquity, and earnest in seeking it there."

Chapter XX. The subjects on which the Master did not talk, were—extraordinary things, feats of strength, disorder, and spiritual beings.
Chap. xxI. The Master said, "When I walk along with two others, they may serve me as my teachers. I will select their good qualities and follow them, their bad qualities and avoid them."

第二十二章 子曰,天生德於子,桓魋其如予何。

Chap. xxII. The Master said, "Heaven produced the virtue that is in me. Hwan T’ui—what can he do to me?"

第二十三章 子曰,二三子,以我為隱乎,吾無隱乎爾,吾無行而不與二三子者,是丘也。

Chap. xxIII. The Master said, "Do you think, my disciples, that I have any concealments? I conceal nothing from you. There is nothing which I do that is not shown to you, my disciples;—that is my way."

第二十四章 子以四教,文,行,忠,信。

Chap. xxIV. There were four things which the Master taught,—letters, ethics, devotion of soul, and truthfulness.

第二十五章 1. 子曰,聖人吾不得而見之矣,得見君子者,斯可矣。2. 子曰,善人吾不得而見之矣,得見有恆者,斯可矣。3. 亡而為有,虛而為盈,約而為泰,難乎有恆矣。

Chap. xxV. 1. The Master said, "A sage it is not mine to see; could I see a man of real talent and virtue, that would satisfy me."

2. The Master said, "A good man it is not
mine to see; could I see a man possessed of constancy, that would satisfy me.

3. "Having not and yet affecting to have, empty and yet affecting to be full, straitened and yet affecting to be at ease:—it is difficult with such characteristics to have constancy."

Chap. xxvi. The Master angled,—but did not use a net. He shot,—but not at birds perching.

Chap. xxvii. The Master said, "There may be those who act without knowing why. I do not do so. Hearing much and selecting what is good and following it; seeing much and keeping it in memory:—this is the second style of knowledge."

Chap. xxviii. 1. It was difficult to talk (profitably and reputably) with the people of Hu-hsiang, and a lad of that place having had an interview with the Master, the disciples doubted.

2. The Master said, "I admit people's approach to me without committing myself as
to what they may do when they have retired. Why must one be so severe? If a man purify himself to wait upon me, I receive him so purified, without guaranteeing his past conduct"

第ニ十九章 子曰,仁遠乎哉,我欲仁,斯仁至矣。

Chap. XXIX. The Master said, "Is virtue a thing remote? I wish to be virtuous, and lo! virtue is at hand."

第三十章 1. 陳司敗門昭公知禮乎. 孔子曰, 知禮. 2. 孔子退, 拙巫馬期而進之, 曰, 吾聞君子不黨, 君子亦黨乎, 君取於呂爲同姓, 謂之呂孟子, 君而知禮, 誰不知禮. 3. 巫馬期以告, 子曰, 丘也幸, 有過, 人必知之。

Chap. XXX. 1. The minister of crime of Ch' an asked whether the duke Chao knew propriety, and Confucius said, "He knew propriety."

2. Confucius having retired, the minister bowed to Wu-ma, Ch'i to come forward, and said, "I have heard that the superior man is not a partisan. May the superior man be a partisan also? The prince married a daughter of the house of Wu, of the same surname with himself, and called her,—'The elder Tsze of Wu.' If the prince knew propriety, who does not know it?"

3. Wu-ma Ch'i reported these remarks, and the Master said, "I am fortunate! If I
have any errors, people are sure to know them.”

Chap. XXXI. When the Master was in company with a person who was singing, if he sang well, he would make him repeat the song, while he accompanied it with his own voice.

Chap. XXXII. The Master said, "In letters I am perhaps equal to other men, but the character of the superior man, carrying out in his conduct what he professes, is what I have not yet attained to.”

Chap. XXXIII. The Master said, "The sage and the man of perfect virtue;—how dare I rank myself with them? It may simply be said of me, that I strive to become such without satiety, and teach others without weariness.” Kung-hsi Hwa said. “This is just what we, the disciples, cannot imitate you in.”

Chap. XXXIV. The Master being very sick, Tsze-lu asked leave to pray for him. He said, “May such a thing be done?” Tsze-lu replied,
“It may. In the Eulogies it is said, 'Prayer has been made for thee to the spirits of the upper and lower worlds.'” The Master said, “My praying has been for a long time.”

第三十五章 子曰,奢,則不孫,儉,則固,與其不孫也,寧固.

Chap. xxxv. The Master said, “Extravagance leads to insubordination, and parsimony to meanness. It is better to be mean than to be insubordinate.”

第三十六章 子曰,君子坦蕩蕩,小人長戚戚.

Chap. xxxvi. The Master said, “The superior man is satisfied and composed; the mean man is always full of distress.”

第三十七章 子溫而厲,威而不猛,恭而安.

. xxxvii. The Master was mild, and yet dignified; majestic, and yet not fierce; respectful, and yet easy.

**BOOK VIII. T‘AI-PO 泰伯 第八**

第一章 子曰,泰伯其可謂至德也已矣,三以天下讓,民無得而稱焉.

Chap. 1. The Master said, “T’ai-po may be said to have reached the highest point of virtuous action. Thrice he declined the kingdom, and the people in ignorance of his motives could not express their approbation of his conduct”
Chap. 11. 1. The Master said, “Respectfulness, without the rules of propriety, becomes laborious bustle: carefulness, without the rules of propriety, becomes timidity: boldness, without the rules of propriety, becomes insubordination: straightforwardness without the rules of propriety, becomes rudeness.

2. “When those who are in high stations perform well all their duties to their relations, the people are aroused to virtue. When old friends are not neglected by them, the people are preserved from meanness.”

Chap. III. The philosopher Tsang being ill, he called to him the disciples of his school, and said, “Uncover my feet, uncover my hands. It is said in the Book of Poetry, ‘We should be apprehensive and cautious, as if on the brink of a deep gulf, as if treading on thin ice,’ and so have I been. Now and hereafter, I know my escape from all injury to my person. O ye, my little children.”
Chap. Ⅳ. 1. The philosopher Tsang being ill, Mang Chang went to ask how he was.

2. Tsang said to him, "When a bird is about to die, its notes are mournful; when a man is about to die, his words are good.

3. "There are three principles of conduct which the man of high rank should consider specially important:—that in his deportment and manner he keep from violence and heedlessness; that in regulating his countenance he keep near to sincerity; and that in his words and tones he keep far from lowness and impro priety. As to such matters as attending to the sacrificial vessels, there are the proper officers for them."

Chap. Ⅴ. The philosopher Tsang said, "Gifted with ability, and yet putting questions to those who were not so; possessed of much, and yet putting questions to those possessed of little; having, as though he had not; full, and yet counting himself as empty; offended against, and yet entering into no altercation; formerly I had a friend who pursued this style of conduct."
Chap. vi. The philosopher Tsang said, “Suppose that there is an individual who can be intrusted with the charge of a young orphan prince, and can be commissioned with authority over a state of a hundred li, and whom no emergency however great can drive from his principles:— is such a man a superior man? He is a superior man indeed.”

Chap. vii. 1. The philosopher Tsang said, “The officer may not be without breadth of mind and vigorous endurance. His burden is heavy and his course is long.

2. “Perfect virtue is the burden which he considers it is his to sustain;—is it not heavy? Only with death does his course stop;—is it not long?”

Chap. viii. 1. The Master said, “It is by the Odes that the mind is aroused.

2. “It is by the Rules of Propriety that the character is established.

3. “It is from Music that the finish is received.”

Chap. ix. The Master said, “It is by the Odes that the mind is aroused.

2. “It is by the Rules of Propriety that the character is established.

3. “It is from Music that the finish is received.”
Chap.  IX.  The Master said, "The people may be made to follow a path of action, but they may not be made to understand it."

第十章  子曰,好勇疾貧,亂也,人而不仁,疾之已甚,亂也。

Chap.  x.  The Master said, "The man who is fond of daring and is dissatisfied with poverty, will proceed to insubordination. So will the man who is not virtuous, when you carry your dislike of him to an extreme."

第十一章  子曰,如有周公之才之美,使驕且吝,其餘不足觀也已。

Chap.  xi.  The Master said, "Though a man have abilities as admirable as those of the duke of Chau, yet if he be proud and niggardly, those other things are really not worth being looked at."

第十二章  子曰,三年學,不至於穀,不易得也。

Chap.  xii.  The Master said, "It is not easy to find a man who has learned for three years without coming to be good."

第十三章  1. 子曰,篤信好學,守死善道。 2. 其邦不入,亂邦不居,天下有道則見,無道則隱。 3. 邑有道,貧且賤焉,恥也,邦無道,富且貴焉,恥也。

Chap.  xiii.  1. The Master said, "With sincere faith he unites the love of learning; holding firm to death, he is perfecting the excellence of his course."
2. "Such a one will not enter a tottering state, nor dwell in a disorganized one. When right principles of government prevail in the kingdom, he will show himself; when they are prostrated, he will keep concealed.

3. "When a country is well governed, poverty and a mean condition are things to be ashamed of. When a country is ill governed, riches and honor are things to be ashamed of."

第十四章 子曰,不在其位,不謀其政。

Chap. xiv. The Master said, "He who is not in any particular office has nothing to do with plans for the administration of its duties."

第十五章 子曰,師摯之始,關雎之亂,洋洋乎,盈耳哉。

Chap. xv. The Master said, "When the music master Chih first entered on his office, the finish of the Kwan Tsu was magnificent;—how it filled the ears!"

第十六章 子曰,狂而不直,侗而不愿,倥倥而不信,吾不知之矣。

Chap. xvi. The Master said, "Ardent and yet not upright, stupid and yet not attentive; simple and yet not sincere:—such persons I do not understand."

第十七章 子曰,學如不及,鳧鳧忘失之。

Chap. xvii. The Master said, "Learn as if you could not reach your object, and were always fearing also lest you should lose it."
Chap. xviii. The Master said, "How majestic was the manner in which Shun and Yu held possession of the empire, as if it were nothing to them!"

Chap. xlix. 1. The Master said, "Great indeed was Yao as a sovereign! How majestic was he! It is only Heaven that is grand, and only Yao corresponded to it. How vast was his virtue! The people could find no name for it.

2. "How majestic was he in the works which he accomplished! How glorious in the elegant regulations which he instituted!"

Chap. xx. 1. Shun had five ministers, and the empire was well governed.

2. King Wu said, "I have ten able ministers."

3. Confucius said, "Is not the saying that talents are difficult to find, true? Only when
the dynasties of T‘ang and Yu met, were they more abundant than in this of Chau, yet there was a woman among them. The able ministers were no more than nine men.

4. “King Wan possessed two of the three parts of the empire, and with these he served the dynasty of Yin. The virtue of the house of Chau may be said to have reached the highest point indeed.”

第十一章 子曰，禹，吾無間然矣。菲飲食，而致孝乎鬼神，惡衣服，而致美乎黻冕。卑宮室，而盡力乎溝洫。禹，吾無間然矣。

Chap. xx1. The Master said, “I can find no flaw in the character of Yu. He used himself coarse food and drink, but displayed the utmost filial piety towards the spirits. His ordinary garments were poor, but he displayed the utmost elegance in his sacrificial cap and apron. He lived in a low, mean house, but expended all his strength on the ditches and water channels. I can find nothing like a flaw in Yu.”

BOOK IX. TSZE HAN 子罕 第九

第一章 子罕言，利，與命，與仁。

Chap. 1. The subjects of which the Master seldom spoke were—profitableness, and also the appointments of Heaven, and perfect virtue.

第二章 1. 達者黨人曰，大哉孔子，博學而無所成名。 2. 子
Chap. II. 1. A man of the village of Tashiang said, “Great indeed is the philosopher K‘ung! His learning is extensive, and yet he does not render his name famous by any particular thing.”

2. The Master heard the observation, and said to his disciples, “What shall I practice? Shall I practice charioteering, or shall I practice archery? I will practice charioteering.”

Chap. III. 1. The Master said, “The linen cap is that prescribed by the rules of ceremony, but now a silk one is worn. It is economical, and I follow the common practice.

2. “The rules of ceremony prescribe the bowing below the hall, but now the practice is to bow only after ascending it. That is arrogant. I continue to bow below the hall, though I oppose the common practice.”

Chap. IV There were four things from which the Master was entirely free. He had no foregone conclusions, no arbitrary predeterminations, no obstinacy, and no egoism.

第五章 1. 子畏於匡。 2. 曰，文王既没，文不在兹乎。 3. 天之將喪斯文也，後死者不得與於斯文也，天之未喪斯文
Chap. v. 1. The Master was put in fear in K’wang.

2. He said, “After the death of King Wan, was not the cause of truth lodged here in me?”
3. “If Heaven had wished to let this cause of truth perish, then I, a future mortal should not have got such a relation to that cause. While Heaven does not let the cause of truth perish, what can the people of K’wang do to me?”

第六章 1. 大宰問於子貢，曰，夫子聖者與，何其多能也。
2. 子貢曰，固天縱之將聖，又多能也。3. 子聞之曰，大宰知我乎，吾少也貞，故多能，鄙事，君子多乎哉，不多也。4. 宅曰，子云，吾不試，故藝。

Chap. vi. 1. A high officer asked Tsze-kung, saying, “May we not say that your Master is a sage? How various is his ability!”

2. Tsze-kung said, “Certainly Heaven has endowed him unlimitedly. He is about a sage. And, moreover, his ability is vorious.”
3. The Master heard of the conversation and said, “Does the high officer know me? When I was young, my condition was low, and therefore I acquired my ability in many things, but they were mean matters. Must the superior man have such variety of ability? He does not need variety of ability.”
4. Lao said, “The Master said, ‘Having no official employment, I acquired many arts.’”
Chap. vii. The Master said, "Am I indeed possessed of knowledge? I am not knowing. But if a mean person, who appears quite emptylike, ask anything of me, I set it forth from one end to the other, and exhaust it."

Chap. viii. The Master said, "The FANG bird does not come; the river sends forth on map:—it is all over with me!"

Chap. ix. When the Master saw a person in a mourning dress, or any one with the cap and upper and lower garments of full dress, or a blind person, on observing them approaching, though they were younger than himself, he would rise up, and if he had to pass by them, he would do so hastily.

Chap. x. 1. Yen Yuan, in admiration of the Master's doctrines, sighed and said, "I looked up to them, and they seemed to become more high;
1. tried to penetrate them, and they seemed to become more firm; I looked at them before me, and suddenly they seemed to be behind;

2. "The Master, by orderly method, skillfully leads men on. He enlarged my mind with learning, and taught me the restraints of propriety.

3. "When I wish to give over the study of his doctrines, I cannot do so, and having exerted all my ability, there seems something to stand right up before me; but though I wish to follow and lay hold of it, I really find no way to do so."

第十一章 1. 子疾病, 子路使門人為臣. 2. 病間曰, 久矣哉, 由之行詐也, 無臣而為有臣, 有誰欺, 欺天乎. 3. 且子與其死於臣之手也, 毋寧死於二三子之手乎, 且子縱不得大葬, 子死於道路乎.

Chap. xi. 1. The Master being very ill, Tsze-lu wished the disciples to act as ministers to him.

2. During a remission of his illness, he said, "Long has the conduct of Yu been deceitful! By pretending to have ministers when I have them not, whom should I impose upon? Should I impose upon Heaven?

3. "Moreover, than that I should die in the hands of ministers, is it not better that I should die in the hands of you, my disciples? And though I may not get a great burial, shall
Chap. XII. Tsze-kung said, "There is a beautiful gem here. Should I lay it up in a case and keep it? or should I seek for a good price and sell it?" The Master said, "Sell it! Sell it! But I would wait for one to offer the price."

Chap. XIII. The Master was wishing to go and live among the nine wild tribes of the east.

2. Some one said, "They are rude. How can you do such a thing?" The Master said, "If a superior man dwelt among them, what rudeness would there be?"

Chap. XIV. The Master said, "I returned from Wei to Lo, and then the music was reformed, and the pieces in the Royal songs and Praise songs all found their proper places."

Chap. XV. The Master said, "Abroad, to serve the high ministers and nobles; at home, to serve one's father and elder brothers; in all
duties to the dead, not to dare not to exert one's self; and not to be overcome of wine:—
which one of these things do I attain to?"

第十六章 子在川上曰,逝者如斯夫,不舍晝夜。

Chap. XVI. The Master standing by a stream, said, "It passes on just like this, not ceasing day or night!"

第十七章 子曰:吾未見好德,如好色者也。

Chap. XVII. The Master said, "I have not seen one who loves virtue as he loves beauty."

第十八章 子曰:譬如為山,未成一篑,止,吾止也,譬如平地。雖覆一篑,進,吾往也。

Chap. XVIII. The Master said, "The prosecution of learning may be compared to what may happen in raising a mound. If there want but one basket of earth to complete the work, and I stop, the stopping is my own work. It may be compared to throwing down the earth on the level ground. Though but one basketful is thrown at a time, the advancing with it is my own going forward."

第十九章 子曰:語之而不惰者,其同也與。

Chap. XIX. The Master said, "Never flagging when I set forth anything to him;—ah! that is Hui."

第二十章 子謂顏淵曰:惜乎,吾見其進也,未見其止也。

Chap. XX. The Master said of Yen Yuan,
“Alas! I saw his constant advance. I never saw him stop in his progress.”

第21章 子曰，苗而不秀者，有矣夫。秀而不實者，有矣夫。

Chap. XXI. The Master said, “There are cases in which the blade springs, but the plant does not go on to flower! There are cases where it flowers but no fruit is subsequently produced!”

第22章 子曰，後生可畏，焉知來者之不如今也，四十五十而無聞焉，斯亦不足畏也已。

Chap. XXII. The Master said, “A youth is to be regarded with respect. How do we know that his future will not be equal to our present? If he reach the age of forty or fifty, and has not made himself heard of, then indeed he will not be worth being regarded with respect.”

第23章 子曰，法語之言，能無從乎，改之為貴，巽與之言，能無說乎，釋之為貴，說而不釋，從而不忘。吾末如之何也已矣。

Chap. XXIII. The Master said, “Can men refuse to assent to the words of strict admonition? But it is reforming the conduct because of them which is valuable. Can men refuse to be pleased with words of gentle advice? But it is unfolding their aim which is valuable. If a man be pleased with these words, but does
not unfold their aim, and assents to those, but does not reform his conduct, I can really do nothing with him.’

Chap. xxiv. The Master said, "Hold faithfulness and sincerity as first principles. Have no friends not equal to yourself. When you have faults, do not fear to abandon them."

Chap. xxv. 1. The Master said, "The commander of the forces of a large state may be carried off, but the will of even a common man cannot be taken from him."

Chap. xxvi. 1. The Master said, "Dressed himself in a tattered robe quilted with hemp, yet standing by the side of men dressed in furs, and not ashamed;—ah! it is Yu who is equal to this!

2. "He dislikes none, he covets nothing;—what can he do but what is good!"

3. Tsze-lu kept continually repeating these words of the ode, when the Master said, "Those things are by no means sufficient to constitute (Perfect) excellence."
Chap. xxvii. The Master said, "When the year becomes cold, then we know how the pine and the cypress are the last to lose their leaves."

Chap. xxviii. The Master said, "The wise are free from perplexities; the virtuous from anxiety; and the bold from fear."

Chap. xxix. The Master said, "There are some with whom we may study in common, but we shall find them unable to go along with us to principles. Perhaps we may go on with them to principles, but we shall find them unable to get established in those along with us. Or if we may get so established along with them, we shall find them unable to weigh occurring events along with us."

Chap. xxx. 1. How the flowers of the aspenplum flutter and turn! Do I not think of you? But your house is distant. 2. The Master said, "It is the want of thought about it. How is it distant?"
BOOK X. HEANG TANG 鄉黨 第十

第一章 1. 孔子於鄉黨, 恂恂如也, 似不能言者。 2. 其在宗廟朝廷, 便便言, 唯謹爾。

Chap. I. 1. Confucius, in his village, looked simple and sincere, and as if he were not able to speak.

2. When he was in the prince's ancestral temple, or in the court, he spoke minutely on every point, but cautiously.

第二章 1. 朝, 與下大夫言, 侃侃如也, 與上大夫言, 闇闇如也。 2. 君在, 蹀躇如也, 與與如也。

Chap. II. 1. When he was waiting at court, in speaking with the great officers of the lower grade, he spoke freely, but in a straightforward manner; in speaking with those of the higher grade, he did so blandly, but precisely.

2. When the ruler was present, his manner displayed respectful uneasiness; it was grave, but self possessed.

第三章 1. 君召使儐, 色勃如也, 足蹤如也。 2. 揖所與立,左右手, 衣前後, 箇如也。 3. 足進, 翩如也。 4. 資退, 必復命曰, 資不顧矣。

Chap. III. 1. When the prince called him to employ him in the reception of a visitor, his countenance appeared to change, and his legs to move forward with difficulty.
2. He inclined himself to the other officers among whom he stood, moving his left or right arm, as their position required, but keeping the skirts of his robe before and behind evenly adjusted.

3. He hastened forward, with his arms like the wings of a bird.

4. When the guest had retired, he would report to the prince, “The visitor is not turning round any more.”

Chap iv 1. When he entered the palace gate, he seemed to bend his body, as if it were not sufficient to admit him.

2. When he was standing, he did not occupy the middle of the gateway; when he passed in or out, he did not tread upon the threshold.

3. When he was passing the vacant place of the prince, his countenance appeared to change, and his legs to bend under him, and his words came as if he hardly had breath to utter them.

4. He ascended the reception hall, holding up his robe with both his hands, and his body
bent; holding in his breath also, as if he dared not breathe.

5. When he came out from the audience, as soon as he had descended one step, he began to relax his countenance, and had a satisfied look. When he had got to the bottom of the steps, he advanced rapidly to his place, with his arms like wings, and on occupying it, his manner still showed respectful uneasiness.

Chap. v 1. When he was carrying the scepter of his ruler, he seemed to bend his body, as if he were not able to bear its weight. He did not hold it higher than the position of the hands in making a bow, nor lower than their position in giving anything to another. His countenance seemed to change, and look apprehensive, and he dragged his feet along as if they were held by something to the ground.

2. In presenting the presents with which he was charged, he wore a placid appearance.

3. At his private audience, he looked highly pleased.

Chap. VI. 1. The superior man did not use a deep purple, or a puce color, in the ornaments of his dress.

2. Even in his undress, he did not wear anything of a red or reddish color.

3. In warm weather, he had a single garment either of coarse or fine texture, but he wore it displayed over an inner garment.

4. Over lamb's fur he wore a garment of black; over fawn's fur one of white; and over fox's fur one of yellow.

5. The fur robe of his undress was long, with the right sleeve short.

6. He required his sleeping dress to be half as long again as his body.

7. When staying at home, he used thick furs of the fox or the badger.

8. When he put off mourning, he wore all the appendages of the girdle.

9. His undergarment, except when it was required to be of the curtain shape, was made of silk out narrow above and wide below.

10. He did not wear lamb's fur or a black cap, on a visit of condolence.

11. On the first day of the month he put on his court robes, and presented himself at court.
Chap. vii. 1. When fasting, he thought it necessary to have his clothes brightly clean and made of linen cloth.

2. When fasting, he thought it necessary to change his food, and also to change the place where he commonly sat in the apartment.

Chap. viii. 1. He did not dislike to have his rice finely cleaned, nor to have his minced meat cut quite small.

2. He did not eat rice which had been injured by heat or damp and turned sour, nor fish or flesh which was gone. He did not eat what was discolored, or what was of a bad flavor, nor anything which was illcooked, or was not in season.

3. He did not eat meat which was not cut properly, nor what was served without its proper sauce.

4. Though there might be a large quantity of meat, he would not allow what he took to
exceed the due proportion for the rice. It was only in wine that he laid down no limit for himself, but he did not allow himself to be confused by it.

5. He did not partake of wine and dried meat bought in the market.

6. He was never without ginger when he ate.

7. He did not eat much.

8. When he had been assisting at the prince's sacrifice, he did not keep the flesh which he received overnight. The flesh of his family sacrifice he did not keep over three days. If kept over three days, people could not eat it.

9. When eating, he did not converse. When in bed, he did not speak.

10. Although his food might be coarse rice and vegetable soup, he would offer a little of it in sacrifice with a grave, respectful air.

Chap. IX. If his mat was not straights, he did not sit on it.

Chap. X. 1. When the villagers were drinking together, on those who carried staffs going out, he went out immediately after.

2. When the villagers were going through
their ceremonies to drive away pestilential influences, he put on his court robes and stood on the eastern steps.

第十一章 1. 開人於他邦, 再拜而送之。2. 康王饋藥, 拜而受之, 曰, 丘未達, 不敢嘗。

Chap. XI. 1. When he was sending complimentary inquiries to any one in another state, he bowed twice as he escorted the messenger away.

2. Chi K'ang having sent him a present of physic, he bowed and received it, saying, “I do not know it. I dare not taste it.”

第十二章 座焚, 子退朝, 曰, 傷人乎, 不問馬。

Chap. xii. The stable being burned down, when he was at court, on his return he said, “Has any man been hurt?” He did not ask about the horses.

第十三章 1. 君賜食, 必正席, 先尝之, 君賜腥, 必熟而薦之, 君賜生, 必畜之。2. 服食於君, 君祭, 先飯。3. 疾, 君視之, 朝首, 加朝服拖紳。4. 君命召, 不俟駕, 行矣。

Chap. XIII. 1. When the prince sent him a gift of cooked meat, he would adjust his mat, first taste it, and then give it away to others. When the prince sent him a gift of undressed meat, he would have it cooked, and offer it to the spirits of his ancestors. When the prince sent him a gift of a living animal, he would keep it alive.
2. When he was in attendance on the prince and joining in the entertainment, the prince only sacrificed. He first tasted everything.

3. When he was ill and the prince came to visit him, he had his head to the east, made his court robes be spread over him, and drew his girdle across them.

4. When the prince's order called him, without waiting for his carriage to be yoked, he went at once.

Chap. xiv. When he entered the ancestral temple of the state, he asked about everything.

Chap. xv
1. When any of his friends died, if he had no relations who could be depended on for the necessary offices, he would say, "I will bury him."

2. When a friend sent him a present, though it might be a carriage and horses, he did not bow.

3. The only present for which he bowed was that of the flesh of sacrifice.
Chap. xvi. 1. In bed, he did not lie like a corpse. At home, he did not put on any formal deportment.

2. When he saw any one in a mourning dress, though it might be an acquaintance, he would change countenance; when he saw any one wearing the cap of full dress, or a blind person, though he might be in his undress, he would salute them in a ceremonious manner.

3. To any person in mourning he bowed forward to the crossbar of his carriage; he bowed in the same way to any one bearing the tables of population.

4. When he was at an entertainment where there was an abundance of provisions set before him, he would change countenance and rise up.

5. On a sudden clap of thunder, or a violent wind, he would change countenance.

Chap. xvii. 1. When he was about to mount his carriage, he would stand straight, holding the cord.

2. When he was in the carriage, he did not turn his head quite round, he did not talk hastily, he did not point with his hands.

第十七章 1. 升車,必正立,執紵. 2. 車中,不內顧,不疾言. 不親指.

第十八章 1. 色斯舉矣,翔而後集. 2. 曰, 岩梁雉雉, 時哉時哉. 子路共之, 三嗅而作.
Chap. XVIII. 1. Seeing the countenance, it instantly rises. It flies round, and by and by settles.

2. The Master said, "There is the heu-pheasant on the hill bridge. At its season! At its season!" Tsze-lu made a motion to it. Thrice it smelled him and then rose.

BOOK XI. HSIEN TSIN 先進 第十一

第一章 1. 子曰, 先進於禮樂, 野人也, 後進於禮樂, 君子也。
2. 如用之, 則吾從先進。

Chap. I. 1. The Master said, "The men of former times in the matters of ceremonies and music were rustics, it is said, while the men of these latter times, in ceremonies and music, are accomplished gentlemen.

2. "If I have occasion to use those things, I follow the men of former times."

第二章 1. 子曰, 從我於陳蔡者, 皆不及門也。 2. 總行, 顚淵, 閔子騫, 季伯牛, 仲弓, 言語, 宰我, 子貢, 政事, 季路, 文學, 子游, 子夏。

Chap. II. 1. The Master said, "Of those who were with me in Ch‘an and Ts‘ai, there are none to be found to enter my door."

2. Distinguished for their virtuous principles and practice, there were Yen Yuan, Min Tsze-ch‘ien, Zan Po-niu, and Chung-kung; for their ability in speech, Tsai Wo and Tsze-kung;
for their administrative talents, Zan Yu and Chi Lu; for their literary accomplishments, Tsze-yu and Tsze-hsia.

Chap. iii. The Master said, "Hui gives me no assistance. There is nothing that I say in which he does not delight."

Chap. iv. The Master said, "Filial indeed is Min Tsze-ch'ien! Other people say nothing of him different from the report of his parents and brothers."

Chap. v. Nan Yung was frequently repeating the lines about a white scepter stone. Confucius gave him the daughter of his elder brother to wife.

Chap. vi. Chi K'ang asked which of the disciples loved to learn. Confucius replied to him, "There was Yen Hui; he loved to learn. Unfortunately his appointed time was short, and he died. Now there is no one who loves to learn, as he did."

Chap. vii. 1. Yen Hui died, Yen Hui asked about a son of a chieftain. Confucius said, "What is the matter?"

Chap. viii. The Master said, "I do not blame them, if they say, 'My father is dead, and I am without a guardian.' I do not blame them, if they say, 'My mother is dead, and I am without a guardian.'"
Chap. VII. 1. When Yen Yuan died, Yen Lu begged the carriage of the Master to sell and get an outer shell for his son's coffin.

2. The Master said, “Every one calls his son his son, whether he has talents or has not talents. There was Li; when he died, he had a coffin but no outer shell. I would not walk on foot to get a shell for him, because, having followed in the rear of the great officers, it was not proper that I should walk on foot.”

Chap. VIII. When Yen Yuan died, the Master said, “Alas! Heaven is destroying me! Heaven is destroying me!”

Chap. IX. 1. When Yen Yuan died, the master bewailed him exceedingly, and the disciples who were with him said, “Master, your grief is excessive!”

2. “Is it excessive?” said he.

3. “If I am not to mourn bitterly for this man, for whom should I mourn?”

Chap. X. 1. Yen Yuan died, the Master desired to bury him deeply. The Master said, “I cannot.”

2. The Master desired to bury him deeply.

3. The Master, to me, the Youth, and also, to the Antiquity, said, “I cannot see the Youth also, but also, the two or three also.”
Chap. x. 1. When Yen Yuan died, the disciples wished to give him a great funeral, and the Master said, “You may not do so.”

2. The disciples did bury him in great style.

3. The Master said, “Hui behaved towards me as his father. I have not been able to treat him as my son. The fault is not mine; it belongs to you, O disciples.”

Chap. xi. Chi Lu asked about serving the spirits of the dead. The Master said, “While you are not able to serve men, how can you serve their spirits?” Chi Lu added, “I venture to ask about death?” He was answered, “While you do not know life, how can you know about death?”

Chap. xii. 1. The disciple Min was standing by his side, looking bland and precise; Tsze-lu, looking bold and soldierly; Zan Yu and Tsze-kung, with a free and straightforward manner. The Master was pleased.

2. (He said), “Yu there!—he will not die a natural death.”

Chap. xiii. 1. 魯人為長府. 2. 閔子騫曰, 仍舊貫. 如之何, 何必改作. 3. 子曰, 夫人不言, 言必有中.
Chap. xiii. 1. Some parties in Lu were going to take down and rebuild the Long Treasury.
   2. Min Tszechien said, "Suppose it were to be repaired after its old style;—why must it be altered and made anew?"
   3. The Master said, "This man seidom speaks; when, he does, he is sure to hit the point."

第十四章 1. 子曰, 由之瑟, 奚為於丘之門. 2. 門人不敬子路, 子曰, 由也, 升堂矣, 未入於室也.

Chap. xiv. 1. The Master said, "What has the lute of Yu to do in my door?"
   2. The other disciples began not to respect Tsze-lu. The Master said, "Yu has ascended to the hall, though he has not yet passed into the inner apartments."

第十五章 1. 子貢問師與商也孰賢, 子曰, 師也過, 商也不及. 2. 曰, 然則師愈矣. 3. 子曰, 過猶不及.

Chap. xv. 1. Tsze-kung asked which of the two, Shih or Shang, was the superior. The Master said, "Shih goes beyond the due mean. and Shang does not come up to it."
   2. "Then," said Tsze-kung, "the superiority is with Shih, I suppose."
   3. The Master said, "To go beyond is a as wrong as to fall short."

第十六章 1. 季氏富於周公, 而求也為之聚斂而附益之. 2. 子曰, 非吾徒也, 小子, 鳴鼓而攻之, 可也.
Chap. xvi. 1. The head of the Chi family was richer than the duke of Chan had been, and yet Ch’iu collected his imposts for him, and increased his wealth.

2. The Master said, “He is no disciple of mine. My little children, beat the drum and assail him.”

Chap. xvii. 1. Ch’ai is simple.
   2. Shan is dull.
   3. Shih is specious.
   4. Yu is coarse.

Chap. xviii. 1. The Master said, “There is Hui! He has nearly attained to perfect virtue. He is often in want.”
   2. “Ts’ze does not acquiesce in the appointments of Heaven, and goods are increased by him. Yet his judgments are often correct.”

Chap. xix. Tsze-chang asked what were the characteristics of the GOOD man. The Master said, “He does not tread in the footsteps of others, but, moreover, he does not enter the chamber of the sage.”

Chap. xx. The Master said, "If, because a man's discourse appears solid and sincere, we allow him to be a good man, is he really a superior man? or is his gravity only in appearance?"

Chap. xxI. Tsze-lu asked whether he should immediately carry into practice what he heard. The Master said, "There are your father and elder brothers to be consulted;—why should you act on that principle of immediately carrying into practice what you hear?" Zan Yu asked the same, whether he should immediately carry into practice what he heard, and the Master answered, "Immediately carry into practice what you hear." Kung-hsi Hwa said, "Yu asked whether he should carry immediately into practice what he heard, and you said, "There are your father and elder brothers to be consulted." Ch'iu asked whether he should immediately carry into practice what he heard, and you said, "Carry it immediately into practice." "I, Ch'ih, am perplexed, and venture to ask you for an explanation." The Master said, "Ch'iu is retiring and slow;
therefore I urged him forward. Yu has more than his own share of energy; therefore I kept him back."

第十二章 子畏於匡，顏淵後，子曰，吾以女為死矣。曰，子在，問何敢死。

Chap. xxii. The Master was put in fear in K’wang and Yen Yuan fell behind; The Master, on his rejoining him, said, I thought you had died.” Hui replied, “While, you were alive how should I presume to die?”

第二十三章 1. 季子然問仲由冉求，可謂大臣與。2. 子曰，吾以子為異之問，曾由與求之問。3. 所謂大臣者，以道事君，不可則止。4. 今由與求也，可謂具臣矣。5. 曰，然則從之者與。6. 子曰，弑父與君，亦不從也。

Chap. xxiii. 1. Chi Tsze-zan asked whether Chung Yu and Zan Ch’iu could be called great ministers.

2. The Master said, “I thought you would ask about some extraordinary individuals, and you only ask about Yu and Ch’iu!

3. “What is called a great minister, is one who serves his prince according to what is right, and when he finds he cannot do so, retires.

4. “Now, as to Yu and Ch’iu, they may be called ordinary ministers.”

5. Tsze-zan said, “Then they will always follow their chief; — will they?”

6. The Master said, “In an act of parricide
or regicide, they would not follow him."

第二十四章 1. 子路使子羔為費宰。 2. 子曰，賊夫人之子。
3. 子路曰，有民人焉，有社稷焉，何必讀書，然後為學。 4. 子曰，是故惡夫佞者。

Chap. xxiv. 1. Tsze-lu got Tsze-kao appointed governor of Pi.
2. The Master said, "You are injuring a man's son."
3. Tsze-lu said, "There are (there) common people and officers; there are the altars of the spirits of the land and grain. Why must one read books before he can be considered to have learned?"
4. The Master said, "It is on this account that I hate your glib-tongued people."

第二十五章 1. 子路，會曾皙，冉有公西華，侍坐。 2. 子曰，以吾一日長乎爾，毋吾以也。 3. 居則曰，不吾知也，如或知爾，則何以哉。 4. 子路率爾而對曰，千乘之國。 撫乎大國之閒，加之以師旅， 因之以饑饉，由也之為之，比及三年，可使有勇，且知方也。 夫子哂之。 5. 求，爾何如。 對曰，方六七十，如五六十，求也為之，比及三年，可使足民， 如其禮樂，以俟君子。 6. 赤，爾何如。 對曰，非曰能之，願學焉。 宗廟之事， 如會同，端章甫，願為小相焉。 7. 點，爾何如。 鼓瑟希铿爾，舍瑟而作， 對曰，異乎三子者之撰。 子曰，何傷乎， 亦各言其志也。 曰，莫春者， 春服既成，冠者五六人， 童子六七人， 浴乎沂， 風乎舞雩， 詠而歸， 夫子喟然歎曰， 吾與點也。 8. 三子者出， 曾皙後。 曾皙曰， 夫三子者之言何如。 子曰， 亦各言
Chap. XXV. 1. Tsze-lu Tsang Hsi Zan Yu, and Kung-hsi Hwa were sitting by the Master.

2. He said to them, “Though I am a day or so older then you, do not think of that.

3. “From day to day you are saying, ‘We are not known.’ If some ruler were to know you, what would you like to do?”

4. Tsze-lu hastily and lightly replied, “Suppose the case of a state of ten thousand chariots; let it be straitened between other large states; let it be suffering from invading armies; and to this let there be added a famine in corn and in all vegetables:—if I were intrusted with the government of it, in three years’ time I could make the people to be bold, and to recognize the rules of righteous conduct.” The Master smiled at him.

5. Turning to Yen Yu, he said, “Ch‘iu, what are your wishes?” Ch‘iu replied, “Suppose a state of sixty or seventy li square, or one of fifty or sixty, and let me have the government of it;—in three years’ time, I could make plenty to abound among the people. As to teaching them the principles of propriety, and music, I must wait for the rise
of a superior man to do that."

6. "What are your wishes, Ch’ih," said the Master next to Kung-hsi Hwa. Ch’ih replied, "I do not say that my ability extends to these things, but I should wish to learn them. At the services of the ancestral temple, and at the audiences of the princes with the sovereign, I should like, dressed in the dark squaremade robe and the black linen cap, to act as a small assistant."

7. Last of all, the Master asked Tsang Hsi. "Tien, what are your wishes?" Tien, pausing as he was playing on his lute, while it was yet twanging, laid the instrument aside, and rose. "My wishes," he said, "are different from the cherished purposes of these three gentlemen." "What harm is there in that?" said the Master: "do you also, as well as they, speak out your wishes." Tien then said, "In this, the last month of spring, with the dress of the season all complete, along with five or six young men who have assumed the cap, and six or seven boys, I would wash in the I, enjoy the breeze among the rain altars, and return home singing." The Master heaved a sigh and said, "I give my approval to Tien."

8. The three others having gone out, Tsang Hsi remained behind, and said, "What do you
think of the words of these three friends?". The Master replied, "They simply told each one his wishes."

9. Hsi pursued; "Master, why did you smile at Yu?"

10. He was answered, "The management of a state demands the rules of propriety. His words were not humble; therefore I smiled at him."

11. Hsi again said, "But was it not a state which Ch‘iu proposed for himself?" The reply was, "Yes; did you ever see a territory of sixty or seventy li or one of fifty or sixty, which was not a state?"

12. Once more, Hsi inquired, "And was it not a state which Ch‘ih proposed for himself?" The Master again replied, "Yes; who but princes have to do with ancestral temples, and with audiences but the sovereign? If Ch‘ih were to be a small assistant in these services, who could be a great one?"

BOOK XII YEN YUAN 顔淵 第十二

Chap. 1. 1. Yen Yuan asked about perfect
virtue. The Master said, "To subdue one’s self and return to propriety, is perfect virtue. If a man can for one day subdue himself and return to propriety, all under heaven will ascent perfect virtue to him. Is the practice of perfect virtue from a man himself, or is it from others?"

2. Yen Yuan said, "I beg to ask the steps of that process." The Master replied, "Look not at what is contrary to propriety; listen not to what is contrary to propriety; speak not what is contrary to propriety; make no movement which is contrary to propriety." Yen Yuan then said, "Though I am deficient in intelligence and vigor, I will make it my business to practice this lesson."

Chap. u. Chung-kung asked about perfect virtue. The Master said, "It is, when you go abroad, to behave to every one as if you were receiving a great guest; to employ the people as if you were assisting at a great sacrifice; not to do to others as you would not wish done to yourself; to have no murmuring against you in the country, and none in the family." Chung-kung said, "Though I am deficient in intelligence and vigor, I will make it my
business to practice this lesson.'

Chap. III. 1. Sze-ma Niu asked about perfect virtue.

2. The Master said, "The man of perfect virtue is cautious and slow in his speech."

3. "Cautious and slow in his speech!" said Niu;—"is this what is meant by perfect virtue?"

The Master said, "When a man feels the difficulty of doing, can he be other than cautious and slow in speaking?"

Chap. IV. 1. Sze-ma Niu asked about the superior man. The Master said, "The superior man has neither anxiety nor fear."

2. "Being without anxiety or fear!" said Niu;—"does this constitute what we call the superior man?"

3. The Master said, "When internal examination discovers nothing wrong, what is there to be anxious about, what is there to fear?"
Chap. v. 1. Sze-ma Niu, full of anxiety, said, "Other men all have their brothers, I only have not."

2. Tsze-hsia said to him, "There is the following saying which I have heard—

3. "'Death and life have their determined appointment: riches and honors depend upon Heaven.'

4. "Let the superior man never fail reverentially to order his own conduct, and let him be respectful to others and observant of propriety:—then all within the four seas will be his brothers. What has the superior man to do with being distressed because he has no brothers?"

Chap. vi. Tsze-chang asked what constituted intelligence. The Master said, "He with whom neither slander that gradually soaks into the mind, nor statements that startle like a wound in the flesh, are successful, may be called intelligent indeed. Yea, he with whom neither soaking slander, nor startling statements, are successful, may be called farseeing."

第七章 1. 子貢問政。子曰足食, 足兵, 民信之矣。2. 子貢曰, 必不得已而去, 於斯三者何先。曰, 去兵。3. 子貢曰, 必不得已而去, 於斯二者何先。曰, 去食。自古皆有死, 民無信不立。
Chap. VII. 1. Tsze-kung asked about government. The Master said, "The requisites of government are that there be sufficiency of food, sufficiency of military equipment, and the confidence of the people in their ruler."

2. Tsze-kung said, "If it cannot be helped, and one of these must be dispensed with, which of the three should be foregone first?" "The military equipment," said the Master.

3. Tsze-kung again asked, "If it cannot be helped, and one of the remaining two must be dispensed with, which of them should be foregone?" The Master answered, "Part with the food. From of old, death has been the lot of all men; but if the people have no faith in their rulers, there is no standing for the state."

Chap. VIII. 1. Chi Tsze-ch'ang said, "In a superior man it is only the substantial qualities which are wanted;—why should we seek for ornamental accomplishments?"

2. Tsze-kung said, "Alas! Your words, sir, show you to be a superior man, but four horses cannot overtake the tongue.

3. "Ornament is as substance; substance is as ornament. The hide of a tiger or a leopard
stripped of its hair, is like the hide of a dog or a goat stripped of its hair.”

Chap IX. 1. The duke Ai inquired of Yu Zo, saying, “The year is one of scarcity, and the returns for expenditure are not sufficient;—what is to be done?”

2. Yu Zo replied to him, “Why not simply tithe the people?”

3. “With two tenths,” said the duke, “I find them not enough;—how could I do with that system of one tenth?”

4. Yu Zo answered, “If the people have plenty, their prince will not be left to want alone. If the people are in want, their prince cannot enjoy plenty alone.”

Chap. X. 1. Tsze-chang having asked how virtue was to be exalted, and delusions to be discovered, the Master said, “Hold faithfulness and sincerity as first principles, and be moving continually to what is right—this is the way to exalt one’s virtue.

2. “You love a man and wish him to live;
you hate him and wish him to die. Having wished him to live, you also wish him to die. This is a case of delusion.

3. “It may not be on account of her being rich, yet you come to make a difference.”

第十一章 1. 齊景公問政於孔子。2. 孔子對曰，君君，臣臣，父父，子子。3. 公曰，善哉，信如君不君，臣不臣，父不父，子不子，雖有粟，吾得而食諸。

Chap. XI. 1. The duke Ching, of Ch'i, asked Confucius about government.
2. Confucius replied, “There is government, when the prince is prince, and the minister is minister, when the father is father, and the son is son.”
3. “Good!” said the duke; “if, indeed, the prince be not prince, the minister not minister, the father not father, and the son not son, although I have my revenue, can I enjoy it?”

第十二章 1. 子曰，片言可以折獄者，其由也與。2. 子路無宿諾。

Chap. XII. 1. The Master said, “Ah! it is Yu, who could with half a word settle litigations!”
2. Tsze-lu never slept over a promise.

第十三章 子曰，聽誚，吾猶人也，必也，使無訟乎。

Chap. XIII. The Master said, “In hearing litigations, I am like any other body. What is necessary, however, is to cause the people to
have no litigations.”

第十四章 子張問政。子曰，居之無倦，行之以忠。

Chap. XIV. Tsze-chang asked about government. The Master said, “The art of governing is to keep its affairs before the mind without weariness, and to practice them with undeviating consistency.”

第十五章 子曰，博學於文，約之以禮，亦可以弗畔矣夫。

Chap. XV. The Master said, “By extensively studying all learning, and keeping himself under the restraint of the rules of propriety, one may thus likewise not err from what is right.”

第十六章 子曰，君子成人之美，不成人之惡，小人反是。

Chap. XVI. The Master said, “The superior man seeks to perfect the admirable qualities of men, and does not seek to perfect their bad qualities. The mean man does the opposite of this.”

第十七章 季康子問政於孔子。孔子對曰，政者正也，子帥以正，孰敢不正。

Chap. XVII. Chi K‘ang asked Confucius about government. Confucius replied, “To govern means to rectify. If you lead on the people with correctness, who will dare not to be correct?”

第十八章 季康子患盗，問於孔子。孔子對曰，苟子之不欲，蠧賞之不稱。

Chap. XVIII. Chi K‘ang, distressed about the number of thieves in the state, inquired of
Confucius said, "If you, sir, were not covetous, although you should reward them to do it, they would not steal."

Chi K'ang asked Confucius about government, saying, "What do you say to killing the unprincipled for the good of the principled?" Confucius replied, "Sir, in carrying on your government, why should you use killing at all? Let your evinced desires be for what is good, and the people will be good. The relation between superiors and inferiors is like that between the wind and the grass. The grass must bend, when the wind blows across it."

Tsze-chang asked, "What must the officer be, who may be said to be distinguished?" The Master said, "What is it you call being distinguished?"
3. Tsze-chang replied, "It is to be heard of through the state, to be heard of throughout his clan."

4. The Master said, "That is notoriety, hot distinction.

5. "Now the man of distinction is solid and straightforward, and loves righteousness. He examines people's words, and looks at their countenances. He is anxious to humble himself to others. Such a man will be distinguished in the country; he will be distinguished in his clan.

6. "As to the man of notoriety, he assumes the appearance of virtue, but his actions are opposed to it; and he rests in this character without any doubts about himself. Such a man will be heard of in the country; he will be heard of in the clan."

第二十一章 1. 樊遲從遊於舞雩之下，曰，敢問崇德，修慝，辨惑。2. 子曰，善哉問。3. 先事後得，非崇德與，攻其惡，無攻人之惡，非修慝與，一朝之忿，忘其身以及其親，非惑與。

Chap.  XXI.  1. Fan Ch‘ih rambling with the Master under the trees about the rain altars, said, "I venture to ask how to exalt virtue, to correct cherished evil, and to discover delusions."

2. The Master said, "Truly a good question!

3. "If doing what is to be done be made
the first business, and success a secondary consideration:—is not this the way to exalt virtue? To assail one's own wickedness and not assail that of others;—is not this the way to correct cherished evil? For a morning's anger to disregard one's own life, and involve that of his parents; is not this a case of delusion?"

第二十二章 1. 樊遲問仁.子曰, 愛人. 2. 閔子, 人. 3. 閔子, 事之於諸位. 4. 樊遲, 當子, 事之於諸位. 5. 子曰, 興直, 茂然, 何謂也. 6. 子夏, 茂然, 茂然, 何謂也.

Chap. xxii. 1. Fan Ch‘ih asked about benevolence. The Master said, "It is to love all men." He asked about knowledge. The Master said, "It is to know all men."

2. Fan Ch‘ih did not immediately understand these answers.

3. The Master said, "Employ the upright and put aside all the crooked; it this way the crooked can be made to be upright."

4. Fan Ch‘ih retired, and, seeing Tsze-hsia, he said to him, "A little while ago, I had an interview with our Master, and asked him about knowledge. He said, 'Employ the upright, and put aside all the crooked:'—in
this way, the crooked will be made to be upright.' What did he mean?"

5. Tsze-hsia said, "Truly rich is his saying!

6. "Shun, being in possession of the kingdom, selected from among all the people, and employed Kao-yao on which all who were devoid of virtue disappeared. T'ang, being in possession of the kingdom, selected from among all the people, and employed I Yin, and all who were devoid of virtue disappeared."

第二十三章 子貢問友，子曰，忠告而善道之，不可則止，毋自辱焉。

Chap. XXIII. Tsze-kung asked about friendship. The Master said, "Faithfully admonish your friend, and skillfully lead him on. If you find him impracticable, stop. Do not disgrace yourself."

第二十四章 曾子曰，君子以文會友，以友輔仁。

Chap. XXIV. The philosopher Tsang said, "The superior man on grounds of culture meets with his friends, and by their friendship helps his virtue."

BOOK XIII. TSZE- LU 子路 第十三

第一章 子路問政，子曰，先之，勞之。2. 請益，曰，無倦。

Chap. 1. 1. Tsze-lu asked government. The Master said, "Go before the people with your example, and be laborious in their affairs."
2. He requested further instruction, and was answered, “Be not weary (in these things).”

Chap. II. 1. Chung-kung, being chief minister to the head of the Chi family, asked about government. The Master said, “Employ first the services of your various officers, pardon small faults, and raise to office men of virtue and talents.”

2. Chung-kung said, “How shall I know the men of virtue and talent, so that I may raise them to office?” He was answered, “Raise to office those whom you know. As to those whom you do not know, will others neglect them?”

Chap. III. 1. Tsze-lu said, “The ruler of Wei has been waiting for you, in order with you to administer the government. What will you consider the first thing to be done?”
2. The Master replied, "What is necessary is to rectify names."

3. "So, indeed!" said Tsze-lu. "You are wide of the mark! Why must there be such rectification?"

4. The Master said, "How uncultivated you are, Yu! A superior man, in regard to what he does not know, shows a cautious reserve.

5. "If names be not correct, language is not in accordance with the truth of things. If language be not in accordance with the truth of things, affairs cannot be carried on to success.

6. "When affairs cannot be carried on to success, proprieties and music will not flourish. When proprieties and music do not flourish, punishments will not be properly awarded. When punishments are not properly awarded, the people do not know how to move hand or foot.

7. "Therefore a superior man considers it necessary that the names he uses may be spoken appropriately, and also that what he speaks may be carried out appropriately. What the superior man requires is just that in his words there may be nothing incorrect."

✓ 第四章 1. 樊遲請學稼.子曰, 吾不如老農.請學為圃.曰, 吾不如老圃. 2. 樊遲出.子曰, 少人哉, 樊須也. 3. 上好
Chap. IV 1. Fan Ch'ih requested to be taught husbandry. The Master said, "I am not so good for that as an old husbandman." He requested also to be taught gardening, and was answered, "I am not so good for that as an old gardener."

2. Fan Ch'ih having gone out, the Master said, "A small man, indeed, is Fan Hsu!"

3. "If a superior love propriety, the people will not dare not to be reverent. If he love righteousness, the people will not dare not to submit to his example. If he love good faith, the people will not dare not to be sincere. Now, when these things obtain, the people from all quarters will come to him, bearing their children on their backs; — what need has he of a knowledge of husbandry?"

Chap. v. The Master said, "Though a man may be able to recite the three hundred odes, yet if, when intrusted with a governmental charge, he knows not how to act, or if, when sent to any quarter on a mission, he cannot give his replies unassisted, notwithstanding the extent of his learning, of what practical use is
Chap. VI. The Master said, "When a prince's personal conduct is correct, his government is effective without the issuing of orders. If his personal conduct is not correct, he may issue orders, but they will not be followed."

Chap. VII. The Master said, "The governments of Lu and Wei are brothers."

Chap. VIII. The Master said of Ch'ing, a scion of the ducal family of Wei, that he knew the economy of a family well. When he began to have means, he said, "Ha! here is a collection!" When they were a little increased, he said, "Ha! this is complete!" When he had become rich, he said, "Ha! this is admirable!"

Chap. IX. 1. When the Master went to Wei, Zan Yu acted as driver of his carriage.
2. The Master observed, "How numerous are the people!"
3. Yu said, "Since they are thus numerous, what more shall be done for them?" "Enrich
them,” was the reply.

4. “And when they have been enriched, what more shall be done?” The Master said, “Teach them.”

第十章 子曰,苟有用我者,其月而已可也,三年有成.

Chap. x. The Master said, “If there were (any of the princes) who would employ me, in the course of twelve months, I should have done something considerable. In three years, the government would be perfected.”

第十一章 子曰,善人之邦百年,亦可以勝殘去殺矣,誠哉是言也.

Chap. x. The Master said, “If good men were to govern a country in succession for a hundred years, they would be able to transform the violently bad, and dispense with capital punishments.” True indeed is this saying!”

第十二章 子曰,如有王者,必世而徃仁.

Chap. x. The Master said, “If a truly royal ruler were to arise, it would still require a generation, and then virtue would prevail.”

第十三章 子曰,苟正其身矣,於從政乎何有,不能正其身,如正人何.

Chap. x. The Master said, “If a minister make his own conduct correct, what difficulty will he have in assisting in government? If he cannot rectify himself, what has he to do with rectifying others?”
Chap. XIV. The disciple Zan returning from the court, the Master said to him, "How are you so late?" He replied, "We had government business." The Master said, "It must have been family affairs. If there had been government business, though I am not now in office, I should have been consulted about it."

Chap. XV. 1. The duke Ting asked whether there was a single sentence which could make a country prosperous. Confucius replied, "Such an effect cannot be expected from one sentence.

2. "There is a saying, however, which people have—'To be a prince is difficult; to be a minister is not easy.'

3. "If a ruler knows this,—the difficulty of being a prince,—may there not be expected from this one sentence the prosperity of his country?"

4. The duke then said, "Is there a single
sentence which can ruin a country?" Confucius replied, "Such an effect as that cannot be expected from one sentence. There is, however, the saying which people have—‘I have no pleasure in being a prince, but only in that no one can offer any opposition to what I say!’

5. "If a ruler’s words be good, is it not also good that no one oppose them? But if they are not good, and no one opposes them, may there not be expected from this one sentence the ruin of his country?"

第十六章 1. 葉公問政 2. 子曰，近者說，遠者來。
Chap. XVI. 1 The duke of Sheh asked about government.

2. The Master said, "Good government obtains when those who are near are made happy, and those who are far off are attracted."

第十七章 子夏為莒父宰，問政。子曰，無欲速，無見小利，欲速則不達，見小利則大事不成。
Chap. XVII. Tsze-hsia, being governor of Chu-fu, asked about government. The Master said, "Do not be desirous to have things done quickly; do not look at small advantages. Desire to have things done quickly prevents their being done thoroughly. Looking at small advantages prevents great affairs from being accomplished."

第十八章 1. 葉公語孔子曰，吾黨有直躬者，其父攘羊。而子
Chap. XVIII. 1. The duke of Sheh informed Confucius, saying, "Among us here are those who may be styled upright in their conduct. If their father have stolen a sheep, they will bear witness to the fact."

2. Confucius said, "Among us, in our part of the country, those who are upright are different from this. The father conceals the misconduct of the son, and the son conceals the misconduct of the father. Unrightness is to be found in this.''

第十九章 樊遲問仁。子曰，居處恭，執事敬，與人忠，雖之夷狄，不可棄也。

Chap. xix. Fan Ch'ih asked about perfect virtue. The Master said, "It is, in retirement, to be sedately grave; in the management of business, to be reverently attentive; in intercourse with others, to be strictly sincere. Though a man go among rude, uncultivated tribes, these qualities may not be neglected."

第二十章 1. 子貢問曰，何如斯可謂之士矣。子曰，行己有恥，使於四方，不辱君命，可謂士矣。2. 曰，敢問其次。曰，宗族稱孝焉，鄉黨稱弟焉。3. 曰，敢問其次。曰，言必信，行必果，雖變然，小人哉，抑亦可以為次矣。4. 曰，今之從政者何如。子曰，噫，斗筲之人，何足算也。

Chap. xx 1. Tsze-kung asked, saying.
"What qualities must a man possess to entitle him to be called an officer?" The Master said, "He who in his conduct of himself maintains a sense of shame, and when sent to any quarter will not disgrace his prince's commission, deserves to be called an officer."

2. Tsze-kung pursued, "I venture to ask who may be placed in the next lower rank?" and he was told, "He whom the circle of his relatives pronounce to be filial, whom his fellow villagers and neighbors pronounce to be fraternal."

3. Again the disciple asked, "I venture to ask about the class still next in order." The Master said, "They are determined to be sincere in what they say, and to carry out what they do. They are obstinate little men. Yet perhaps they may make the next class."

4. Tsze-kung finally inquired, "Of what sort are those of the present day, who engage in government?" The Master said, "Pooh! they are so many, pecks and hampers, not worth being taken into account."

第二十一章 子曰，不得中行而與之。必也狂狷乎。狂者進取，狷者有所不爲也。

Chap. xxI. The Master said. "Since I cannot get men pursuing the due medium, to whom I might communicate my instructions, I must finp
the ardent and the cautiously-decided. The ardent will advance and lay hold of truth. the cautiously-decided will keep themselves from what is wrong."

第第二十二章 1.子曰,南人有言曰,人而無恆,不可以作巫醫。善夫。 2.不恆其德,或承之羞。 3.子曰,不占而已矣。

Chap. XXII. 1. The Master said, "The people of the south have a saying—A man without constancy cannot be either a wizard or a doctor." Good!
2. "Inconstant in his virtue, he will be visited with disgrace."
3. The Master said, "This arises simply from not attending to the prognostication."

第二十三章 子曰,君子和而不同,小人同而不和。

Chap. XXIII. The Master said, "The superior man is affable, but not adulatory; the mean man is adulatory, but not affable."

第二十四章 子貢問曰,鄉人皆好之,何如。子曰,未可也。鄉人皆惡之,何如。子曰,未可也。不如鄉人之善者好之,其不善者惡之。

Chap. XXIV Tsze-kung asked, saying, "What do you say of a man who in loved by all the people of his neighborhood?" The Master replied, "We may not for that accord our approval of him." "And what do you say of him who is hated by all the people of his neighborhood?" The Master said, "We may
not for that conclude that he is bad. It is better than either of these cases that the good in the neighborhood love him, and the bad hate him.”

Chap. XXV. The Master said, “The superior man is easy to serve and difficult to please. If you try to please him in any way which is not accordant with right, he will not be pleased. But in his employment of men, he uses them according to their capacity. The mean man is difficult to serve, and easy to please. If you try to please him, though it be in a way which is not accordant with right, he may be pleased. But in his employment of men, he wishes them to be equal to everything.

Chap. XXVI. The Master said, “The superior man has a dignified ease without pride. The mean man has pride without a dignified ease.”

Chap. XXVII. The Master said, “The firm, the enduring, the simple, and the modest are near to virtue.”

Chap. XXVIII. 子路问曰：何如斯可谓之士矣。子曰：切切偲偲，怡怡如也。可谓士矣。朋友切切偲偲，兄弟怡怡。
Chap. XXVIII. Tsze-lu asked, saying, "What qualities must a man possess to entitle him to be called a scholar?" The Master said, "He must be thus,—earnest, urgent, and 'bland':—among his friends, earnest and urgent; among his brethren, bland."

第二十九章 子曰，善人敎民七年，亦可以即戎矣。

Chap. XXIX. The Master said, "Let a good man teach the people seven years, and they may then likewise be employed in war."

第三十章 子曰，以不敎民戰，是謂棄之。

Chap. XXX. The Master said, "To lead an uninstructed people to war, is to throw them away."

BOOK XIV. HSIEN WAN 憲問 第十四

第一章 憲問恥。子曰，邦有道殺，邦無道殺，恥也。

Chap. I. Hsien asked what was shameful. The Master said, "When good government prevails in a state, to be thinking only of salary; and, when bad government prevails, to be thinking, in the same way, only of salary;—this is shameful."

第二章 1.克，伐，怨，欲，不行焉，可以為仁矣。2.子曰，可以為難矣。仁則吾不知也。

Chap. II. 1. "When the love of superiority, boasting, resentments, and covetousness are repressed, this may be deemed perfect virtue."
2. The Master said, “This may be regarded as the achievement of what is difficult. But I do not know that it is to be deemed perfect virtue.”

Chap. III. The Master said, “The scholar who cherishes the love of comfort is not fit to be deemed a scholar.”

Chap. IV. The Master said, “When good government prevails in a state, language may be lofty and bold, and actions the same. When bad government prevails, the actions may be lofty and bold, but the language may be with some reserve.”

Chap. V. The Master said, “The virtuous will be sure to speak correctly, but those whose speech is good may not always be virtuous. Men of principle are sure to be bold, but those who are bold may not always be men of principle.”

Chap. VI. Nan-kung Kwo, submitting an inquiry to Confucius, said, “I was skillful at
archery, and Ao could move a boat along upon the land, but neither of them died a natural death. Yu and Chi personally wrought at the toils of husbandry, and they became possessors of the kingdom.” The Master made no reply; but when Nan-kung Kwo went out, he said, “A superior man indeed is this! An esteeemer of virtue indeed is this!”

Chap. vii. The Master said, “Superior men, and yet not always virtuous, there have been, alas! But there never has been a mean man, and, at the same time, virtuous.”

Chap. viii. The Master said, “Can there be love which does not lead to strictness with its object? Can there be loyalty which does not lead to the instruction of its object?”

Chap. ix. The Master said, “In preparing the governmental notifications, P‘i Shan first made the rough draft; Shi-shu examined and discussed its contents; Tsze-yu, the manager of foreign intercourse, then polished the style; and, finally, Tsze-ch‘an of Tung-li gave it the proper elegance and finish.”

Chap. x. The Master said, “In preparing the governmental notifications, P‘i Shan first made the rough draft; Shi-shu examined and discussed its contents; Tsze-yu, the manager of foreign intercourse, then polished the style; and, finally, Tsze-ch‘an of Tung-li gave it the proper elegance and finish.”

Chap. xi. The Master said, “In preparing the governmental notifications, P‘i Shan first made the rough draft; Shi-shu examined and discussed its contents; Tsze-yu, the manager of foreign intercourse, then polished the style; and, finally, Tsze-ch‘an of Tung-li gave it the proper elegance and finish.”

Chap. xii. The Master said, “In preparing the governmental notifications, P‘i Shan first made the rough draft; Shi-shu examined and discussed its contents; Tsze-yu, the manager of foreign intercourse, then polished the style; and, finally, Tsze-ch‘an of Tung-li gave it the proper elegance and finish.”
Chap. x. 1. Some one asked about Tsze-ch‘an. The Master said, “He was a kind man.”
2. He asked about Tsze-hsi. The Master said, “That man! That man!”
3. He asked about Kwan Chung. “For him,” said the Master, “the city of Pien, with three hundred families, was taken from the chief of the Po family, who did not utter a murmuring word, though, to the end of his life, he had only coarse rice to eat.”

Chap. xi. The Master said, “To be poor without murmuring is difficult. To be rich without being proud is easy.”

Chap. xii. The Master said, “Mang Kung-ch‘o is more than fit to be chief officer in the families of Chao and Wei, but he is not fit to be great officer to either of the states Tang or Hsieh.”

Chap. xiii. 1. Tsze-lu asked what constituted a complete man. The Master said, “Suppose
a man with the knowledge of Tsang Wu-chung, the freedom from covetousness of Kung-ch'oo, the bravery of Chwang of Pien, and the varied talents of Zan Ch'iui; add to these the accomplishments of the rules of propriety and music;—such a one might be reckoned a COMPLETE man."

2. He then added, "But what is the necessity for a complete man of the present day to have all these things? The man, who in the view of gain, thinks of righteousness; who in the view of danger is prepared to give up his life, and who does not forget an old agreement however far back it extends:—such a man may be reckoned a COMPLETE man."

第十四章 1. 子問公叔文子於公明賈曰, 言乎, 夫子不言, 不笑, 不取乎。 2. 公明賈對曰, 以告者過也, 夫子時然後言, 人不厭其言, 謀然後笑, 人不厭其笑, 義然後取, 人不厭其取。子曰, 其然, 豈其然乎。

Chap. xiv. 1. The Master asked Kuug-ming Chia about Kung-shu Wan, saying, "Is it true that your master speaks not, laughs not, and takes not?"

2. Kuug-ming Chia replied, "This has arisen from the reporters going beyond the truth,—My master speaks when it is the time to speak; and so men do not get tired of his speaking. He laughs when there is occasion to be joyful, and so men do not get tired of
his laughing. He takes when it is consistent with righteousness to do so, and so men do not get tired of his taking.” The Master said “So! But is it so with him?”

Chap. xv The Master said, “Tsang Wu-chung, keeping possession of Fang, asked of the duke of Lu to appoint a successor to him in his family. Although it may be said that he was not using force with his sovereign, I believe he was.”

Chap. xvi. The Master said, “The duke Wan of Tsin was carfty and not upright. The duke Hwan of Ch‘i was upright and not crafty.”

Chap. xvii. 1. Tsze-lu said, “The duke Hwan caused his brother Chiu to be killed, when Shao Hu died with his master, but Kwan Chung did not die. May not I say that he was wanting in virtue?”

2. The Master said, “The duke Hwan assembled all the princes together, and that not with weapons of war and chariots:—it was all
through the influence of Kwan Chung. Whose beneficence was like his? Whose beneficence was like his?"

Chap. XVIII. 1. Tsze-kung said, "Kwan Chung, I apprehend, was wanting in virtue. When the duke Hwan caused his brother Chiu to be killed, Kwan Chung was not able to die with him. Moreover, he became prime minister to Hwan."

2. The Master said, "Kwan Chung acted as prime minister to the duke Hwan, made him leader of all the princes, and united and rectified the whole kingdom. Down to the present day, the people enjoy the gifts which he conferred. But for Kwan Chung, we should now be wearing our hair unbound, and the lappets of our coats buttoning on the left side.

3. "Will you require from him the small fidelity of common men and common women, who would commit suicide in a stream or ditch, no one knowing anything about them?"

Chap. XIX. 1. The great officer, Hsien, who
had been family minister to Kung-shu Wan, ascended to the prince’s court in company with Wan.

2. The Master, having heard of it, said, “He deserved to be considered Wan (the accomplished)”

第二十章 1. 子言衛靈公之無道也, 康子曰, 夫如是, 奚而不喪. 2. 孔子曰, 仲叔圉治賓客, 祝鮑治宗廟, 王孫賈治軍旅, 夫如是, 奚其喪.

Chap. xx. 1. The Master was speaking about the unprincipled course of the duke Ling of Wei, when Ch’i K’ang said, “Since he is of such a character, how is it he does not lose his state?”

2. Confucius said, “The Chung-shu Yu has the superintendence of his guests and of strangers; the litanist, T’o, has the management of his ancestral temple; and Wang-sun Chia has the direction of the army and forces:— with such officers as these, how should he lose his state?”

第二十一章 子曰, 其言之不怍, 則為之也難.

Chap. xxi. The Master said, “He who speaks without modesty will find it difficult to make his words good.”

第二十二章 1. 陳成子弑簡公. 2. 孔子沐浴而朝, 告於哀公曰, 陳恆弑其君, 請討之. 3. 公曰, 告夫三子. 4. 孔子曰, 以吾從大夫之後, 不敢不告也, 君曰, 告夫三子者. 5. 之
Chap. XXII. 1. Chan Ch‘ang murdered the duke Chien of Ch‘i.

2. Confucius bathed, went to court, and informed the duke Ai, saying, “Chan Hang has slain his sovereign. I beg that you will undertake to punish him.”

3. The duke said, “Inform the chiefs of the three families of it.”

4. Confucius retired, and said, “Following in the rear of the great officers, I did not dare not to represent such a matter, and my prince says, “Inform the chiefs of the three families of it.”

5. He went to the chiefs, and informed them, but they would not act. Confucius then said, “Following in the rear of the great officers, I did not dare not to represent such a matter.”

Chap. XXIII. Tsze-lu asked how a ruler should be served. The Master said, “Do not impose on him, and, moreover, withstand him to his face.”

Chap. XXIV. 1. The Master said, “The progress of the superior man is upwards; the progress of the mean man is downwards.”
The Master said, “In ancient times, men learned with a view to their own improvement. Nowadays, men learn with a view to the approbation of others.”

1. 謁伯玉使人於孔子。 2. 孔子與之坐而問焉，曰，夫子何為。對曰，夫子欲寡其過，而未能也，使者出，子曰，使乎，使乎。

Chap. XXVI. 1. Chu Po-yu sent a messenger with friendly inquiries to Confucius.

2. Confucius sat with him, and questioned him. “What,” said he, “is your master engaged in?” The messenger replied, “My master is anxious to make his faults few, but he has not yet succeeded.” He then went out, and the Master said, “A messenger indeed! A messenger indeed!”

The Master said, “He who is not in any particular office has nothing to do with plans for the administration of its duties.”

The philosopher Tsang said, “The superior man, in his thoughts, does not go out of his place.”

The Master said, “The superior man is modest in his speech, but exceeds in his
actions.”

Third chapter 1. 子曰，君子道者三，我無能焉，仁者不憂，知者不惑，勇者不懼。 2. 子貢曰，夫子自道也。

Chap. xxx. 1. The Master said, “The way of the superior man is threefold, but I am not equal to it. Virtuous, he is free from anxieties; wise, he is free from perplexities; bold, he is free from fear.

2. Tsze-kung said, “Master, that is what you yourself say,”

Thirty-first chapter 1. 子貢方人，子曰，賜也賢乎哉，夫我則不暇。

Chap. xxxxi. Tsze-kung was in the habit of comparing men together. The Master said, “Tsze must have reached a high pitch of excellence! Now, I have not leisure for this.”

Thirty-second chapter 1. 子曰，不患人之不己知，患其不能也。

Chap. xxxi. The Master said, “I will not be concerned at men’s not knowing me; I will be concerned at my own want of ability.”

Thirty-third chapter 1. 子曰，不逆詐，不僣不信，抑亦先覺者，是賢乎。

Chap. xxxiii. The Master said, “He who does not anticipate attempts to deceive him, nor think beforehand of his not being believed, and yet apprehends these things readily (when they occur);—is he not a man of superior worth?”

Thirty-fourth chapter 1. 微生駕謂孔子曰，丘何為是恓恓者與，無乃為佞乎。 2. 孔子曰，非敢為佞也，疾固也。

Chap. xxxiv 1. Wei-shang Mau said to
Confucius, "Ch'iu, how is it that you keep roosting about? Is it not that you are an insinuating talker?"

2. Confucius said, "I do not dare to play the part of such a talker, but I hate obstinacy."

Confucius, "Ch'iu, how is it that you keep roosting about? Is it not that you are an insinuating talker?"

2. Confucius said, "I do not dare to play the part of such a talker, but I hate obstinacy."

Chap.  XXXV. The Master said, "A horse is called a ch'i, not because of its strength, but because of its other good qualities."

Chap.  XXXVI. 1. Some one said, "What do you say concerning the principle that injury should be recompensed with kindness?"

2. The Master said, "With what then will you recompense kindness?"

3. "Recompense injury with justice, and recompense kindness with kindness."

Chap.  XXXVII. 1. The Master said, "Alas! there is no one that knows me."

2. Tsze-kung said, "What do you mean by thus saying—that no one knows you?" The Master replied, "I do not murmur against Heaven. I do not grumble against men. My studies lie low, and my penetration rises high. But there is Heaven;—that knows me!"
Chap. xxxviii. 1 The Kung-po Liao, having slandered Tsze-lu to Chi-sun, Tsze-fu Chung-po informed Confucius of it, saying, “Our master is certainly being led astray by the Kung-po Liao, but I have still power enough left to cut Liao off, and expose his corpse in the market and in the court.”

2. The Master said, “If my principles are to advance, it is so ordered. If they are to fall to the ground, it is so ordered. What can the Kung-po Liao do where such ordering is concerned?”


2. “Some retire from particular states.

3. “Some retire because of disrespectful looks.

4. “Some retire because of contradictory language.”

Chap. xli. The Master said, “Those who have done this are seven men.”
曰，是知其不可而為之者與。

Chap. xli. Tsze-lu happening to pass the night in Shih-man, the gatekeeper said to him, “Whom do you come from?” Tsze-lu said, “From Mr. K‘ung.” “It is he,—is it not?” said the other, “who knows the impracticable nature of the times and yet will be doing in them.”

第四十二章 1. 子擊磬於衢，有荷蒉，而過孔氏之門者，曰，有心哉，擊磬乎。 2. 既而曰，鄙哉，硁硁乎，莫己知也。斯鄙而已矣。深則厲，淺則揭。 3. 子曰，果哉，末之難矣。

Chap. xlii. 1. The Master was playing, one day, on a musical stone in Wei, when a man, carrying a straw basket passed the door of the house where Confucius was, and said, “His heart is full who so beats the musical stone,”

2. A little while after, he added, “How contemptible is the one-ideaed obstinacy those sounds display! When one is taken no notice of, he has simply at once to give over his wish for public employment. “Deep water must be crossed with the clothes on; shallow water may be crossed with the clothes held up.”

3. The Master said, “How determined is he in his purpose! But this is not difficult!”

第四十三章 1. 子張曰，書云，高宗諒陰，三年不言，何謂也。 2. 子曰，何必高宗？古之人皆然，君薨，百官總已，以聴於冢宰三年。
Chap.  XLIII. 1.  Tsze-chang said, "What is meant when the Shu says that Kao-tsung, while observing the usual imperial mourning, was for three years without speaking?"

2.  The Master said, "Why must Kao-tsung be referred to as an example of this? The ancients all did so. When the sovereign died, the officers all attended to their several duties, taking instructions from the prime minister for three years."

第四十四章 子曰,上好禮,則民易使也.

Chap.  XLIV  The Master said, "When rulers love to observe the rules of propriety, the people respond readily to the calls on them for service."

第四十五章 子路問君子. 子曰, 肅己以敬. 曰, 如斯而已乎曰, 肅己以安人. 曰, 如斯而已乎. 曰, 肅己以安百姓, 肅己以安百姓, 堯舜其猶病諸.

Chap.  XLV.  Tsze-lu asked what constituted the superior man. The Master said, "The cultivation of himself in reverential carefulness." "And is this all?" said Tsze-lu. "He cultivates himself so as to give rest to others," was the reply. "And is this all?" again asked Tsze-lu.  The Master said, "He cultivates himself so as to give rest to all the people. He cultivates himself so as to give rest to all the people:—even Yao and Shun were still solici.
tous about this.”

第四十六章 原壤夷俟，子曰，幼而不孫，長而無述焉，老而不死，是為賊，以杖叩其股。

Chap. xlvi. Yuan Zang was squatting on his heels, and so waited the approach of the Master, who said to him, “In youth not humble as befits a junior; in manhood, doing nothing worthy of being handed down; and living on to old age:—this is to be a pest.” With this he hit him on the shank with his staff.

第四十七章 1. 閩黨童子將命，或問之曰，益者與。2. 子曰，吾見其居於位也，見其與先生並行也，非求益者也，欲速成者也。

Chap. xlvii. 1. A youth of the village of Ch‘ueh was employed by Confucius to carry the messages between him and his visitors. Some one asked about him saying, “I suppose he has made great progress.”

2. The Master said, “I observe that he is fond of occupying the seat of a full-grown man; I observe that he walks shoulder to shoulder with his elders. He is not one who is seeking to make progress in learning. He wishes quickly to become a man.”

BOOK XV. WEI LING KUNG

衛靈公 第十五
Chap. i. 1. The duke Ling of Wei asked Confucius about tactics. Confucius replied, "I have heard all about sacrificial vessels, but I have not learned military matters." On this, he took his departure the next day.

2. When he was in Chan, their provisions were exhausted, and his followers became so ill that they were unable to rise.

3. Tsze-lu, with evident dissatisfaction, said, "Has the superior man likewise to endure in this way?" The Master said, "The superior man may indeed have to endure want, but the mean man, when he is in want, gives way to unbridled license."

Chap. ii. 1. The Master said, "Ts'ze, you think, I suppose, that I am one who learns many things and keeps them in memory?"

2. Tsze-kung replied, "Yes,—but perhaps it is not so?"

3. "No," was the answer; "I seek a unity all pervading."
Chap. III. The Master said, "Yu, those who know virtue are few."

The Master said, "May not Shum be instanced as having governed efficiently without exertion? What did he do? He did nothing but gravely and reverently occupy his royal seat."

Chap. IV. Tsze-chang asked how a man should conduct himself, so as to be everywhere appreciated.

2. The Master said, "Let his words be sincere and truthful, and his actions honorable and careful;—such conduct may be practiced among the rude tribes of the South or the North. If his words be not sincere and truthful, and his actions not honorable and careful, will he, with such conduct, be appreciated, even in his neighborhood?"

3. "When he is standing, let him see those two things, as it were, fronting him. When he is in a carriage, let him see them attached to the yoke. Then may he subsequently carry"
them into practice.”

4. Tsze-chang wrote these counsels on the end of his sash.

第六章 1. 子曰，直哉，史魚，邦有道如矢，邦無道如矢。2. 君子哉，蘧伯玉，邦有道，則仕，邦無道，則可卷而懷之。

Chap. VI. 1. The Master said, “Truly straightforward was the historiographer Yu. When good government prevailed in his state, he was like an arrow. When bad government prevailed, he was like an arrow.

2. “A superior man indeed is Chu Po-yu! When good government prevails in his state, he is to be found in office. When government prevails, he can roll his principles up, and keep them in his breast.”

第七章 子曰，可與言，而不與之言，失人；不可與言，而與之言，失言，知者不失人，亦不失言。

Chap. VII. The Master said, “When a man may be spoken with, not to speak to him is to err in reference to the man. When a man may not be spoken with, to speak to him is to err in reference to our words. The wise err neither in regard to their man nor to their words.”

第八章 子曰，志士，仁人，無求生以害仁，有殺身以成仁。

Chap. VIII. The Master said, “The determined scholar and the man of virtue will not seek to live at the expense of injuring their virtue. They will even sacrifice their lives to preserve
their virtue complete."

Chap. IX. Tsze-kung asked about the practice of virtue. The Master said, "The mechanic, who wishes to do his work well, must first sharpen his tools. When you are living in any state, take service with the most worthy among its great officers, and make friends of the most virtuous among its scholars."

Chap. X. 1. Yen Yuan asked how the government of a country should be administered.
   2. The Master said, "Follow the seasons of Hsia.
   3. "Ride in the state carriage of Yin.
   4. "Wear the ceremonial cap of Chau.
   5. "Let the music be the Shao with its pantomimes.
   6. "Banish the songs of Chang; and keep far from specious talkers. The songs of Chang are licentious; specious talkers are dangerous."

Chap. XI. The Master said, "If a man take no thought about what is distant, he will find sorrow near at hand."
Chap. xii. The Master said, “It is all over! I have not seen one who loves virtue as he loves beauty.”

Chap. xiii. The Master said, “Was not Tsang Wan like one who had stolen his situation? He knew the virtue and the talents of Hui of Liu-hsia, and yet did not procure that he should stand with him in court.”

Chap. xiv. The Master said, “He who requires much from himself and little from others, will keep himself from being the object of resentment.”

Chap. xv. The Master said, “When a man is not in the habit of saying—‘What shall I think of this? What shall I think of this?’ I can indeed do nothing with him!”

Chap. xvi. The Master said, “When a number of people are together, for a whole day, without their conversation turning on righteousness, and when they are fond of carrying out the suggestions of a small shrewdness; theirs is indeed a hard case.”
Chap. xvII. The Master said, "The superior man in everything considers righteousness to be essential. He performs it according to the rules of propriety. He brings it forth in humility. He completes it with sincerity. This is indeed a superior man."

Chap. xvIII. The Master said, "The superior man is distressed by his want of ability. He is not distressed by men's not knowing him."

Chap. xIX. The Master said, "The superior man dislikes the thought of his name not being mentioned after his death."

Chap. xx. The Master said, "What the superior man seeks, is in himself. What the mean man seeks, is in others."

Chap. xXI. The Master said, "The superior man is dignified, but does not wrangle. He is sociable, but not a partisan."

Chap. xXII. The Master said, "The superior man does not promote a man simply on account of his words, nor does he put aside good words
because of the man.”

第二十三章 子貢問曰，有一言而可以終身行之者乎。子曰，其恕乎。己所不欲，勿施於人。

Chap. XXIII. Tsze-kung asked, saying, “Is there one word which may serve as a rule of practice for all one’s life? The Master said, “Is not RECIPROCITY such a word? What you do not want done to yourself, do not do to others.”

第二十四章 1. 子曰，吾之於人也，誰毀，誰譽，如有所譽者，其有所試矣。2. 斯民也，三代之所以直道而行也。

Chap. XXIV. 1. The Master said, “In my dealings with men, whose evil do I blame, whose goodness do I praise, beyond what is proper? If I do sometimes exceed in praise, there must be ground for it in my examination of the individual.

2. “This people supplied the ground why the three dynasties pursued the path of straightforwardness;”

第二十五章 子曰，吾猶及史之闕文也，有馬者，借人乘之，今亡已夫。

Chap. XXV. The Master said, “Even in my early days, a historiographer would leave a blank in his text, and he who had a horse would lend him to another to ride. Now, alas! there are no such things.”

第二十六章 子曰，巧言亂德，小不忍，則亂大謀。
Chap. XXVI. The Master said, "Specious words confound virtue. Want of forbearance in small matters confounds great plans."

Chap. XXVII. The Master said, "When the multitude hate a man, it is necessary to examine into the case. When the multitude like a man, it is necessary to examine into the case."

Chap. XXVIII. The Master said, "A man can enlarge the principles which he follows; those principles do not enlarge the man."

Chap. XXIX. The Master said, "To have faults and not to reform them,—this, indeed, should be pronounced having faults."

Chap. XXX. The Master said, "I have been the whole day without eating, and the whole night without sleeping:—occupied with thinking. It was of no use. The better plan is to learn."

Chap. XXXI. The Master said, "The object of the superior man is truth. Food is not his object. There is plowing;—even in that there is sometimes want. So with learning;—
emolument may be found in it. The superior man is anxious lest he should not get truth; he is not anxious lest poverty should come upon him."

第三十二章 1. 子曰, 知及之, 仁不能守之, 虽得之, 必失之。 2. 知及之, 仁能守之, 不庄以莅之, 則民不敬。 3. 知及之, 仁能守之, 庄以莅之, 動之不以禮, 未善也。

Chap. XXXII. 1. The Master said, "When a man's knowledge is sufficient to attain, and his virtue is not sufficient to enable him to hold, whatever he may have gained, he will lose again. 2. "When his knowledge is sufficient to attain, and he has virtue enough to hold fast, if he cannot govern with dignity, the people will not respect him. 3. "When his knowledge is sufficient to attain, and he has virtue enough to hold fast; when he governs also with dignity, yet if he try to move the people contrary to the rules of propriety:—full excellence is not reached:"

第三十三章 子曰, 君子不可小知, 而可大受也。小人不可大受, 而可小知也。

Chap. XXXIII. The Master said, "The superior man cannot be known in little matters; but he may be intrusted with great concerns. The small men may not be intrusted with great concerns, but he may be known in little
matters."

Chap. XXXIV. The Master said, "Virtue is more to man than either water or fire. I have seen men die from treading on water and fire, but I have never seen a man die from treading the course of virtue."

Chap. XXXV. The Master said, "Let every man consider virtue as what devolves on himself. He may not yield the performance of it even to his teacher."

Chap. XXXVI. The Master said, "The superior man is correctly firm, and not firm merely."

Chap. XXXVII. The Master said, "A minister, in serving his prince, reverently discharges his duties, and makes his emolument a secondary consideration,"

Chap. XXXVIII. The Master said, "In teaching there should be no distinction of classes."

Chap. XXXIX. The Master said, "Those whose
courses are different cannot lay plans for one another."

第四十章 子曰，詩，達而已矣。

Chap. XL. The Master said, "In language it is simply required that it convey the meaning."

第四十一章 1. 師冕見，及階，子曰，階也。及席，子曰，席也。皆坐，子告之曰，某在斯，某在斯。 2. 師冕出，子張問曰，與師言之道與。 3. 子曰，然，固相師之道也。

Chap. XLI. 1. The music master, Mien, having called upon him, when they came to the steps, the Master said, "Here are the steps." When they came to the mat for the guest to sit upon, he said, "Here is the mat." When all were seated, the Master informed him, saying, "So and so is here; so and so is here."

2. The music master, Mien, having gone out, Tsze-chang asked, saying, "Is it the rule to tell those things to the music master?"

3. The Master said, "Yes. This is certainly the rule for those who lead the blind."

BOOK XVI. KE SHE 季氏 第十六

第一章 1. 季氏將伐顓臾。 2. 冉有季路見於孔子，曰，季氏將有事於顓臾。 3. 孔子曰，求，無乃爾是過與。 4. 夫顓臾，昔者，先王以爲東蒙主，且在邦域之中矣，是社稷之臣也，何以伐爲。 5. 冉有曰，夫子欲之，吾二臣者，皆不欲也。 6. 孔子曰，求，周任有言曰，陳力就列，不能者止，危而不持，
Chap. 1. 1 The head of the Chi family was going to attack Chwan-yu.

2. Zan Yu and Chi-lu had an interview with Confucius, and said, "Our chief, Chi, is going to commence operations against Chwan-yu."

3. Confucius said, "Ch'iu, is it not you who are in fault here?

4. "Now, in regard to Chwan-yu, long ago a former king appointed its ruler to preside over the sacrifices to the eastern Mang; moreover, it is in the midst of the territory of our state; and its ruler is a minister in direct connection with the sovereign:—What has your chief to do with attacking it?"

5. Zan Yu said, "Our master wishes the thing; neither of us two ministers wishes it."

6. Confucius said, "Ch'iu, there are the words of Chau Zan,—'When he can put forth
his ability, he takes his place in the ranks of office; when he finds himself unable to do so, he retires from it. How can he be used as a guide to a blind man, who does not support him when tottering, nor raise him up when fallen?"

7. "And further, you speak wrongly. When a tiger or rhinoceros escapes from his cage; when a tortoise or piece of jade is injured in its repository:—whose is the fault?"

8. Zan Yu said, "But at present, Chwan-yu is strong and near to Pi; if our chief do not now take it, it will hereafter be a sorrow to his descendants."

9. Confucius said, "Ch‘iu, the superior man hates that declining to say—'I want such and such a thing,' and framing explanations for the conduct.

10. "I have heard that rulers of states and chiefs of families are not troubled lest their people should be few, but are troubled lest they should not keep their several places; that they are not troubled with fears of poverty, but are troubled with fears of a want of contented repose among the people in their several places. For when the people keep their several places, there will be no poverty; when harmony prevails, there will be no scarcity of people; and when there is such a contented repose,
there will be no rebellious upsettings.

11. "So it is.—Therefore, if remoter people are not submissive, all the influences of civil culture and virtue are to be cultivated to attract them to be so; and when they have been so attracted, they must be made contented and tranquil.

12. "Now, here are you, Yu and Ch‘iu, assisting your chief. Remoter people are not submissive, and, with your help, he cannot attract them to him. In his own territory there are divisions and downfalls, leavings and separations, and, with your help, he cannot preserve it.

13. "And yet he is planning these hostile movements within the state.—I am afraid that the sorrow of the Chi-sun family will not be on account of Chwan-yu, but will be found within the screen of their own court."

Chap. II. 1. Confucius said, "When good government prevails in the empire, ceremonies, music, and punitive military expeditions proceed from the son of Heaven. When bad government prevails in the empire, ceremonies,
music, and punitive military expeditions proceeded from the princes. When these things proceed from the princes, as a rule, the cases will be few in which they do not lose their power in ten generations. When they proceed from the great officers of the princes, as a rule, the cases will be few in which they do not lose their power in five generations. When the subsidiary ministers of the great officers hold in their grasp the orders of the state, as a rule, the cases will be few in which they do not lose their power in three generations.

2. “When right principles prevail in the kingdom, government will not be in the hands of the great officers.

3. “When right principles prevail in the kingdom, there will be no discussions among the common people.”

Chap. III. confucius said, “The revenue of the state has left the ducal house now for five generations. The government has been in the hands of the great officers for four generations. On this account, the descendants of the three Hwan are much reduced.”
Chap. IV Confucius said, "There are three friendships which are advantageous, and three which are injurious. Friendship with the upright; friendship with the sincere; and friendship with the man of much observation:—there are advantageous. Friendship with the man of specious airs; friendship with the insinuatingly soft; and friendship with the glibtongued:—these are injurious.

Chap. V. Confucius said, "There are three things men find enjoyment in which are advantageous, and three things they find enjoyment in which are injurious. To find enjoyment in the discriminating study of ceremonies and music; to find enjoyment in speaking of the goodness of others; to find enjoyment in having many worthy friends:—these are advantageous. To find enjoyment in extravagant pleasures; to find enjoyment in idleness and sauntering; to find enjoyment in the pleasures of feasting:—these are injurious."

Chap. VI. Confucius said, "There are three errors to which they who stand in the presence
of a man of virtue and station are liable. They may speak when it does not come to them to speak;—this is called rashness. They may not speak when it comes to them to speak;—this is called concealment. They may speak without looking at the countenance of their superior;—this is called blindness.”

Chap. VII. Confucius said, “There are three things which the superior man guards against. In youth, when the physical powers are not yet settled, he guards against lust. When he is strong and the physical powers are full of vigor, he guards against quarrelsomeness. When he is old, and the animal powers are decayed, he guards against covetousness.”

Chap. VIII. 1. Confucius said, “There are three things of which the superior man stands in awe. He stands in awe of the ordinances of Heaven. He stands in awe of great men. He stands in awe of the words of sages.

2. “The mean man does not know the ordinances of Heaven, and consequently does not stand in awe of them. He is disrespectful
to great men. He makes sport of the words of sages.

Chap. IX. Confucius said, “Those who are born with the possession of knowledge are the highest class of men. Those who learn, and so, readily, get possession of knowledge, are the next. Those who are dull and stupid, and yet compass the learning, are another class next to these. As to those who are dull and stupid and yet do not learn;—they are the lowest of the people.”

Chap. X. Confucius said, “The superior man has nine things which are subjects with him of thoughtful consideration. In regard to the use of his eyes, he is anxious to see clearly. In regard to the use of his ears, he is anxious to hear distinctly. In regard to his countenance, he is anxious that it should be benign. In regard to his demeanor, he is anxious that it should be respectful. In regard to his speech, he is anxious that it should be sincere. In regard to his doing of business, he is anxious that it should be reverently careful. In regard to what he doubts about, he is anxious to
question others. When he is angry, he thinks of the difficulties (his anger may involve him in). When he sees gain to be got, he thinks of righteousness.”

第十一章 1. 孔子曰, 見善如不及, 見不善如探湯, 吾見其人矣, 吾聞其語矣。 2. 隱居以求其志, 行義以達其道, 吾聞其語矣, 未見其人也。

Chap. xl. 1. Confucius said, “Contemplating good, and pursuing it, as if they could not reach it; contemplating evil, and shrinking from it, as they would from thrusting the hand into boiling water: — I have seen such men, as I have heard such words.

2. “Living in retirement to study their aims, and practicing righteousness to carry out their principles: — I have heard these words, but I have not seen such men.”

第十二章 1. 齊景公有馬千驷, 死之日,民無德而稱焉,伯夷叔齊, 銹子首陽之下,民到于今稱之。 2. 其斯之謂與。

Chap. xii. 1. The duke Ching of Ch'í had a thousand teams, each of four horses, but on the day of his death, the people did not praise him for a single virtue, Po-i and Shu-ch'i died of hunger at the foot of the Shau-yang mountain, and the people, down to the present time, praise them.

2. “Is not that saying illustrated by this?”

第十三章 1. 陳亢問於伯魚曰, 子亦有異聞乎。 2. 對曰, 未也, 嘉獨立, 鯉趨而過庭, 曰, 學詩乎。對曰, 未也, 不學詩, 無
Chap. xiii. 1. Ch‘an K‘ang asked Po-yu, saying, “Have you heard any lessons from your father different from what we have all heard?”

2. Po-yu replied, “No. He was standing alone once, when I passed below the hall with hasty steps, and said to me, ‘Have you learned the Odes?’ On my replying ‘Not yet,’ he added, ‘If you do not learn the Odes, you will not be fit to converse with.’ I retired and studied the Odes.

3. “Another day, he was in the same way standing alone, when I passed by below the hall with hasty steps, and said to me, ‘Have you learned the rules of Propriety?’ On my replying ‘Not yet,’ he added, ‘If you do not learn the rules of Propriety, your character cannot be established.’ I then retired, and learned the rules of Propriety.

4. “I have heard only these two things from him.”

5. Ch‘an K‘ang retired, and, quite delighted, said, “I asked one thing, and I have got three things. I have heard about the Odes. I have heard about the rules of Propriety. I have
also heard that the superior man maintains a distant reserve towards his son."

第十四章 邦君之妻,君稱之曰夫人,夫人自稱,曰小童. 邦人稱之,曰君夫人. 稱諸異邦,曰寡小君,異邦人稱之, 亦曰君夫人.

Chap. XIV. The wife of the prince of a state is called by him FU ZAN. She calls herself HSIAO T'UNG. The people of the state call her CHUN FU ZAN, and, to the people of other states, they call her K'WA HSIAO CHUN. The people of other states also call her CHUN FU ZAN.

BOOK XVII. YANG HO 陽貨 第十七

第一章 1. 陽貨欲見孔子,孔子不見,歸孔子豚,孔子時其亡也,而往拜之,遇諸塗. 2. 謂孔子曰,來,予與爾言,曰,懷其寶,而迷其邦,可謂仁乎. 曰, 不可. 好從事, 而重失時, 可謂知乎. 曰, 不可. 日月逝矣, 西不我與. 孔子曰, 諲, 吾將仕矣.

Chap. I. 1. Yang Ho wished to see Confucius, but Confucius would not go to see him. On this, he sent a present of a pig to Confucius, who, having chosen a time when Ho was not at home, went to pay his respects for the gift. He met him, however, on the way.

2. Ho said to Confucius, "Come, let me speak with you." He then asked, "Can he be called benevolent who keeps his jewel in his bosom, and leaves his country to confusion?"
Confucius replied, "No." “Can he be called wise, who is anxious to be engaged in public employment, and yet is constantly losing the opportunity of being so?” Confucius again said, “No.” “The days and months are passing away; the years do not wait for us.” Confucius said, “Right; I will go into office.”

第二章 子曰，性相近也，習相遠也。

Chap. II. The Master said, “By nature, men are nearly alike; by practice, they get to be wide apart.”

第三章 子曰，唯上知與下愚不移。

Chap. III. The Master said, “There are only the wise of the highest class, and the stupid of the lowest class, who cannot be changed.”

第四章 1. 子之武城，聞絃歌之聲。2. 夫子莞爾而笑曰，割鵝焉用牛刀。3. 子游對曰，昔者偃也，聞諸夫子曰，君子學道則愛人，小人學道則易使也。4. 子曰，二三子，偃之言是也，前言戯之耳。

Chap. IV. 1. The Master, having come to Wuch‘ang, heard there the sound of stringed instruments and singing. 2. Well pleased and smiling, he said, “Why use an ex knife to kill a fowl?” 3. Tsze-yu replied, “Formerly, Master, I heard you say,—‘When the man of high station is well instructed, he loves men: when the man
of low station is well instructed, he is easily ruled.'"

4. The Master said, "My disciples, Yen's words are right. What I said was only in sport."

第五章 1. 公山弗擾以費畔,召,子欲往。 2. 子路不說,曰,末之也已,何必公山氏之此人也。 3. 子曰,夫召我者,而豈徒哉,如有用我者,吾其為東周乎。

Chap V 1. Kung-shan Fu-zao, when he was holding Pi, and in an attitude of rebellion, invited the Master to visit him, who was rather inclined to go.

2. Tsze-lu was displeased, and said, Indeed, you cannot go! Why must you think of going to see Kung-shan?"

3. The Master said, "Can it be without some reason that he has invited me? It any one employ me, may I not make an eastern Chau?"

第六章 子張問仁於孔子,孔子曰,能行五者於天下為仁矣。諸問之,曰,恭,寬,信,敏,惠,恭,則不侮,寬,則得衆,信,則人任焉,敏,則有功,惠,則足以使人。

Chap. VI. Tsze-chang asked Confucius about perfect virtue. Confucius said, "To be able to practice five things everywhere under heaven constitutes perfect virtue." He begged to ask what they were, and was told, "Gravity, generosity of soul, sincerity, earnestness, and
kindness. If you are grave, you will not be treated with disrespect. If you are generous, you will win all. If you are sincere, people will repose trust in you. If you are earnest, you will accomplish much. If you are kind, this will enable you to employ the services of others."

第章 1. 佛肸召, 子欲往。2. 子路曰, 昔者由也, 闻諸夫子曰, 親於其身, 爲不善者, 君子不入也, 佛肸以中牟畔, 子之往也, 如之何。3. 子曰, 然, 有是言也, 不曰倏乎, 磨而不磷,不曰白乎, 涅而不缁。4. 吾豈匏瓜也哉, 焉能繫而不食。

Chap. VII. 1. Pi Hsi inviting him to visit him, the Master was inclined to go.

2. Tsze-lu said, "Master, formerly I have heard you say, 'When a man in his own person is guilty of doing evil, a superior man will not associate with him.' Pi Hsi is rebellion, holding possession of Chung-mau; if you go to him, what shall be said?"

3. The Master said, "Yes, I did use these words. But is it not said, that, if a thing be really hard, it may be ground without being made thin? Is it not said, that, if a thing be really white, it may be steeped in a dark fluid without being made black?

4. "Am I a bitter gourd! How can I be hung up out of the way of being eaten?"
Chap VIII. 1. The Master said, "Yu, have you heard the six words to which are attached six becloudings?" Yu replied, "I have not."

2. "Sit down, and I will tell them to you.

3. "There is the love of being benevolent without the love of learning;—the beclouding here leads to a foolish simplicity. There is the love of knowing without the love of learning;—the beclouding here leads to dissipation of mind. There is the love of being sincere without the love of learning;—the beclouding here leads to an injurious disregard of consequences. There is the love of straightforwardness without the love of learning;—the beclouding here leads to rudeness. There is the love of boldness without the love of learning;—the beclouding here leads to insubordination. There is the love of firmness without the love of learning;—the beclouding here leads to extravagant conduct."

Chap. IX. 1. The Master said, "My children,
why do you not study the Book of Poetry?
2. "The Odes serve to stimulate the mind.
3. "They may be used for purposes of self-contemplation.
4. "They teach the art of sociability.
5. "They show how to regulate feelings of resentment.
6. "From them you learn the more immediate duty of serving one's father, and the remoter one of serving one's prince.
7. "From them we become largely acquainted with the names of birds, beasts, and plants."

Chap. x. The Master said to Po-yu, "Do you give yourself to the Chau-nan and the Shao-nan. The man who has not studied the Chau-nan and the Shao-nan is like one who stands with his face right against a wall. Is he not so?"

Chap. xi. The Master said, "'It is according to the rules of propriety,' they say. —'It is according to the rules of propriety,' they say. Are gems and silk all that is meant by propriety? 'It is music,' they say. —'It is
music,' they say. Are bells and drums all that is meant by music?'

Chap. XII. The Master said, "He who puts on an appearance of stern firmness, while inwardly he is weak, is like one of the small, mean people;—yea, is he not like the thief who breaks through, or climbs over, a wall?"

Chap. XIII. The Master said, "Your good, careful people of the villages are the thieves of virtue."

Chap. XIV. The Master said, "To tell, as we go along, what we have heard on the way, is to cast away our virtue."

Chap. XV. 1. The Master said, "There are those mean creatures! How impossible it is along with them to serve one's prince!

2. "While they have not got their aims, their anxiety is how to get them. When they have got them, their anxiety is lest they should lose them.

3. "When they are anxious lest such things should be lost, there is nothing to which they
The Master said, “Anciently, men had three failings, which now perhaps are not to be found.

2. "The high-mindedness of antiquity showed itself in a disregard of small things; the high-mindedness of the present day shows itself in wild license. The stern dignity of antiquity showed itself in grave reserve; the stern dignity of the present day shows itself in quarrelsome perverseness. The stupidity of antiquity showed itself in straightforwardness; the stupidity of the present day shows itself in sheer deceit.”

The Master said, “Fine words and an insinuating appearance are seldom associated with virtue.”

The Master said, “I hate the manner in which purple takes away the luster of vermilion. I hate the way in which the songs of Chang confound the music of the Ya."
I hate those who with their sharp mouths overthrow kingdoms and families.

第十九章 1. 子曰, 子欲無言。 2. 子貢曰, 子如不言, 則小子何述焉。 3. 子曰, 天何言哉, 四時行焉, 百物生焉, 天何言哉。

Chap. xix. 1. The Master said, “I would prefer not speaking.”

2. Tsze-kung said, “If you, Master, do not speak, what shall we, your disciples, have to record?”

3. The Master said, “Does Heaven speak? The four seasons pursue their courses, and all things are continually being produced, but does Heaven say anything?”

第二十章 季微欲見孔子, 孔子辭以疾, 備命者出戶, 取瑟而歌, 使之聞之。

Chap. xx. Zú Pei wished to see Confucius, but Confucius declined, on the ground of being sick, to see him. When the bearer of this message went out at the door, (the Master) took his lute and sang to it, in order that Pei might hear him.

第二十一章 1. 素我聞三年之喪, 期已久矣。 2. 君子三年不為禮, 禮必壞, 三年不為樂, 樂必崩。 3. 舊鮮既沒, 新鮮既升, 鑄燧改火, 期可已矣。 4. 子曰, 食夫稻, 衣夫錦, 於女安乎。曰, 安。 5. 女安, 則為之, 夫君子之居喪, 食旨不甘, 聽樂不樂, 居處不安, 故不為也, 今女安, 則為之。 6. 素我出。
Chap. xxI. 1. Tsai Wo asked about the three years' mourning for parents, saying that one year was long enough.

2. “If the superior man,” said he, “abstains for three years from the observances of propriety, those observances will be quite lost. If for three years he abstains from music, music will be ruined.

3. “Within a year the old grain is exhausted, and the new grain has sprung up, and, in procuring fire by friction, we go through all the changes of wood for that purpose. After a complete year, the mourning may stop.”

4. The Master said, “If you were, after a year, to eat good rice, and wear embroidered clothes, would you feel at ease?” “I should” replied Wo.

5. The Master said, “If you can feel at ease, do it. But a superior man, during the whole period of mourning, does not enjoy pleasant food which he may eat, nor derive pleasure from music which he may hear. He also does not feel at ease, if he is comfortably lodged. Therefore he does not do what you propose. But now you feel at ease and may do it.”
6. Tsai Wo then went out, and the Master said, "This shows Yu’s want of virtue. It is not till a child is three years old that it is allowed to leave the arms of its parents. And the three years’ mourning is universally observed throughout the empire. Lid Yu enjoy the three years’ love of his parents?"

第二十二章 子曰，飽食終日，無所用心，難矣哉，不有博弈者乎，為之，猶賢乎已。

Chap. XXII. The Master said, "Hard is it to deal with him, who will stuff himself with food the whole day, without applying his mind to anything good! Are there not gamblers and chess players? To be one of these would still be better than doing nothing at all."

第二十三章 子路曰，君子尚勇乎，子曰，君子重以固上，君子有勇而無義，為亂，小人有勇而無義，為盜。

Chap. XIII. Tsze-lu said, "Does the superior man esteem valor?" The Master said, "The superior man holds righteousness to be of highest importance. A man in a superior situation, having valor without righteousness, will be guilty of insubordination; one of the lower people, having valor without righteousness, will commit robbery."

第二十四章 1. 子貢曰，君子亦有惡乎。子曰，有惡，惡稱人之惡者，惡居下流而詆上者，惡勇而無禮者，惡果敢而頑者。
Chap. XXIV. 1. Tsze-kung said, "Has the superior man his hatreds also?" The Master said, "He has his hatreds. He hates those who proclaim the evil of others. He hates the man who, being in a low station, slanders his superiors. He hates those who have valor merely, and are unobservant of propriety. He hates those who are forward and determined, and, at the same time, of contracted understanding."

2. The Master then inquired, "Ts'ze, have you also your hatreds?" Tsze-kung replied, "I hate those who pry out matters, and ascribe the knowledge to their wisdom. I hate those who are only not modest, and think that they are valorous. I hate those who make known secrets, and think that they are straightforward."

Chap. XXV. The Master said, "Of all people, girls and servants are the most difficult to behave to. If you are familiar with them, they lose their humility. If you maintain a reserve towards them, they are discontented."
Chap. xxvi. The Master said, "When a man at forty is the object of dislike, he will always continue what he is."

BOOK XVIII. WEI TSZE 微子 第十八

Chap. i. 1. The viscount of Wei withdrew from the court. The viscount of Chi became a slave to Chau. Pi-kan remonstrated with him and died.

2. Confucius said, "The Yin dynasty possessed these three men of virtue."

Chap. ii. Hui of Liu-hsia, being chief criminal judge, was thrice dismissed from his office. Some one said to him, "Is it not yet time for you, sir, to leave this?" He replied, "Serving men in an upright way, where shall I go to, and not experience such a thrice-repeated dismissal? If I choose to serve men in a crooked way, what necessity is there for me to leave the country of my parents?"
Chap. III. The duke Ching of Chi, with reference to the manner in which he should treat Confucius, said, "I cannot treat him as I would the chief of the Chi family. I will treat him in a manner between that accorded to the chief of the Chi, and that given to the chief of the Mang family." He also said, "I am old; I cannot use his doctrines." Confucius took his departure.

Chap. IV. The people of Chi sent to Lu a present of female musicians, which Chi Hwan received, and for three days no court was held. Confucius took his departure.

Chap. V. 1. The madman of Ch'u, Chieh-yu, passed by Confucius, singing and saying, "O FANG! O EANG! How is your virtue degenerated! As to the past, reproof is useless; but the future may still be provided against. Give up your vain pursuit. Give up your vain pursuit. Peril awaits those who now engage in affairs of government."

2. Confucius alighted and wished to converse with him, but Chieh-yu hastened away, so that he could not talk with him.
Chapter vi.

1. Ch'ang-tsu and Chieh-ni were at work in the field together when Confucius passed by them, and sent Tsze-lu to inquire for the ford.

2. Ch'ang-tsu said, "Who is he that holds the reins in the carriage there?" Tsze-lu told him, "It is K'ung Ch'iü." "Is it not K'ung Ch'iü of Lu?" asked he. "Yes," was the reply, to which the other rejoined, "He knows the ford."

3. Tsze-lu then inquired of Chieh-ni, who said to him, "Who are you, sir?" He answered, "I am Chung Yu." "Are you not the disciple of K'ung Ch'iü of Lu?" asked the other. "I am," replied he, and then Chieh-ni said to him, "Disorder, like a swelling flood, spreads over the whole empire, and who is he that will change its state for you? Than follow one who merely withdraws from this one and that one, had you not better follow those who have withdrawn from the world altogether?"
thus he fell to covering up the seed, and proceeded with his work, without stopping.

4. Tsze-lu went and reported their remarks, when the Master observed with a sigh, "It is impossible to associate with birds and beasts, as if they were the same with us. If I associate not with these people,—with mankind,—with whom shall I associate? If right principles prevailed through the empire, there would be no use for me to change its state."

第七章  1. 子路從而後,遇丈人,以杖荷蓆。子路問曰,子見夫子乎。丈人曰,四體不勤,五穀不分,孰為夫子。植其杖而芸。 2. 子路拱而立。 3. 止子路宿,殺鶏,爲黍而食之,見其二子焉。 4. 明日,子路行以告。子曰,隱者也,使子路反見之,至,則行矣。 5. 子路曰,不仕無義,長幼之節,不可廢也。君臣之義,如之何其廢之,欲潔其身,而亂大倫。君子之仕也,行其義也,道之不行,已知之矣。

Chap. vii. 1. Tsze-lu, following the Master, happened to fall behind, when he met an old man, carrying across his shoulder on a staff a basket for weeds. Tsze-lu said to him, "Have you seen my master, sir?" The old man replied, "Your four limes are unaccustomed to toil; you cannot distinguish the five kinds of grain:—who is your master?" With this, he planted his staff in the ground, and proceeded to weed.
2. Tsze-lu joined his hands across his breast, and stood before him.

3. The old man kept Tsze-lu to pass the night in his house, killed a fowl, prepared millet, and feasted him. He also introduced to him his two sons.

4. Next day, Tsze-lu went on his way, and reported his adventure. The Master said, "He is a recluse," and sent Tsze-lu back to see him again, but when he got to the place, the old man was gone.

5. Tsze-lu then said to the family, "Not to take office is not righteous. If the relations between old and young may not be neglected, how is it that he sets aside the duties that should be observed between sovereign and minister? Wishing to maintain his personal purity, he allows that great relation to come to confusion. A superior man takes office, and performs the righteous duties belonging to it. As to the failure of right principles to make progress, he is aware of that."

第八章 1. 逸民，伯夷，叔齊，虞仲，夷逸，朱張，柳下惠，少連。 3. 謂柳下惠少連，降志辱身矣，言中倫，行中庸，其斯而已矣。 4. 謂虞仲夷逸，隱居放言，身中清，廢中權。 5. 我則異於是，無可無不可。
Chap. viii. 1. The men who have retired to privacy from the world have been Po-i, Shu-ch'i, Yu-chung, I-yi, Chu-chang, Hui of Liu-hsia, and Shao-lien.

2. The Master said, "Refusing to surrender their wills, or to submit to any taint in their persons;—such, I think, were Po-i and Shu-ch'i.

3. "It may be said of Hui of Liu-hsia, and of Shao-lien, that they surrendered their wills, and submitted to taint in their persons, but their words corresponded with reason, and their actions were such as men are anxious to see. This is all that is to be remarked in them.

4. "It may be said of Yu-chung and I-yi, that, while they hid themselves in their seclusion, they gave a license to their words; but in their persons, they succeeded in preserving their purity, and, in their retirement, they acted according to the exigency of the times.

5. "I am different from all these. I have no course for which I am predetermined, and no course against which I am predetermined."

Chap. ix. 1. The grand music master, Chih, went to Ch'i.
2. Kan, the master of the band at the second meal, went to Ch‘u. Liao, the band master at the third meal, went to Ts‘ai. Chueh, the band master at the fourth meal, went to Ch‘in.

3. Fang-shu, the drum master, withdrew to the north of the river.

4. Wu, the master of the hand drum, withdrew to the Han.

5. Yang, the assistant music master, and Hsiang, master of the musical stone, withdrew to an island in the sea.

第十章 周公謂魯公曰,君子不施其親,不使大臣怨乎不以,故舊無大故,則不棄也。無求備於一人。

Chap. x. The duke of Chau addressed his son, the duke of Lu, saying, “The virtuous prince does not neglect his relations. He does not cause the great ministers to repine at his not employing them. Without some great cause, he does not dismiss from their offices the members of old families. He does not seek in one man talents for every employment.”

第十章 周有八士,伯逢,伯適,仲突,仲忽,叔牙,叔夏,季隗,季簡。

Chap. xi. To Chau belonged the eight officers, Po-ta, Po-kwo, Chung-tu, Chung-hwu, Shu-ya, Shu-hsia, Chi-sui, and Chi-kwa.
BOOK XIX. TSZE-CHANG 子張 第十九

第一章 子張曰，士，見危致命，見得思義，祭思敬，喪思哀，其可已矣。

Chap. I. Tsze-chang said, "The scholar, trained for public duty, seeing threatening danger, is prepared to sacrifice his life. When the opportunity of gain is presented to him, he thinks of righteousness. In sacrificing, his thoughts are reverential. In mourning, his thoughts are about the grief which he should feel. Such a man commands our approbation indeed."

第二章 子張曰，執德不弘，信道不篤，焉能為有，焉能為亡。

Chap. II. Tsze-chang said, "When a man holds fast virtue, but without seeking to enlarge it, and believes right principles, but without firm sincerity, what account can be made of his existence or nonexistence?"

第三章 子夏之門人問交於子張。子張曰，子夏云何。對曰。子夏曰，可者與之。其不可者拒之。子張曰，異乎吾所聞，君子尊賢而容衆，嘉善而矜不能。我之大賢與，於人何所不容。我之不賢與，人將拒我。如之何其拒人也。

Chap. III. The disciples of Tsze-hsia asked Tsze-chang about the principles that should characterize mutual intercourse. Tsze-chang asked, "What does Tsze-hsia say on the subject?" They replied, "Tsze-hsia says: 'Associate with
those who can advantage you. Put away from you those who cannot do so.’” Tsze-chang observed, “This is different from what I have learned. The superior man honors the talented and virtuous, and bears with all. He praises the good, and pities the incompetent. Am I possessed of great talents and virtue?—who is there among men whom I will not bear with? Am I devoid of talents and virtue?—men will put me away from them. What have we to do with the putting away of others?”

Chap. IV. Tsze-hsia said, “Even in inferior studies and employments there is something worth being looked at; but if it be attempted to carry them out to what is remote, there is a danger of their proving inapplicable. Therefore, the superior man does not practice them.”

Chap. V. Tsze-hsia said, “He, who from day to day recognizes what he has not yet, and from month to month does not forget what he has attained to, may be said indeed to love to learn.”
Chap. vi. Tsze-hsia said, "There are learning extensively, and having a firm and sincere aim; inquiring with earnestness, and reflecting with selfapplication: — virtue is in such a course."

Chap. vii. Tsze-hsia said, "Mechanice have their shops to dwell in, in order to accomplish their works. The superior man learns, in order to reach to the utmost of his principles."

Chap. viii. Tsze-hsia said, "The mean man is sure to gloss his faults."

Chap. ix. Tsze-hsia said, "The superior man undergoes three changes. Looked at from a distance, he appears stern; when approached, he is mild; when he is heard to speak, his language is firm and decided."

Chap. x. Tsze-hsia said, "The superior man, having obtained their confidence, may then impose labors on his people. If he have not gained their confidence, they will think that he is oppressing them. Having obtained the
confidence of his prince, one may then remonstrate with him. If he have not gained his confidence, the prince will think that he is vilifying him."

第十一章 子夏曰，大德不逾闊，小德出入可也。

Chap. xi. Tsze-hsia said, "When a person does not transgress the boundary line in the great virtues, he may pass and repass it in the small virtues."

第十二章 1. 子游曰，子夏之門人小子，當酒掃，應對，進退，則可矣，抑末也，本之則無．如之何． 2. 子夏聞之曰，噫，言游過矣，君子之道，孰先傳焉，孰後倦焉，譬諸草木，區以別矣，君子之道，為可誇也，有始有卒者，其惟聖人乎。

Chap. xii. 1. Tsze-yu said, "The disciples and followers of Tsze-hsia, in sprinkling and sweeping the ground, in answering and replying, in advancing and receding, are sufficiently accomplished. But these are only the branches of learning, and they are left ignorant of what is essential. How can they be acknowledged as sufficiently taught?"

2. Tsze-hsia heard of the remark and said, "Alas! Yen Yu is wrong. According to the way of the superior man in teaching, what departments are there which he considers of prime importance, and delivers? what are there which he considers of secondary impor-
tance, and allows himself to be idle about? But as in the case of plants, which are assorted according to their classes, so he deals with his disciples. How can the way of a superior man be such as to make fools of any of them? Is it not the sage alone, who can unite in one the beginning and the consummation of learning?"

第十三章 子夏曰，仕而優則學，學而優則仕。

Chap. XIII. Tsze-hsia said, "The officer, having discharged all his duties, should devote his leisure to learning. The student, having completed his learning, should apply himself to be an officer."

第十四章 子游曰，喪，致乎哀而止。

Chap. XIV. Tsze-yu said, "Mourning, having been carried to the utmost degree of grief, should stop with that."

第十五章 子游曰，吾友張也，為難能也，然而未仁。

Chap. XV. Tsze-yu said, "My friend Chang can do things which are hard to be done, but yet he is not perfectly virtuous."

第十六章 曾子曰，堂堂乎張也，難與並為仁矣。

Chap. XVI. The philosopher Tsang said, "How imposing is the manner of Chang! It is difficult along with him to practice virtue."

第十七章 曾子曰，吾聞諸夫子，人未有自致者也，必也視罍乎。
Chap. xvii. The philosopher Tsang said, "I heard this from our Master:—Men may not have shown what is in them to the full extent, and yet they will be found to do so, on occasion of mourning for their parents."

第十八章 曾子曰，吾聞諸夫子，孟莊子之孝也，其他, 可能也, 其不改父之臣, 與父之政, 是難能也。

Chap. xviii. The philosopher Tsang said, "I have heard this from our Master:—‘The filial piety of Mang Chwang, in other matters, was what other men are competent to, but, as seen in his not changing the ministers of his father, nor his father's mode of government, it is difficult to be attained to.’"

第十九章 孟氏使陽貨為士師, 問於曾子。曾子曰, 上失其道, 民散久矣。如得其情, 則哀矜而勿喜。

Chap. xix. The chief of the Mang family having appointed Yang Fu to be chief criminal judge, the latter consulted the philosopher Tsang. Tsang said, "The rulers have failed in their duties, and the people consequently have been disorganized, for a long time. When you have found out the truth of my accusation, be grieved for and pity them, and do not feel joy at your own ability."

第二十章 子貢曰, 射之不善, 不如是之甚也, 是以君子惡居下流, 天下之惡皆歸焉。
Chap. XX. Tsze-kung said, "Chau's wickedness was not so great as that name implies. Therefore, the superior man hates to dwell in a low-lying situation, where all the evil of the world will flow in upon him."

第二十一章 子貢曰，君子之過也，如日月之食焉，過也，人皆見之，更也，人皆仰之。

Chap. XXI. Tsze-kung said, "The faults of the superior man are like the eclipses of the sun and moon. He has his faults, and all man see them; he changes again, and all men look up to him."

第二十二章 1. 衛公孫朝問於子貢曰，仲尼焉學。2. 子貢曰，文武之道，未墬於地，在人，賢者識其大者，不賢者識其小者，莫不有文武之道焉，夫子焉不學，而亦何常師之有。

Chap. XXII. 2. Kung-sun Ch’ao of Wei asked Tsze-kung, saying, "From whom did Chung-ni get his learning?"

2. Tsze-kung replied, "The doctrines of Wan and Wu have not yet fallen to the ground. They are to be found among men. Men of talents and virtue remember the greater principles of them, and others, not possessing such talents and virtue, remember the smaller. Thus, all possess the doctrines of Wan and Wu. Where could our Master go that he should not have an opportunity of learning them?"
yet what necessity was there for his having a regular master?"

第二十三章 1. 叔孫武叔語大夫於朝曰，子貢賢於仲尼。 2. 子服景伯以告子貢。子貢曰，譬之宮牆，賜之牆也，及肩，窺見室家之好。 3. 夫子之牆，數仞，不得其門而入，不見宗廟之美，百官之富。 4. 得其門者或寡矣，夫子之云，不亦宜乎。

Chap. XXIII. 1. Shu-sun Wu-shu observed to the great officers in the court, saying, "Tsze-kung is superior to Chung-ni."

2. Tsze-fu Ching-po reported the observation to Tsze-kung, who said, "Let me use the comparison of a house and its encompassing wall. My wall only reaches to the shoulders. One may peep over it, and see whatever is valuable in the apartments.

3. "The wall of my Master is several fathoms high. If one do not find the door and enter by it, he cannot see the ancestral temple with its beauties, nor all the officers in their rich array.

4. "But I may assume that they are few who find the door. Was not the observation of the chief only what might have been expected?"
Chap. XXIV. Shu-sun Wu-shu having spoken revilingly of Chung-ni, Tsze-kung said, “It is of no use doing so. Chung-ni cannot be reviled. The talents and virtue of other men are hillocks and mounds, which may be stepped over. Chung-ni is the sun or moon, which it is not possible to step over. Although a man may wish to cut himself off from the sage, what harm can he do to the sun or moon? He only shows that he does not know his own capacity.”

第二十五章 1. 陳子禽謂子貢曰，子為善也。仲尼豈賢於子乎。 2. 子貢曰，君子一言以爲知，一言以爲不知，言不可不慎也。 3. 夫子之不可及也，猶天之不可階而升也。 4. 夫子之得邦家者，所謂立之斯立，道之斯行，綏之斯來，動之斯和，其生也榮，其死也哀，如之何其可及也。

Chap. XXV. 1. Ch’ an Tsze-ch’ in, addressing Tsze-kung, said, “You are too modest. How can Chung-ni be said to be superior to you?”

2. Tsze-kung said to him, “For one word a man is often deemed to be wise, and for one word he is often deemed to be foolish. We ought to be careful indeed in what we say.

3. “Our Master cannot be attained to, just in the same way as the heavens cannot be gone up to by the steps of a stair.

4. “Were our Master in the position of the ruler of a state or the chief of a family,
we should find verified the description which has been given of a sage's rule:—he would plant the people, and forthwith they would be established; he would lead them on, and forthwith they would follow him; he would make them happy, and forthwith multitudes would resort to his dominions; he would stimulate them, and forthwith they would be harmonious. While he lived, he would be glorious. When he died, he would be bitterly lamented. How is it possible for him to be attained to?"

BOOK XX. YAO YUEH 堯曰 第二十


Chap. i. 1. Yao said, "Oh! you, Shun, the Heaven-determined order of succession now rests in your person. Sincerely hold fast the due Mean. If there shall be distress and want within the four seas, the Heavenly revenue will come to a perpetual end."
2. Shun also used the same language in giving charge to Yu.

3. T'ang said, "I, the child Li, presume to use a dark-colored victim, and presume to announce to Thee, O most great and sovereign God, that the sinner I dare not pardon, and thy ministers, O God, I do not keep in obscurity. The examination of them is by thy mind, O God. If, in my person, I commit offenses, they are not to be attributed to you, the people of the myriad regions. If you in the myriad regions commit offenses, these offenses must rest on my person."

4. Chau conferred great gifts, and the good were enriched.

5. "Although he has his near relatives, they are not equal to my virtuous men. The people are throwing blame upon me, the One man."

6. He carefully attended to the weights and measures, examined the body of the laws, restored the discarded officers, and the good government of the kingdom took its course.

7. He revived states that had been extinguished, restored families whose line of succession had been broken, and called to office those who had retired into obscurity, so that throughout the kingdom the hearts of the people turned towards him.
8. What he attached chief importance to were the food of the people, the duties of mourning, and sacrifices.

9. By his generosity, he won all. By his sincerity, he made the people repose trust in him. By his earnest activity, his achievements were great. By his justice, all were delighted.

Chap. u. 1. Tsze-chang asked Confucius, saying, "In what way should a person in authority act in order that he may conduct government properly?" The Master replied, "Let him honor the five excellent, and banish away the four bad, things;—then may he conduct government properly." Tsze-chang said, "What are meant by the five excellent things?" The Master said, "When the person in authority is beneficent without great expenditure, when he
lays tasks on the people without their repining; when he pursues what he desires without being covetous; when he maintains a dignified ease without being proud; when he is majestic without being fierce.”

2. Tsze-chang said, “What is meant by being beneficent without great expenditure?” The Master replied, “When the person in authority makes more beneficial to the people the things from which they naturally derive benefit;—is not this being beneficent without great expenditure? When he chooses the labors which are proper, and makes them labor on them, who will repine? When his desires are set on benevolent government, and he secures it, who will accuse him of covetousness? Whether he has to do with many people or few, or with things great or small, he does not dare to indicate any disrespect;—is not this to maintain a dignified ease without any pride? He adjusts his clothes and cap, and throws a dignity into his looks, so that, thus dignified, he is looked at with awe;—is not this to be majestic without being fierce?”

3. Tsze-chang then asked, “What are meant by the four bad things?” The Master said, “To put the people to death without having instructed them;—this is called cruelty. To require from them, suddenly, the full tale of work,
without having given them warning;—this is called oppression. To issue orders as if without urgency, at first, and, when the time comes, to insist on them with severity;—this is called injury. And, generally, in the giving pay or rewards to men, to do it in a stingy way;—this is called acting the part of a mere official.”

第三章 1. 子曰,不知命,無以爲君子也。2. 不知禮,無以立也。3. 不知言,無以知人也。

Chap. III. 1. The Master said, "Without recognizing the ordinances of Heaven, it is impossible to be a superior man.

2. “Without an acquaintance with the rules of Propriety, it is impossible for the character to be established.

3. “Without knowing the force of words, it is impossible to know men.”
Chap. 1. 1. Mencius went to see King Hwuy of Leang.

2. The king said, "Venerable sir, since you have not counted it far to come here, a distance of a thousand li, may I presume that you are likewise provided with counsels to profit my kingdom?"
3. Mencius replied, "Why must Your Majesty use that word 'profit'? What I am likewise provided with, are counsels to benevolence and righteousness, and these are my only topics.

4. "If Your Majesty say, 'What is to be done to profit my kingdom?' the great officers will say, 'What is to be done to profit our families?' and the inferior officers and the common people will say, 'What is to be done to profit our persons?' Superiors and inferiors will try to snatch this profit the one from the other, and the kingdom will be endangered. In the kingdom of ten thousand chariots, the murderer of his sovereign shall be the chief of a family of a thousand chariots. In a kingdom of a thousand chariots, the murderer of his prince shall be the chief of a family of a hundred chariots. To have a thousand in ten thousand, and a hundred in a thousand, cannot be said not to be a large allotment, but if righteousness be put last, and profit be put first, they will not be satisfied without snatching all.

5. "There never has been a man trained to benevolence who neglected his parents. There never has been a man trained to righteousness who made his sovereign an after consideration
THE WORKS OF MENCIUS

6. "Let Your Majesty also say, 'Benevolence and righteousness, and these shall be the only themes.' Why must you use that word—'profit'?

第一章
1. 孟子見梁惠王，王立於沼上，顧鴻鶴兼麋鹿，曰，賢者亦樂此乎。 2. 孟子對曰，賢者而後樂此，不賢者，雖有此不樂也。 3. 詩云，經始靈臺，經之營之，庶民攻之，不日成之，經始勿亟，庶民子來，王在靈囿，麀鹿攸伏，麌鹿濯濯，白鳥鶴鶻，王在靈沼，於牓魚躍，文王以民力為臺為沼，而民歡樂之，謂其臺曰靈臺，謂其沼曰靈沼，樂其有麋鹿魚鼈，古之人與民偕樂，故能樂也。 4. 湯誓曰，詩日害喪，子及女偕亡，民欲與之偕亡，雖有臺池鳥獸，豈能獨樂哉。

Chap. II. 1. Mencius, another day, saw King Hwuy of Leang. The king went and stood with him by a pond, and, looking round at the large geese and deer, said, "Do wise and good princes also find pleasure in these things?"

2. Mencius replied, "Being wise and good, they have pleasure in these things. If they are not wise and good, though they have these things, they do not find pleasure.

3. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,' 
   'He measured out and commenced his spirtitower;
   He measured it out and planned it.
   The people addressed themselves to it,
   And in less than a day completed it."
When he measured and began it, he said to them—Be not so earnest:
But the multitudes came as if they had been his children.
The king was in his spirit-park;
The does reposed about,
The does so sleek and fat;
And the white birds shone glistening.
The king was by his spirit-pond;
How full was it of fishes leaping about!

"King Wan used the strength of the people to make his tower and his pond, and yet the people rejoiced to do the work, calling the tower 'the spirit-tower,' calling the pond 'the spirit-pond,' and rejoicing that he had his large deer, his fishes, and turtles. The ancients caused the people to have pleasure as well as themselves, and therefore they could enjoy it.

4 "In the Declaration of T'ang it is said, 'O sun, when wilt thou expire? We will die together with thee.' The people wished for Kee's death, though they should die with him. Although he had towers, ponds, birds, and animals, how could he have pleasure alone?"

第三章 1. 梁惠王曰,寡人之於國也,盡心焉耳矣,河內凶,則移其民於河東,移其粟於河內,河東凶,亦然,察鄰國之政,
Chap. III. 1. King Hwuy of Leang said, "Small as my virtue is, in the government of my kingdom, I do indeed exert my mind to the utmost. If the year be bad on the inside of the river, I remove as many of the people as I can to the East of the river, and convey grain to the country in the Inside. When the year is bad on the East of the river, I act on the same plan. On examining the government of the neighboring kingdoms, I do not find that there is any prince who employs his mind as I do. And yet the people of the neighboring
kingdoms do not decrease, nor do my people increase. How is this?"

2. Mencius replied, "Your Majesty is fond of war;—let me take an illustration from war. The soldiers move forward to the sound of the drums; and after their weapon have been erossed, on one side they throw away their coats of mail, trail their arms behind them, and run. Some run a hundred paces and stop; some run fifty paces and stop. What would you think if those who run fifty paces were to laugh at those who run a hundred paces?" The king said, "They may not do so. They only did not run a hundred paces; but they also ran away." "Since Your Majesty knows this," replied Mencius, "you need not hope that your people will become more numerous than those of the neighboring kingdoms.

3. "If the seasons of husbandry be not interfered with, the grain will be more than can be eaten. If close nets are not allowed to enter the pools and ponds, the fishes and turtles will be more than can be consumed. If the axes and bills enter the hills and forests only at the proper time, the wood will be more than can be used. When the grain and fish and turtles are more than can be eaten, and there is more wood than can be used, this enables the people to nourish their living and burv
their dead, without any feeling against any. This condition, in which the people nourish their living and bury their dead without any feeling against any, is the first step of Royal Government.

4. "Let mulberry trees be planted about the homesteads with their five mow, and persons of fifty years may be clothed with silk. In keeping fowls, pigs, dogs, and swine, let not their times of breeding be neglected, and persons of seventy years may eat flesh. Let there not be taken away the time that is proper for the cultivation of the farm with its hundred mow, and the family of several mouths that is supported by it shall not suffer from hunger. Let careful attention be paid to education in schools, inculcating in it especially the filial and fraternal duties, and gray-haired men will not be seen upon the roads, carrying burdens on their backs or on their heads. It never has been that the ruler of a state, where such results were seen,—persons of seventy wearing silk and eating flesh, and the black-haired people suffering neither from hunger nor cold,—did not attain to the imperial dignity.

5. "Your dogs and swine eat the food of men, and you do not know to make any restrictive arrangements. There are people dying from famine on the roads, and you do
not know to issue the stores of your granaries for them. When people die, you say, 'It is not owing to me; it is owing to the year.' In what does this differ from stabbing a man and killing him, and then saying—'It was not I; it was the weapon'? Let Your Majesty cease to lay the blame on the year, and instantly from all the empire the people will come to you.'

第4章 1. 梁惠王曰,寡人願安承教。2. 孟子對曰,殺人以梃與刃,有以異乎,曰,無以異也。3. 以刃與政,有以異乎,曰,無以異也。4. 曰,庖有肥肉,廩有肥馬,民有飢色,野有餓殤,此率獸而食人也。5. 獸相食,且人惡之,為民父母,行政,不免於率獸而食人,惡在其為民父母也。6. 仲尼曰,始作俑者,其無後乎,為其象人而用之也。如之何其使斯民飢而死也。

Chap IV 1. King Hwuy of Leang said, "I wish quietly to receive your instructions."

2. Mencius replied, "Is there any difference between killing a man with a stick and with a sword?" The king said, "There is no difference."

3. "Is there any difference between doing it with a sword and with the style of government?" "There is no difference," was the reply.

4. Mencius then said, "In your kitchen there is fat meat; in your stables there are fat
horses. But your people have the look of hunger, and on the wilds there are those who have died of famine. This is leading on beasts to devour men.

5. “Beasts devour one another; and men hate them for doing so. When a prince, being the parent of his people, administers his government so as to be chargeable with leading on beasts to devour men, where is that parental relation to the people?”

6. Chung-ne said, “Was he not without posterity who first made wooden images to bury with the dead? So he said, because that man made the semblances of men, and used them for that purpose:—what shall be thought of him who causes his people to die of hunger?”

**Chap. V**

1. King Hwuy of Leang said, “There was not in the empire a stronger state...
than Ts'in, as you, venerable sir, know. But since it descended to me, on the east we have been defeated by Ts'e, and then my eldest son perished; on the west we have lost seven hundred li of territory to Ts'ìn; and on the south we have sustained disgrace at the hands of Ts'oo. I have brought shame on my departed predecessors, and wish on their account to wipe it away, once for all. What course is to be pursued to accomplish this?"

2. Mencius replied, "With a territory which is only a hundred li square, it is possible to attain the imperial dignity.

3. "If Your Majesty will indeed dispense a benevolent government to the people, being sparing in the use of punishments and fines, and making the taxes and levies light, so causing that the fields shall be plowed deep, and the weeding of them be carefully attended to, and that the strong-bodied, during their days of leisure, shall cultivate their filial piety, fraternal respectfulness, sincerity, and truthfulness, serving thereby, at home, their fathers and elder brothers, and, abroad their elders and superiors;—you will then have a people who can be employed, with sticks which they have prepared, to oppose the strong mail and sharp weapons of the troops of Ts'ìn and Ts'oo."
4. "The rulers of those states rob their people of their time, so that they cannot plow and weed their fields, in order to support their parents. Their parents suffer from cold and hunger. Brothers, wives, and children are separated and scattered abroad.

5. "Those rulers, as it were, drive their people into pitfalls, or drown them. Your Majesty will go to punish them. In such a case, who will oppose Your Majesty?

6. "In accordance with this is the saying, — 'The benevolent has no enemy.' I beg Your Majesty not to doubt what I say."

Chap. vi. 1. Mencius went to see the King Seang of Leang.

2. On coming out from the interview, he said to some persons, "When I looked at him from a distance, he did not appear like a sovereign; when I drew near to him, I saw
nothing venerable about him. Abruptly he asked me, How can the empire be settled? I replied, It will be settled by being united under one sway.'

3. "'Who can so unite it?'

4. "'I replied, 'He who has no pleasure in killing men can so unite it.'

5. "'Who can give it to him?'

6. "'I replied, 'All the people of the empire will unanimously give it to him. Does Your Majesty understand the way of the growing grain? During the seventh and eighth months, when drought prevails, the plants become dry. Then the clouds collect densely in the heavens, they send down torrents of rain, and the grain erects itself, as if by a shoot. When it does so, who can keep it back? Now among the shepherds of men throughout the empire, there is not one who does not find pleasure in killing men. If there were one who did not find pleasure in killing men, all the people in the empire would look towards him with outstretched necks. Such being indeed the case, the people would flock to him, as water flows downwards with a rush, which no one repress.' "

第七章 1. 齊宣王問曰，齊桓晉文之事，可得聞乎。2. 孟子對曰，仲尼之徒，無道桓文之事者，是以後世無傳焉，臣未之聞也，無以，則王乎。3. 曰，德何如，則可以王矣，曰，保民
而王, 莫之能禦也。4. 曰, 若寡人者, 可以保民乎哉。曰, 可。曰, 何由知吾可也。曰, 臣聞之, 夏觀日, 王坐於堂上有養牛而過堂下者, 王見之, 曰, 牛何之。對曰, 將以鬪雞。王曰, 舍之, 吾不忍其殺雞, 若無罪而就死地, 對曰, 然而廢鬹鷄 輿。曰, 何可廢也, 以羊易之。不識有諸。5. 曰, 有之。曰, 是 心足以王矣, 百姓皆以王為愛也, 臣固知王之不忍也。6. 王曰, 然, 誠有百姓者, 齊國雖褊小, 吾何愛一牛, 即不忍其 殺雞, 若無罪而就死地, 故以羊易之也。7. 曰, 王無異於 百姓之以王為愛也, 以小易大, 彼亦知之, 王若隱其無罪而 就死地, 則牛羊何擇焉。王笑曰, 是誠何心哉, 我非愛其財, 而易之以羊也, 宜乎百姓之謂我愛也。8. 曰, 無傷也, 是 乃仁術也, 見牛, 未見羊也, 君子之於禽獸也, 見其生, 不忍 見其死, 開其聲, 不忍食其肉, 是以君子遠庖廚也。9. 王說, 曰, 詩云, 他有有心, 予忖度之, 夫子之謂也, 夫我乃行之, 反而求之, 不得吾心, 夫子言之, 於我心有戚戚焉, 此心之 所以合於王者何也。10. 曰, 有復於王者曰, 吾力足以舉百 鈞, 而不足以舉一羽, 明足以察秋毫之末, 而不見舆薪, 則 王許之乎。曰, 否。今恩足以以及禽獸, 而功不至於百姓者, 獨 何與, 然則一羽之不舉, 爲不用力焉, 舆薪之不見, 爲不用 明焉, 百姓之不見保, 爲不用恩焉, 故王之不王, 不為也, 非 不能也。11. 曰, 不為者, 與不能者之形, 何以異。曰, 挟太 山以超北海, 語人曰, 我不能, 是誠不能也, 爲長者折枝, 語 人曰, 我不能, 是不爲也, 非不能也, 故王之不王, 非挟太山 以超北海之類也, 王之不王, 是折枝之類也。12. 老吾老, 以及人之老, 幼吾幼, 以及人之幼, 天下可運於掌, 詩云, 刑 于寡妻, 至於兄弟, 以御于家邦, 言舉斯心加諸彼而已。故
THE WORKS OF MENGCIUS

推恩足以保四海，不推恩，無以保妻子。古之人，所以大過人者，無他焉，善推其所為而已矣。今恩足以及禽獸，而功不至於百姓者，獨何與。13. 權，然後知輕重，度，然後知長短，物皆然，心為甚，王請度之。14. 抑王興甲兵，危士臣，構怨於諸侯，然後快於心與。15. 王曰，否，吾何快於是，將以求吾所大欲也。16. 日，王之所大欲，可得聞與。王笑而不言。日，為肥甘不足於口與，輕煩不足於體與，抑為采色不足視於目與，聲音不足聽於耳與，便嬖不足使令於前與，王之諸臣，皆足以供之，而王豈為是哉。日，否，吾不為是也。日，然則王之所大欲，可知已，欲辟土地，朝秦楚，莅中夏，而撫四夷也，以若所為，求若所欲，猶緣木而求魚也。17. 王曰，若是其甚與，日，殆有甚焉，緣木求魚，雖不得魚，無後災，以若所為，求若所欲，盡心力而為之，後必有災。日，可得聞與，日，鄰人與楚人戰，則王為孰勝。日，楚人勝。日，然則小固不可以敵大，寡固不可以敵衆，弱固不可以敵彊，海內之地，方千里者九，齊集有其一，以一服八，何以異於鄰敵楚哉，蓋亦反其本矣。18. 今王發政施仁，使天下仕者，皆欲立於王之朝，耕者，皆欲耕於王之野，商賈，皆欲藏於王之市，行旅，皆欲出於王之涂，天下之欲疾其君者，皆欲赴愬於王；其若是，孰能禦之。19. 王曰，吾惛，不能進於是矣，願夫子輔吾志，明以教我，我雖不敏，請嘗試之。20. 日，無恆產，而有恆心者，惟士為能，若民則無恆產，因無恆心，苟無恆心，放辟邪侈，無不為已，及陷於罪，然後從而刑之，是罔民也。焉有仁人在位，罔民而可爲也。21. 是故，明君制民之產，必使仰足以事父母，俯足以畜妻子，樂歲終身飽，凶年免於死亡，然後驅而之善，故民之從之也輕。22.
Chap. VII. 1. King Seuen of Ts'e asked, saying, "May I be informed by you of the transactions of Hwan of Ts'e, and Wan of Tsin?"

2. Mencius replied, "There were none of the disciples of Chung-ne who spoke about the affairs of Hwan and Wan, and therefore they have not been transmitted to these after ages;—your servant has not heard them. If you will have me speak, let it be about imperial government."

3. The king said, "What virtue must there be in order to the attainment of imperial sway?" Mencius answered, "The love and protection of the people; with this there is no power which can prevent a ruler from attaining it."

4. The king asked again, "Is such a one as I competent to love and protect the people?" Mencius said, "Yes." "From what do you
know that I am competent to that?" "I heard the following incident from Hoo Heih: — 'The king,' said he, 'was sitting aloft in the hall; when a man appeared, leading an ox past the lower part of it. The king saw him, and asked, 'Where is the ox going?' The man replied, 'We are going to consecrate a bell with its blood.' The king said, 'Let it go. I cannot bear its frightened appearance, as if it were an innocent person going to the place of death.' The man answered, 'Shall we then omit the consecration of the bell?' The king said, 'How can that be omitted? Change it for a sheep.' 'I do not know whether this incident really occurred.'

5. The king replied, 'It did,' and then Mencius said, 'The heart seen in this is sufficient to carry you to the imperial sway. The people all supposed that Your Majesty grudged the animal, but your servant knows surely, that it was Your Majesty's not being able to bear the sight, which made you do as you did.'

6. The king said, 'You are right. And yet there really was an appearance of what the people condemned. But though Ts'e be a small and narrow state, how should I grudge one ox. Indeed it was because I could not bear its frightened appearance, as if it were
an innocent person going to the place of death, that therefore I changed it for a sheep."

7. Mencius pursued, "Let not Your Majesty deem it strange that the people should think you were grudging the animal. When you changed a large one for a small, how should they know the true reason? If you felt pained by its being led without guilt to the place of death, what was there to choose between an ox and a sheep?" The king laughed and said, "What really was my mind in the matter? I did not grudge the expense of it, and changed it for a sheep!—There was reason in the people's saying that I grudged it."

8. "There is no harm in their saying so," said Mencius. "Your conduct was an artifice of benevolence. You saw the ox, and had not seen the sheep. So is the superior man affected towards animals, that, having seen them alive, he cannot bear to see them die; having heard their dying cries, he cannot bear to eat their flesh. Therefore he keeps away from his cookroom."

9. The king was pleased, and said, "It is said in the Book of Poetry, 'The minds of others, I am able by reflection to measure';—this is verified, my Master, in your discovery of my motive. I indeed did the thing but
when I turned my thoughts inward, and examined into it, I could not discover my own mind. When you, Master, spoke those words, the movements of compassion began to work in my mind. How is it that this heart has in it what is equal to the imperial sway?"

10. Mencius replied, "Suppose a man were to make this statement to Your Majesty: 'My strength is sufficient to lift three thousand catties, but it is not sufficient to lift one feather;—my eyesight is sharp enough to examine the point of an autumn hair, but I do not see a wagonload of fagots;—would Your Majesty allow what he said?' "No," was the answer, on which Mencius proceeded, "Now here is kindness sufficient to reach to animals, and no benefits are extended from it to the people,—How is this? Is an exception to be made here? The truth is, the feather's not being lifted, is because the strength is not used; the wagonload of firewood's not being seen, is because the vision is not used; and the people's not being loved and protected, is because the kindness is not employed. Therefore Your Majesty's not exercising the Imperial sway, is because you do not do it, not because you are not able to do it."

11. The king asked, "How may the difference between the not doing a thing, and the
not being able to do it, be represented?" Mencius replied, "In such a thing as taking the T'ae Mountain under your arm, and leaping over the north sea with it, if you say to people—'I am not able to do it,' that is a real case of not being able. In such a matter as breaking off a branch from a tree at the order of a superior, if you say to people—'I am not able to do it,' that is a case of not doing it, it is not a case of not being able to do it. Therefore Your Majesty's not exercising the imperial sway, is not such a case as that of taking the T'ae Mountain under your arm, and leaping over the north sea with it. Your Majesty's not exercising the imperial sway is a case like that of breaking off a branch from a tree.

12. "Treat with the reverence due to age the elders in your own family, so that the elders in the families of others shall be similarly treated; treat with the kindness due to youth the young in your own family, so that the young in the families of others shall be similarly treated:—do this, and the empire may be made to go round in your palm. It is said in 'The Book of Poetry,' 'His example affected his wife. It reached to his brothers, and his family of the state was governed by it.'—The language shows how King Wan simply took
this kindly heart, and exercised it towards those parties. Therefore the carrying out his kindly heart by a prince will suffice for the love and protection of all within the four seas, and if he do not carry it out, he will not be able to protect his wife and children. The way in which the ancients came greatly to surpass other men, was no other than this:—simply that they knew well how to carry out, so as to affect others, what they themselves did. Now your kindness is sufficient to reach to animals, and no benefits are extended from it to reach the people.—How is this? Is an exception to be made here?

13. "By weighing, we know what things are light, and what heavy. By measuring, we know what things are long, and what short. The relations of all things may be thus determined, and it is of the greatest importance to estimate the motions of the mind. I beg Your Majesty to measure it.

14. "You collect your equipments of war, endanger your soldiers and officers, and excite the resentment of the other princes;—do these things cause you pleasure in your mind?"

15. The king replied: "No. How should I derive pleasure from these things? My object in them is to seek for what I greatly desire."
16. 'Mencius said, "May I hear from you what it is that you greatly desire?" The king laughed and did not speak. Mencius resumed, "Are you led to desire it, because you have not enough of rich and sweet food for your mouth? Or because you have not enough of light and warm clothing for your body? Or because you have not enough of beautifully colored objects to delight your eyes? Or because you have not enough of voices and tones enough to please your ears? Or because you have not enough of attendants and favorites to stand before you and receive your orders? Your Majesty's various officers are sufficient to supply you with those things. How can Your Majesty be led to entertain such a desire on account of them?" "No," said the king, "my desire is not on account of them?" Mencius added, "Then, what Your Majesty greatly desires may be known. You wish to enlarge your territories, to have Ts'in and Ts'oo wait at your court, to rule the Middle Kingdom, and to attract to you the barbarous tribes that surround it. But to do what you do to seek for what you desire, is like climbing a tree to seek for fish.

17. The king said, "Is it so bad as that?" "It is even worse," was the reply. "If you climb a tree to seek for fish, although you do
not get the fish, you will not suffer any subsequent calamity. But if you do what you do to seek for what you desire, doing it moreover with all your heart, you will assuredly after, wards meet with calamities." The king asked, "May I hear from you the proof of that?" Mencius said, "If the people of Tsow should fight with the people of Ts'oo, which of them does Your Majesty think would conquer?" "The people of Ts'oo would conquer." "Yes;—and so it is certain that a small country cannot contend with a great, that few cannot contend with many, that the weak cannot contend with the strong. The territory within the four seas embraces nine divisions, each of a thousand li square. All Ts'e together is but one of them. If with one part you try to subdue the other eight, what is the difference between that and Tsow's contending with Ts'oo? For, with the desire which you have, you must likewise turn back to the radical course for its attainment.

18. "Now, if Your Majesty will institute a government whose action shall all be benevolent, this will cause all the officers in the empire to wish to stand in Your Majesty's court, and the farmers all to wish to plow in Your Majesty's fields, and the merchants, both traveling and stationary, all to wish to store
their goods in Your Majesty’s market places, and traveling strangers all to wish to make their tours on Your Majesty’s roads, and all throughout the empire who feel aggrieved by their rulers to wish to come and complain to Your Majesty. And when they are so bent, who will be able to keep them back?"

19. The king said, “I am stupid, and not able to advance to this. I wish you, my Master, to assist my intentions. Teach me clearly; although I am deficient in intelligence and vigor, I will essay and try to carry your instructions into effect.”

20. Mencius replied, “They are only men of education, who, without a certain livelihood, are able to maintain a fixed heart. As to the people, if they have not a certain livelihood, it follows that they will not have a fixed heart. And if they have not a fixed heart, there is nothing which they will not do, in the way of self-abandonment, of moral deflection, of depravity, and of wild license. When they thus have been involved in crime, to follow them up and punish them;—this is to entrap the people. How can such a thing as entrapping the people be done under the rule of a benevolent man?”

21. “Therefore an intelligent ruler will regulate the livelihood of the people, so as to
make sure that, above, they shall have sufficient wherewith to serve their parents, and below, sufficient wherewith to support their wives and children; that in good years they shall always be abundantly satisfied, and that in bad years they shall escape the danger of perishing. After this he may urge them, and they will proceed to what is good, for in this case the people will follow after that with case.

22. “Now, the livelihood of the people is so regulated, that, above, they have not sufficient wherewith to serve their parents, and, below, they have not sufficient wherewith to support their wives and children. Notwithstanding good years, their lives are continually embittered, and, in bad years, they do not escape perishing. In such circumstances they only try to save themselves from death, and are afraid they will not succeed. What leisure have they to cultivate propriety and righteousness?

23. “If Your Majesty wishes to effect this regulation of the livelihood of the people, why not turn to that which is the essential step to it?

24. “Let mulberry trees be planted about the homesteads with their five mow, and persons of fifty years may be clothed with silk. In keeping fowls, pigs, and swine, let not their
times of breeding be neglected, and persons of seventy years may eat flesh. Let there not be taken away the time that is proper for the cultivation of the farm with its hundred mow, and the family of eight mouths that is supported by it shall not suffer from hunger. Let careful attention be paid to education in schools,—the inculcation in it especially of the filial and fraternal duties, and grayhaired men will not be seen upon the roads, carrying burdens on their backs or on their heads. It never has been that the ruler of a state where such results were seen,—the old wearing silk and eating flesh, and the black-haired people suffering neither from hunger nor cold,—did not attain to the imperial dignity.
Chap. 1 1 Chwang Paou, seeing Mencius, said to him, “I had an audience of the king. His Majesty told me that he loved music, and I was not prepared with anything to reply to him. What do you pronounce about that love of music?” Mencius replied, “If the king’s love of music were very great, the kingdom of Ts’e would be near to a state of good government.”

2. Another day, Mencius, having an audience of the king, said, “Your majesty, I have heard, told the officer Chwang that you love music;—was it so?” The king changed color, and said, “I am unable to love the music of the ancient sovereigns; I only love the music that suits the manners of the present age.”
3. Mencius said, "If Your Majesty's love of music were very great, Ts'ê would be near to a state of good government! The music of the present day is just like the music of antiquity, in regard to effecting that."

4. The king said, "May I hear from you the proof of that?" Mencius said, "Which is the more pleasant,—to enjoy music by yourself alone, or to enjoy it along with others?" "To enjoy it along with others" was the reply. "And which is the more pleasant,—to enjoy music along with a few, or to enjoy it along with many?" "To enjoy it along with many."

5. Mencius proceeded, "Your servant begs to explain what I have said about music to Your Majesty.

6. "Now, Your Majesty is having music here. The people hear the noise of your bells and drums, and the notes of your fifes and pipes, and they all, with aching heads, knit their brows, and say to one another, 'That's how our king likes his music! But why does he reduce us to this extremity of distress?—Fathers and sons cannot see one another. Elder brothers and younger brothers, wives and children, are separated and scattered abroad. Now, Your Majesty is hunting here. — The people hear the noise of your carriages and
horses, and see the beauty of your plumes and streamers, and they all, with aching heads, knit their brows, and say to one another, 'That's how our king likes his hunting! But why does he reduce us to this extremity of distress?—Fathers and sons cannot see one another. Elder brothers and younger brothers; wives and children, are separated and scattered abroad. Their feeling thus is from no other reason but that you do not give the people to have pleasure as well as yourself.

7. "Now Your Majesty is having music here. The people hear the noise of your bells and drums, and the notes of your fifes and pipes, and they all, delighted, and with joyful looks, say to one another, That sounds as if our king were free from all sickness! If he were not, how could he enjoy this music? Now, Your Majesty is hunting here. The people hear the noise of your carriages and horses, and see the beauty of your plumes and streamers, and they all, delighted, and with joyful looks, say to one another, That looks as if our king were free from all sickness! If he were not, how could he enjoy this hunting? Their feeling thus is from no other reason but that you cause them to have their pleasure as you have yours.

8. "If Your Majesty now will make
pleasure a thing common to the people and yourself, the imperial sway awaits you."

第二章 1. 齊宣王問曰，文王之園，方七十里，有諸。孟子對曰，於傳有之。 2. 日，若是其大乎。日，民猶以爲小也。曰，寡人之園，方四十里，民猶以爲大，何也。日，文王之園，方七十里，芻芻者往焉，雉兔者往焉，與民同之，民以爲小，不亦宜乎。 3. 臣始至於境，問國之大禁，然後敢入，臣聞郊關之內，有園方四十里，殺其麋鹿者，如殺人之罪，則是方四十里，爲阱於國中，民以爲大，不亦宜乎。

Chap. 11. 1. The king, Seuen, of Ts'o asked, "Was it so, that the park of King Wan contained seventy square li?" Mencius replied, "It is so in the records.

2. "Was it so large as that?" exclaimed the king. "The people," said Mencius, "still looked on it as small." The king added, "My park contains only forty square li, and the people still look on it as large. How is this?" "The park of King Wan," was the reply, "contained seventy square li, but the grass-cutters and fuel gatherers had the privilege of entrance into it; so also had the catchers of pheasants and hares. He shared it with the people, and was it not with reason that they looked on it as small?

3. "When I first arrived at the borders of your state, I inquired about the great prohibitory regulations, before I would venture
to enter it; and I heard, that inside the border gates there was a park of forty square li, and that he who killed a deer in it, was held guilty of the same crime as if he had killed a man. —Thus those forty square li are a pitfall in the middle of the kingdom. Is it not "with reason that the people look upon them as large?"

第三章 1. 齊宣王問曰, 交鄰國有道乎。孟子對曰, 有, 惟仁者, 爲能以大事小, 是故湯事葛, 文王事昆夷, 惟智者, 爲能以小事大, 故太王事獯鬻, 句踐事吳。2. 以大事小者, 樂天者也, 以小事大者, 周天者也, 樂天者, 保天下, 周天者, 保其國。3. 詩云, 周天之威, 于時保之。4. 王曰, 大故言矣, 寡人有疾, 寡人好勇。5. 對曰, 王請無好小勇, 夫撫劍疾視曰, 彼惡敢當我哉, 此匹夫之勇, 敵一人者也。王請大之。6. 詩云, 王赫斯怒, 爱整其旅, 以遏粗葛, 以篤周祜, 以對于天下, 此文王之勇也, 文王一怒, 而安天下之民。7. 書曰, 天降下民, 作之君, 作之師, 惟曰, 其助上帝, 龍之四方, 有罪無罪, 惟我在, 天下曷政有越厥志, 一人衝行於天下, 武王恥之, 此武王之勇也, 而武王亦一怒, 而安天下之民。8. 今王亦一怒, 而安天下之民, 民惟恐王之不好勇也。

Chap. III. 1. The King Seuen of Ts'e asked, saying, "Is there any way to regulate one's maintenance of intercourse with neighboring kingdoms?" Mencius replied, "There is. But it requires a perfectly virtuous prince to be able, with a great country, to serve a small one —
as, for instance, T'ang served Ko, and King Wan served the Kwan barbarians. And it requires a wise prince to be able, with a small country, to serve a large one,—as the King T'ae served the Heun-yuh, and Kow-tseen served Woo.

2. "He who with a great state serves a small one, delights in Heaven. He who with a small state serves a large one, stands in awe of Heaven. He who delights in Heaven, will affect with his love and protection the whole empire. He who stands in awe of Heaven, will affect with his love and protection his own kingdom.

3. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry, 'I fear the majesty of Heaven, and will thus preserve its favoring decree.'"

4. The king said, "A great saying! But I have an infirmity;—I love valor."

5. "I beg Your Majesty," was the reply, "not to love small valor. If a man brandishes his sword, looks fiercely, and says, 'How dare he withstand me? '—this is the valor of a common man, who can be the opponent only of a single individual. I beg Your Majesty to greaten it.

6. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry, 'The king blazed with anger, And e marshaled his hosts,"
To stop the march to Keu,
To consolidate the prosperity of Chow,
To meet the expectations of the empire.

This was the valor of King Wan. King Wan in one burst of his anger, gave repose to all the people of the empire.

7. "In the 'Book of History' it is said 'Heaven, having produced the inferior people, appointed for them rulers and teachers, with the purpose that they should be assisting to God, and therefore distinguished them throughout the four quarters of the empire. Whoever are offenders, and whoever are innocent, here am I to deal with them. How dare any under heaven give indulgence to their refractory wills?' There was one man pursuing a violent and disorderly course in the empire, and King Woo was ashamed of it. This was the valor of King Woo. He also, by one display of his anger, gave repose to all the people of the empire.

8. "Let now Your Majesty also, in one burst of anger, give repose to all the people of the empire. The people are only afraid that Your Majesty does not love valor.

第4章 1. 齊宣王見孟子於雪宮，王曰，賢者亦有此樂乎？孟子對曰，有，人不得，則非其上矣。2. 不得而非其上者非也，為民上，而不與民同樂者，亦非也。3 樂民之樂者，民
Chap. iv 1. The King Seuen of Ts'e had an interview with Mencius in the Snow palace, and said to him, “Do men of talents and worth likewise find pleasure in these things?” Mencius replied, “They do, and if people generally are not able to enjoy themselves, they condemn their superiors.

2. For them, when they cannot enjoy themselves, to condemn their superiors is wrong, but when the superiors of the people do not make enjoyment a thing common to the people and themselves, they also do wrong.
3. "When a ruler rejoices in the joy of his people, they also rejoice in his joy; when he grieves at the sorrow of his people, they also grieve at his sorrow. A sympathy of joy will pervade the empire; a sympathy of sorrow will do the same:—in such a state of things, it cannot be but that the ruler attain to the imperial dignity.

4. "Formerly, the duke, King, of Ts'e, asked the minister Ngan, saying, 'I wish to pay a visit of inspection to Chuen-foo, and Chaou-woo, and then to bend my course southward along the shore, till I come to Lang-yay. What shall I do that my tour may be fit to be compared with the visits of inspection made by the ancient emperors?'

5. "The minister Ngan replied, 'An excellent inquiry! When the emperor visited the princes, it was called a tour of inspection, that is, he surveyed the states under their care. When the princes attended at the court of the emperor, it was called a report of office, that is, they reported their administration of their offices. Thus, neither of the proceedings was without a purpose. And moreover, in the spring they examined the plowing, and supplied any deficiency of seed, in the autumn they examined the reaping, and supplied any deficiency of yield. There is the saying of the Hea
dynasty,—"If our king do not take his ramble, what will become of our happiness? If our king do not make his excursion, what will become of our help?" That ramble and that excursion were a pattern to the princes.

6. "Now, the state of things is different. —A host marches in attendance on the ruler, and stores of provisions are consumed. The hungry are deprived of their food, and there is no rest for those who are called to toil. Maledictions are uttered by one to another with eyes askance, and the people proceed to the commission of wickedness. Thus the imperial ordinances are violated, and the people are oppressed, and the supplies of food and drink flow away like water. The rulers yield themselves to the current, or they urge their way against it; they are wild; they are utterly lost:—these things proceed to the grief of their subordinate governors.

"Descending along with the current, and forgetting to return, is what I call yielding to it. Pressing up against it, and forgetting to return, is what I call urging their way against it. Pursuing the chase without satiety is what I call being wild. Delighting in wine without satiety is what I call being lost.

8. "The ancient emperors had no pleasures to which they gave themselves as on the
flowing stream; no doings which might be so characterized as wild and lost.

9. "'It is for you, my prince to pursue your course.'"

10. "The duke King was pleased. He issued a proclamation throughout his state, and went out and occupied a shed in the borders. From that time he began to open his granaries to supply the wants of the people, and calling the grand music master, he said to him—'Make for me music to suit a prince and his minister pleased with each other.' And it was then that the Che-shaou and Keo-shaou were made, in the poetry to which it was said 'What fault is it to restrain one's prince?' He who restrains his prince loves his prince.
Chap v. 1. The king Seuen of Tše said, “People all tell me to pull down and remove the Brilliant palace. Shall I pull it down, or stop the movement for that object?”

2. Mencius replied, “The Brilliant palace is a palace appropriate to the emperors. If Your Majesty wishes to practice the true royal government, then do not pull it down.”

3. The king said, “May I hear from you what the true royal government is?” “Formerly,” was the reply, “King Wan’s government of K’e was as follows: — The husbandmen cultivated for the government one ninth of the land; the descendants of officers were salaried; at the passes and in the markets, strangers were inspected, but goods were not taxed: there were no prohibitions respecting the ponds and weirs; the wives and children of criminals were not involved in their guilt. There were the old and wifeless, or widowers; the old and husbandless, or widows; the old and childless, or solitaries; the young and fatherless, or orphans: — these four classes are the most destitute of the people, and have none to whom they can tell their wants, and King Wan, in
the institution of his government with its benevolent action, made them the first objects of his regard, as it is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'The rich may get through.
But alas! for the miserable and solitary!'"

4. The king said, "O excellent words!" Mencius said, "Since Your Majesty deems them excellent, why do you not practice them?"
"I have an infirmity," said the king; "I am fond of wealth." The reply was, "Formerly, Kung-lew was fond of wealth. If it said in the 'Book of Poetry':

'He reared his ricks, and filled his granaries,
He tied up dried provisions and grain,
In bottomless bags, and sacks,
That he might gather his people together, and glorify his state.
With bows and arrows all-displayed,
With shields, and spears, and battle-axes, large and small,
He commenced his march.

In this way those who remained in their old seat had their ricks and granaries, and those who marched had their bags of provisions. It was not till after this that he thought he could
commence his march. If Your Majesty loves wealth, let the people be able to gratify the same feeling, and what difficulty will there be in your attaining the imperial sway?"

5. The king said, "I have an infirmity; I am fond of beauty." The reply was, "Formerly, king T‘ae was fond of beauty, and loved his wife. It is said in the 'Book of Poetry':

       'Koo-kung Tan-foo
Came in the morning, galloping his horse,
By the banks of the western waters,
As far as the foot of Ke‘e hill,
Along with the lady of Keang;
They came and together chose the site of settlement.'

At that time, in the seclusion of the house, there were no dissatisfied women, and abroad, there were no unmarried men. If Your Majesty loves beauty, let the people be able to gratify the same feeling, and what difficulty will there be in your attaining the imperial sway?"

Chap. vi. Mencius said to the King Seuen
of Ts'e, "Suppose that one of Your Majesty's ministers were to intrust his wife and children to the care of his friend, while he himself went into Ts'oo to travel, and that, on his return, he should find that the friend had caused his wife and children to suffer from cold and hunger;—how ought he to deal with him?" The king said, "He should cast him off."

2. Mencius proceeded, "Suppose that the chief criminal judge could not regulate the officers under him, how would you deal with him?" The king said, "Dismiss him."

3. Mencius again said, "If within the four borders of your kingdom there is not good government, what is to be done?" The king looked to the right and left, and spoke of other matters.

第七章 1. 孟子見齊宣王曰，所謂故國者，非謂有喬木之謂也，有世臣之謂也，王無親臣矣，昔者所進，今日不知其亡也。 2. 王曰，吾何以識其不才而舍之。 3. 曰，國君進賢，如不得已，將使卑蹺尊，疏蹺戚，可不慎與。 4. 左右皆曰賢，未可也，諸大夫皆曰賢，未可也，國人皆曰賢，然後察之，見賢焉，然後用之，左右皆曰不可，勿聽，諸大夫皆曰不可，勿聽，國人皆曰不可，然後察之，見不可焉，然後去之。 5. 左右皆曰可殺，勿聽，諸大夫皆曰可殺，勿聽，國人皆曰可殺，然後察之，見可殺焉，然後殺之，故曰國人殺之也。 6. 如此然後可以為民父母。
Chap. vii. 1. Mencius, having an interview with the King Seuen of Ts'e, said to him: "When men speak of 'an ancient kingdom,' it is not meant thereby that it has lofty trees in it, but that it has ministers sprung from families which have been noted in it for generations. Your Majesty has no intimate ministers even. Those whom you advanced yesterday are gone to-day, and you do not know it."

2. The king said, "How shall I know that they have not ability, and so avoid employing them at all?"

3. The reply was, "The ruler of a state advances to office men of talents and virtue, only as a matter of necessity. Since he will thereby cause the low to overstep the honorable, and strangers to overstep his relatives, may he do so but with caution?"

4. "When all those about you say,—This is a man of talents and worth,' you may not for that believe it. When your great officers all say,—'This is a man of talents and virtue,' neither may you for that believe it. When all the people say,—'This is a man of talents and virtue,' then examine into the case, and when you find that the man is such, employ him. When all those about you say,—'This man won't do,' don't listen to them. When all your great officers say,—'This man won't do,'
don’t listen to them. When the people all say,—This man won’t do,’ then examine into the case, and when you find that the man won’t do, send him away.

5. “When all those about you say,—‘This man deserves death, don’t listen to them. When all your great officers say,—‘This man deserves death,’ don’t listen to them. When the people all say,—‘This man deserves death,’ then inquire into the case, and when you see that the man deserves death, put him to death. In accordance with this we have the saying, ‘The people killed him.’

6. “You must act in this way in order to be the parent of the people.”

第八章

1. 齊宣王問曰,湯放桀,武王伐紂,有諸。孟子對曰,於傳有之。 2. 曰,耳弑其君可乎。 3. 曰,賊仁者,謂之賊,賊義者,謂之殘,残賊之人,謂之一夫,聞誅一夫紂矣,未聞弑君也。

Chap. VIII. 1. The king Seuen of Ts’e asked, saying, “Was it so, that T’ang banished Kee, and that King Woo smote Chow?” Mencius replied, “It is so in the records.”

2. The king said, “May a minister then put his sovereign to death?”

3. Mencius said, “He who outrages the benevolence proper to his nature is called a robber; he who outrages righteousness is called
a ruffian. The robber and ruffian we call a mere fellow. I have heard of the cutting off of the fellow Chow, but I have not heard of the putting a sovereign to death, *in his case."

Chap. IX. 1. Mencius, having an interview with the king Seuen of Ts‘e, said to him: “If you are going to build a large mansion, you will surely cause the master of the workmen to look out for large trees, and when he has found such large trees, you will be glad, thinking that they will answer for the intended object. Should the workmen hew them so as to make them too small, then Your Majesty will be angry, thinking that they will not answer for the purpose. Now, a man spends his youth in learning the principles of right government, and, being grown up to vigor, he wishes to put them in practice; — if Your Majesty says to him, ‘For the present put aside what you have learned, and follow me,’ what shall we say?"
2. "Here now you have a gem unwrought, in the stone. Although it may be worth 240,000 tael, you will surely employ a lapidary to cut and polish it. But when you come to the government of the state, then you say, — 'For the present put aside what you have learned, and follow me.' How is it that you herein act so differently from your conduct in calling in the lapidary to cut the gem!"

第10章
1. 齊人伐燕勝之。2. 宣王問曰,或謂寡人勿取,或謂寡人取之,以萬乘之國,伐萬乘之國,五句而舉之,人力不至於此,不取,必有天殃,取之何如。3. 孟子對曰,取之而燕民悅,則取之,古之人有行之者,武王是也,取之而燕民不悅,則勿取,古之人有行之者,文王是也。4. 以萬乘之國伐萬乘之國,築食壺漿,以迎王師,豈有他哉,避水火也。如水益深,如火益熱,亦運而已矣。

Chap. X. 1. The people of Ts'ê attacked Yen, and conquered it. 2. The king Seuên asked, saying, "Some tell me not to take possession of it for myself, and some tell me to take possession of it. For a kingdom of ten thousand chariots, attacking another of ten thousand chariots, to complete the conquest of it in fifty days, is an achievement beyond mere human strength. If I do not take possession of it, calamities from Heaven will surely come upon me. What do you say to my taking possession of it?"
THE WORKS OF MENCIUS

3. Mencius replied, "If the people of Yen will be pleased with your taking possession of it, then do so.—Among the ancients there was one who acted on this principle, namely, King Woo. If the people of Yen will not be pleased with your taking possession of it, then do not do so.—Among the ancients there was one who acted on this principle, namely, King Wan.

4. "When, with all the strength of your country of ten thousand chariots, you attacked another country of ten thousand chariots, and the people brought baskets of rice and vessels of congee, to meet Your Majesty's host, was there any other reason for this but that they hoped to escape out of fire and water? If you make the water wore deep and the fire more fierce, they will just in like manner make another revolution."

第十一章

1. 齊人伐燕取之,諸侯將謀救燕,宣王曰,諸侯多謀伐寡人者,何以待之。孟子對曰,臣聞七十里, 爲政於天下者, 湯是也。未聞以千里畏人者也。 2. 書曰, 湯一征,自葛始, 天下信之,東面而征, 南面而征, 北狄怨, 日, 奚為後我, 民望之, 若大旱之望雲霓也, 歸市者不止, 耕者不變, 誅其君而弔其民, 若時雨降, 民大悅, 書曰, 奔我后, 后來其蘇。 3. 今燕虐其民, 王往而征之, 民以爲將拯己於水火之中也, 筍食羹漿, 以迎王師, 若殺其父兄, 係累其子弟, 毀其宗廟, 遷其重器, 如之何其可也。天下固畏齊之
Chap. xi. 1. The people of Ts'e, having smitten Yen, took possession of it, and upon this, the princes of the various states deliberated together, and resolved to deliver Yen from their power. The king Seuen said to Mencius, "The princes have formed many plans to attack me:—how shall I prepare myself for them?" Mencius replied, "I have heard of one who with seventy li exercised all the functions of government throughout the empire. That was T'ang. I have never heard of a prince with a thousand li standing in fear of others.

2. "It is said in the 'Book of History,' 'As soon as T'ang began his work of executing justice, he commenced with Ko. The whole empire had confidence in him. When he pursued his work in the east, the rude tribes on the west murmured. So did those on the north, when he was engaged in the south. Their cry was—"Why does he make us last?" Thus, the looking of the people to him was like the looking in a time of great drought to clouds and rainbows. The frequenters of the markets stopped not. The husbandmen made no change in their operations. While he punished their rulers, he consoled the people.
His progress was like the falling of opportune rain, and the people were delighted. It is said again in the ‘Book of History,’ ‘We have waited for our prince long; the prince’s coming will be our reviving!’

3. “Now the ruler of Yen was tyrannizing over his people, and Your Majesty went and punished him. The people supposed that you were going to deliver them out of the water and the fire, and brought baskets of rice and vessels of congee, to meet Your Majesty’s host. But you have slain their fathers and elder brothers and put their sons and younger brothers in chains. You have pulled down the ancestral temple of the state, and are removing to Tse its precious vessels. How can such a course be deemed proper? The rest of the empire is indeed jealously afraid of the strength of Tse, and now, when with a doubled territory you do not put in practice a benevolent government;—it is this which sets the arms of the empire in motion.

4. “If Your Majesty will make haste to issue an ordinance, restoring your captives, old and young, stopping the removal of the precious vessels, and saying that after consulting with the people of Yen, you will appoint them a ruler, and withdraw from the country;—in this way you may still be able to stop the
threatened attack.”

第十二章 1. 鄒與魯閑，穆公問曰，吾有司死者，三十三人而民莫之死也，誅之，則不可勝誅，不誅，則疾視其長上之死而不救，如之何則可也。 2. 孟子對曰，凶年饑歲，君之民，老弱轉乎溝壑，壯者散而之四方者，幾千人矣，而君之倉廩實，府庫充，有司莫以告，是上慢而殘下也。曾子曰，戒之戒之，出乎爾者，反乎爾者也，夫民今而後得反之也，君無尤焉。 3. 君行仁政，斯民親其上，死其長矣。

Chap. xh. 1. There had been a brush between Tsow and Loo, when the duke Muh asked Mencius, saying, “Of my officers there were killed thirty-three men, and none of the people would die in their defense. If I put them to death for their conduct, it is impossible to put such a multitude to death. If I do not put them to death, then there is the crime unpunished of their looking angrily on at the death of their officers, and not saving them. How is the exigency of the case to be met?”

2. Mencius replied, “In calamitous years and years of famine, the old and weak of your people, who have been found lying in the ditches and water channels, and the able-bodied who have been scattered about to the four quarters, have amounted to several thousands. All the while, your granaries, O prince, have been stored with grain, and your treasuries and arsenals have been full, and not one of your
officers has told you of the distress. Thus negligent have the superiors in your state been, and cruel to their inferiors. The philosopher Tsang said, ‘Beware, beware. What proceeds from you will return to you again.’ Now at length the people have returned their conduct to the officers. Do not you, O prince, blame them.

3. “If you will Put in practice a benevolent government, this people will love you and all above them, and will die for their officers.”

第十三章 1. 滕文公問曰:滕,小國也,間於齊楚,事齊乎,事楚乎。2. 孟子對曰,是謀非吾所能及也,無已,則有一焉,斂斯池也,築斯城也,與民守之,效死而民弗去,則是可為也。

Chap. XIII. 1. The duke Wan of T‘ang asked Mencius, saying, “T‘ang is a small kingdom, and lies between Ts‘e and Ts‘oo. Shall I serve Ts‘e? Or shall I serve Ts‘oo?”

2. Mencius replied, “This plan which you propose is beyond me. If you will have me counsel you, there is one thing I can suggest. Dig deeper your moats; build higher your walls; guard them along with your people. In case of attack, be prepared to die in your defense, and have the people so that they will not leave you;—this is a proper course.”

第十四章 1. 滕文公問曰:齊人將築薛,吾甚恐,如之何則可。
Chap xiv 1. The duke Wan of T'ang asked Mencius, saying, "The people of Ts'e are going to fortify See. The movement occasions me great alarm. What is the proper course for me to take in the case?"

2. Mencius replied, "Formerly, when King T'ae dwelt in Pin, the barbarians of the north were continually making incursions upon it. He therefore left it, went to the foot of Mount K'e, and there took up his residence. He did not take that situation, as having selected it. It was a matter of necessity with him.

3. "If you do good, among your descendants, in after generations, there shall be one who will attain to the imperial dignity. A prince lays the foundation of the inheritance, and hands down the beginning which he has made, doing what may be continued by his successors. As to the accomplishment of the great result, that is with Heaven. What is that T'se to you, O prince? Be strong to do good. That is all your business."
Chap. xv. 1. The duke Wan of T'ang asked Mencius, saying, "T'ang is a small kingdom. Though I do my utmost to serve those large kingdoms on either side of it, we cannot escape suffering from them. What course shall I take that we may do so?" Mencius replied, "Formerly, when King T'as dwelt in Pin, the barbarians of the north were constantly making incursions upon it. He served them with skins and silks, and still he suffered from them. He served them with dogs and horses, and still he suffered from them. He served them with pearls and gems, and still he suffered from them. Seeing this, he assembled the old men, and announced to them, saying, 'What the barbarians want is my territory. I have heard this,—that a ruler does not injure his people with that wherewith he nourishes them. My children, why should you be troubled about having no prince? I will leave this.' Accordingly, he left Pin, crossed the mountain Leang, built a town at the foot
of Mount K'e, and dwelt there. The people of Pin said, 'He is a benevolent man. We must not lose him.' Those who followed him looked like crowds hastening to market.

2. "On the other hand, some say, 'The kingdom is a thing to be kept from generation to generation. One individual cannot undertake to dispose of it in his own person. Let him be prepared to die for it. Let him not quit it.'

3. "I ask you, prince, to make your election between these two courses."

第十六章 1. 鲁平公将出, 笑人藏倉者, 他日君出, 則必命有司所之, 今乘與已駕矣, 有司未知所之, 敢請。公曰, 將見。孟子曰, 何哉, 君所為輕身, 以先於匹夫者, 以為賢乎。禮義由賢者出, 而孟子之後喪踵前喪, 君無見焉。公曰, 話。 2. 樂正子求見, 君矣為不見, 謂也。曰, 或告寡人曰, 孟子之後喪踵前喪, 是以不往見也。曰, 何哉, 君所謂踵者, 前以士, 後以大夫, 前以三鼎, 而後以五鼎與, 曰否, 謂棺椁衣衾之美也。曰非所謂踵也, 貧富不同也。 2. 樂正子見孟子曰, 謂君所為不見, 謂也。問君為不見也, 笑人有藏倉者沮君, 君是以不果來也。曰, 行或使之, 止或尼之, 行止非人所能也。吾之不遇魯侯, 天也, 戰氏之子, 焉能使子不遇哉。

Chap. xvi. 1. The duke P'ing of Loo was about to leave his palace, when his favorite, one Tsang Ts'ang, made a request to him, saying, "On other days, when you have gone
out, you have given instructions to the officers as to where you were going. But now the horses have been put to the carriage, and the officers do not yet know where you are going. I venture to ask.” The duke said, “I am going to see the scholar Mang.” “How is this!” said the other. “That you demean yourself, prince, in paying the honor of the first visit to a common man, is, I apprehend, because you think that he is a man of talents and virtue. By such men the rules of ceremonial proprieties and right are observed. But on the occasion of this Mang’s second mourning, his observances exceeded those of the former. Do not go to see him, my prince.” The duke said, “I will not.”

2. The officer Go-ching entered the court, and had an audience. He said, “Prince, why have you not gone to see Mang K’o?” The duke said, “One told me that on the occasion of the scholar Mang’s second mourning, his observances exceeded those of the former. It is on that account that I have not gone to see him.” “How is this!” answered Go-ching. “By what you call ‘exceeding,’ you mean, I suppose, that, on the first occasion, he used the rites appropriate to a scholar, and, on the second, those appropriate to a great officer; that he first used three tripods, and afterwards
five tripods." The duke said, "No; I refer to the greater excellence of the coffin, the shell, the graveclothes, and the shroud." Go-ching said, "That cannot be called 'exceeding.' That was the difference between being poor and being rich."

3. After this, Go-ching saw Mencius, and said to him, "I told the prince about you, and he was consequently coming to see you, when one of his favorites, named Tsang Ts'ang, stopped him, and therefore he did not come according to his purpose." Mencius said, "A man's advancement is effected, it may be, by others, and the stopping him is, it may be, from the efforts of others. But to advance a man or to stop his advance is really beyond the power of other men. My not finding in the prince of Loo a ruler who would confide in me, and put my counsels into practice, is from Heaven. How could that scion of the Tsang family cause me not to find the ruler that would suit me?"

BOOK II
KUNG-SUN CH'OW. PART I

第一章 1. 公孫丑問曰, 夫子當路於齊, 管仲晏子之功, 誰乎。 2. 孟子曰, 子誠齊人也, 知管仲晏子而已矣。
Kung-sun Ch'ow asked Mengius, saying: "Master, if you were to obtain the
ordering of the government in Ts‘e, could you promise yourself to accomplish anew such results as those realized by Kwan Chung and Gan?" 

2. Mencius said, "You are indeed a true man of Ts‘e. You know about Kwan Chung and Gan, and nothing more.

3. Someone asked Tsang Se, saying, ‘Sir, to which do you give the superiority, — to yourself or to Tsze-loo?’ Tsang Se looked uneasy, and said, ‘He was an object of veneration to my grandfather.’ ‘Then,’ pursued the other, ‘Do you give the superiority to yourself or to Kwan Chung?’ Tsang Se, flushed with anger and displeased, said, ‘How dare you compare me with Kwan Chung? Considering how entirely Kwan Chung possessed the confidence of his prince, how long he enjoyed the direction of the government of the kingdom, and how low; after all, was what he accomplished,—how is it that you liken me to him?’

4. “Thus,” concluded Mencius, “Tsang Se would not play Kwan Chung, and is it what you desire for me, that I should do so?”

5. Kung-sun Ch‘ow said, “Kwan Chung raised his prince to be the leader of all the other princes, and Gan made his prince illust-
rious, and do you still think it would not be enough for you to do what they did?"

6. Mencius answered, "To raise Ts'e to the imperial dignity would be as easy as it is to turn round the hand."

7. "So!" returned the other. "The perplexity of your disciple is hereby very much increased. There was King Wan, with all the virtue which belonged to him; and who did not die till he had reached a hundred years:—and still his influence had not penetrated throughout the empire. It required King Woo and the duke of Chow to continue his course, before that influence greatly prevailed. Now you say that the imperial dignity might be so easily obtained:—is King Wan then not a sufficient object for imitation?"

8. Mencius said, "How can King Wan be matched? From T'ang to Woo-ting there had appeared six or seven worthy and sage sovereigns. The empire had been attached to Yin for a long time, and this length of time made a change difficult. Woo-ting had all the princes coming to his court, and possessed the empire as if it had been a thing which he moved round in his palm. Then, Chow was removed from Woo-ting by no great interval of time. There were still remaining some of the ancient families and of the old manners,
of the influence also which had emanated from the earlier sovereigns, and of their good government. Moreover, there were the viscount of Wei and his second son, their Royal Highnesses Pe-kan and the viscount of Ke, and Kaou-kih, all, men of ability and virtue, who gave their joint assistance to Chow in his government. In consequence of these things, it took a long time for him to lose the empire. There was not a foot of ground which he did not possess. There was not one of all the people who was not his subject. So it was on his side, and King Wan made his beginning from a territory of only one hundred square li. On all these accounts, it was difficult for him immediately to attain the imperial dignity.

9. "The people of Ts'e have a saying—'A man may have wisdom and discernment, but that is not like embracing the favorable opportunity. A man may have instruments of husbandry, but that is not like waiting for the farming seasons.' The present time is one in which the imperial dignity may be easily attained.

10. "In the flourishing periods of the Hea, Yin, and Chow dynasties, the imperial domain did not exceed a thousand li, and Ts'e embraces so much territory. Cocks crow and dogs bark to each other, all the way to the four borders
of the state:—so Ts’e possesses the people. No change is needed for the enlarging of its territory: no change is needed for the collecting of a population. If its ruler will put in practice a benevolent government; no power will be able to prevent his becoming emperor.

11. "Moreover, never was there a time further removed than the present from the appearance of a true sovereign: never was there a time when the sufferings of the people from tyrannical government were more intense than the present. The hungry are easily supplied with food, and the thirsty are easily supplied with drink.

12. "Confucius said, 'The flowing progress of virtue is more rapid than the transmission of imperial orders by stages and couriers.'

13. "At the present time, in a country of ten thousand chariots, let benevolent government be put in practice, and the people will be delighted with it, as if they were relieved from hanging by the heels. With half the merit of the ancients, double their achievements is sure to be realized. It is only at this time that such could be the case.'"
THE WORKS OF MENCIUS

孟子

也，不負墻，不目逃，思以一毫挫於人，若撓之於市朝，不受於楊冑博，亦不受於萬乘之君，視刺萬乘之君，若刺竭夫，諸無國侯，惡聲至，必反之。5. 孟施舍之所養勇也，曰，視不勝猶勝也，量敵而後進，慮勝而後退，是畏三軍者也，舍豈能為必勝哉，能無懼而已矣。6. 孟施舍似曾子，北宮黝似子夏，夫二子之勇，未知其孰賢，然而孟施舍守約也。7. 昔者，曾子謂子襄曰，子好勇乎，吾嘗聞大勇於夫子矣，自反而不縮，雖楊冑博，吾不惴焉，自反而縮，雖千萬人，吾往矣。8. 孟施舍之守氣，又不如曾子之守約也。9. 曰，敢問夫子之不動心，與告子之不動心，可得聞與。告子曰，不得於言，勿求於心，不得於心，勿求於氣，不得於氣，勿求於氣可，不得於言，勿求於心不可，夫志，氣之帥也，氣，體之充也，夫志至焉，氣次焉，故曰，持其志，無暴其氣。10. 既曰，志至焉，氣次焉，又曰，持其志，無暴其氣者，何也。曰，志壹，則動氣，氣壹，則動志也，今夫顯者，趨者，是氣也，而反動其心。11. 敢問夫子惡乎長。曰，我知言，我善養吾浩然之氣。12. 敢問何謂浩然之氣。曰，難言也。13. 其為氣也，至大至剛，以直養而無害，則塞于天地之間。14. 其為氣也，配義與道，無是備也。15. 是集義所生者，非義襲而成之也，行有司恆於心，則安矣。16. 有事焉而勿正，心勿忘，勿助長也，無若宋人然。17. 何謂知言。曰，話し，知其所蔽，淫辭，知其所陷，邪辭，知其所離，遁
Chap. II. 1. Kung-sun Ch‘ow asked Mencius, saying, “Master, if you were to be appointed
a high noble and the prime minister of Ts'e, so as to be able to carry your principles into practice, though you should thereupon raise the prince to the headship of all the other princes, or even to the imperial dignity, it would not be to be wondered at.—In such a position would your mind be perturbed or not? Mencius replied, "No. At forty, I attained to an unperturbed mind."

2. Ch'ow said, "Since it is so with you, my master, you are far beyond Mang Pun." "The mere attainment," said Mencius, "is not difficult. The scholar Kaou had attained to an unperturbed mind, at an earlier period of life than I did."

3. Ch'ow asked, "Is there any way to an unperturbed mind?" The answer was, "Yes."

4. "Pi-h-kung Yew had this way of nourishing his valor:—He did not flinch from any strokes at his body. He did not turn his eyes aside from any thrusts at them. He considered that the slightest push from any one was the same as if he were beaten before the crowds in the market place, and that what he would not receive from a common man in his loose large garments of hair, neither should he receive from a prince of ten thousand chariots. He viewed stabbing a prince of ten thousand chariots just as stabbing a fellow dressed in-
cloth of hair. He feared not any of all the princes. A bad word addressed to him he always returned.

5. "Mang She-shay had this way of nourishing his valor:—He said, 'I look upon not conquering and conquering in the same way. To measure the enemy and then advance; to calculate the chances of victory and then engage:—this is to stand in awe of the opposing force. How can I make certain of conquering? I can only rise superior to all fear.'

6. "Mang She-shay resembled the philosopher Tsang. Pih-kung Yew resembled Tsze-hea. I do not know to the valor of which of the two the superiority should be ascribed, but yet Mang She-shay attended to what was of the greater importance.

7. "Formerly, the philosopher Tsang said to Tsze-seang, 'Do you love valor? I heard an account of great valor from the Master. It speaks thus:—'If, on self-examination, I find that I am not upright, shall I not be in fear even of a poor man in his loose garments of haircloth? If, on self-examination, I find that I am upright, I will go forward against thousands and tens of thousands.'"

8. "Yet what Mang She-shay maintained, being his merely physical energy, was after all
inferior to what the philosopher Tsang maintained, which was indeed of the most importance."

9. Kung-sun Ch'ow said, "May I venture to ask an explanation from you, Master, of how you maintain an unperturbed mind, and how the philosopher Kaou does the same?" Mencius answered, "Kaou says,—'What is not attained in words is not to be sought for in the mind; what produces dissatisfaction in the mind, is not to be helped by passion effort.' This last,—when there is unrest in the mind, not to seek for relief from passion effort, may be conceded. But not to seek in the mind for what is not attained in words cannot be conceded. The will is the leader of the passion nature. The passion nature pervades and animates the body. The will is first and chief, and the passion nature is subordinate to it. Therefore I say,—'Maintain firm the will, and do no violence to the passion nature.'"

10. Ch'ow observed, "Since you say,—'The will is chief and the passion nature is subordinate,' who do you also say,—'Maintain firm the will, and do no violence to the passion nature?'" Mencius replied, "When it is the will alone which is active, it moves the passion nature. When it is the passion nature alone which is active, it moves the will. For instance
now, in the case of a man falling or running;—that is from the passion nature, and yet it moves the mind.”


12. Ch’ow pursued, “I venture to ask what you mean by your vast, flowing passion nature!” The reply was, “It is difficult to describe it.

13. “This is the passion nature:—It is exceedingly great, and exceedingly strong. Being nourished by rectitude, and sustaining no injury, it fills up all between heaven and earth.

14. “This is the passion nature:—It is the mate and assistant of righteousness and reason. Without it, man is in a state of starvation.

15. “It is produced by the accumulation of righteous deeds; it is not to be obtained by incidental acts of righteousness. If the mind does not feel complacency in the conduct, the nature becomes starved. I therefore said, ‘Kaou has never understood righteousness, because he makes it something external.’

16. “There must be the constant practice of this righteousness, but without the object of thereby nourishing the passion nature.” Let not
the mind forget its work, but let there be no assisting the growth of that nature. Let us not be like the man of Sung. There was a man of Sung, who was grieved that his growing corn was not longer, and so he pulled it up. Having done this, he returned home, looking very stupid, and said to his people, 'I am tired to-day. I have been helping the corn to grow long.' His son ran to look at it, and found the corn all withered. There are few in the world who do not deal with their passion nature, as if they were assisting the corn to grow long. Some indeed consider it of no benefit to them, and let it alone:—they do not weed their corn. They who assist it to grow long, pull out their corn. What they do is not only of no benefit to the nature, but it also injures it.”

17. Kung-sun Ch‘ow further asked, “What do you mean by saying that you understand whatever words you hear?” Mencius replied, “When words are onesided, I know how the mind of the speaker is clouded over. When words are extravagant, I know how the mind is fallen and sunk. When words are all depraved, I know how the mind has departed from principle. When words are evasive, I know how the mind is at its wit’s end. These evils growing in the mind, do injury to government,
and, displayed in the government, are hurtful to the conduct of affairs. When a sage shall again arise, he will certainly follow my words."

18. On this Ch'ow observed, "Tsae Go and Tsze-kung were skillful in speaking. Yen New, the disciple Min, and Yen Yuen, while their words were good, were distinguished for their virtuous conduct. Confucius united the qualities of the disciples in himself, but still he said, 'In the matter of speeches, I am not competent.'—Then, Master, have you attained to be a sage?"

19. Mencius said, "Oh! what words are these? Formerly Tsze-kung asked Confucius, saying, 'Master, are you a sage?' Confucius answered him, 'A sage is what I cannot rise to. I learn without satiety, and teach without being tired.' Tsze-kung said, 'You learn without satiety:—that shows your wisdom. You teach without being tired:—that shows your benevolence. Benevolent and wise:—Master, you are a sage.' Now, since Confucius would not have himself regarded a sage, what words were those?"

20. Ch'ow said, "Formerly, I once heard this:—Tsze-hea, Tsze-yew, and Tsze-chang had each one member of the sage. Yen New, the disciple Min, and Yen Yuen, had all the
members, but in small proportions. I venture to ask,—With which of these are you pleased to rank yourself?"

21. Mencius replied, "Let us drop speaking about these, if you please."

22. Ch'ou then asked, "What do you say of Pih-e and E-yun?" Their ways were different from mine," said Mencius. "Not to serve a prince whom he did not esteem, nor command a people whom he did not approve; in a time of good government to take office, and on the occurrence of confusion to retire:—this was the way of Pih-e. To say—'Whom may I not serve? My serving him makes him my prince. What people may I not command? My commanding them makes them my people.' In a time of good government to take office, and when disorder prevailed, also to take office:—that was the way of E-yun. When it was proper to go into office, then to go into it; when it was proper to keep retired from office, then to keep retired from it; when it was proper to continue in it long, then to continue in it long; when it was proper to withdraw from it quickly, then to withdraw quickly:—that was the way of Confucius. These were all sages of antiquity, and I have not attained to do what they did. But what I wish to do is to learn to be like Confucius."
23. Ch’ow said, “Comparing Pih-e and E-yun with Confucius, are they to be placed in the same rank?” Mencius replied, “No. Since there were living men until now, there never was another Confucius.”

24. Ch’ow said, “Then, did they have any points of agreement with him?” The reply was,—“Yes. If they had been sovereigns over a hundred li of territory, they would, all of them, have brought all the princes to attend in their court, and have obtained the empire. And none of them, in order to obtain the empire, would have committed one act of unrighteousness, or put to death one innocent person. In those things they agreed with him.”

25. Ch’ow said, “I venture to ask wherein he differed from them.” Mencius replied, “Tsae Go, Tsze-kung, and Yew Jo had wisdom sufficient to know the sage. Even had they been ranking themselves low, they would not have demeaned themselves to flatter their favorite.

26. “Now, Tsae Go said, ‘According to my view of our Master, he is far superior to Yaou and Shun.’

27. “Tsze-kung said, ‘By viewing the ceremonial ordinances of a prince, we know the character of his government. By hearing
his music, we know the character of his virtue. From the distance of a hundred ages after, I can arrange, according to their merits, the kings of a hundred ages;—not one of them can escape me. From the birth of mankind till now, there has never been another like our Master.'

28. "Yew Jo said, 'Is it only among men that it is so? There is the K’e-lin among quadrupeds; the Feng-hwang among birds, the T’ae Mountain among mounds and ant hills, and rivers and seas among rain-pools. Though different in degree, they are the same in kind. So the sages among mankind are also the same in kind. But they stand out from their fellows, and rise above the level, and from the birth of mankind till now, there never has been one so complete as Confucius.'"

第三章 1. 孟子曰，以力假人者霸，霸必有大國，以德行仁者王，王不待大，湯以七十里，文王以百里。2. 以力服人者，非心服也，力不堅也，以德服人者，中心悅而誠服也。如七十子之服孔子也，誦詩，自西，自東，自南自北，無思不服，此之謂也。

Chap. III. 1. Mencius said, "He who, using force, makes a pretense to benevolence, is the leader of the princes. A leader of the princes requires a large kingdom. He who, using virtue, practices benevolence—is the sovereign
Benevolence brings glory to a prince, and the opposite
brings disgrace. For the princes of the present day to hate disgrace and yet live complacently doing what is not benevolent, is like hating moisture and yet living in a low situation.

2. "If a prince hates disgrace, the best course for him to pursue is to esteem virtue and honor virtuous scholars, giving the worthiест among them places of dignity, and the able offices of trust. When throughout his kingdom there is leisure and rest from external troubles, taking advantage of such a season, let him clearly digest the principles of his government with its legal sanctions, and then even great kingdoms will be constrained to stand in awe of him.

3. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'Before the heavens were dark with rain,
I gathered the bark from the roots of the mulberry trees,
And wove it closely to form the window and door of my rest;
Now, I thought, ye people below,
Perhaps ye will not dare to insult me.'
Confucius said, 'Did not he who made this ode understand the way of governing?' If a prince is able rightly to govern his kingdom, who will dare to insult him?

4. "But now the princes take advantage of
the time when throughout their kingdoms there is leisure and rest from external troubles, to abandon themselves to pleasure and indolent indifference;—they in fact seek for calamities for themselves.

5. "Calamity and happiness in all cases are men's own seeking.

6. "This is illustrated by what is said in the 'Book of Poetry.'—

'Be always studious to be in harmony with the ordinances of God.
So you will certainly get for yourself much happiness;'
and by the passage of the Ta e Kea, —'When Heaven sends down calamities, it is still possible to escape from them; when we occasion the calamities ourselves, it is not possible any longer to live.'"

第五章 1. 孟子曰: 尊貴使能, 俊傑在位, 則天下之士, 皆悅而願立於其朝矣。 2. 世, 歲而不征; 法而不遷, 則天下之商, 皆悅而願藏於其市矣。 3. 關, 變而不征, 則天下之旅, 皆悅而願出於其路矣。 4. 耕者, 助而不稅, 則天下之農, 皆悅而願耕於其野矣。 5. 廟, 無夫里之布, 則天下之民, 皆悅而願焉為之氓矣。 6. 信能行此五者, 則鄰國之民, 仰之若父母矣, 率其子弟, 攻其父母, 自生民以來, 未有能濟者也。如此則無敵於天下, 無敵於天下者, 天吏也, 然而不王者, 未之有也.
Chap. V. 1. Mencius said, "If a ruler give honor to men of talents and virtue and employ the able, so that offices shall all be filled by individuals of distinction and mark;—then all scholars of the empire will be pleased, and wish to stand in his court.

2. "If, in the market place of his capital, he levy a ground rent on the shops but do not tax the goods, or enforce the proper regulations without levying a ground rent;—then all the traders of the empire will be pleased, and wish to store their goods in his market place.

3. "If, at his frontier passes, there be an inspection of persons, but no taxes charged on goods or other articles, then all the travelers of the empire will be pleased, and wish to make their tours on his roads.

4. "If he require that the husbandmen give their mutual aid to cultivate the public field, and exact no other taxes from them;—then all the husbandmen of the empire will be pleased, and wish to plow his fields.

5. "If from the occupiers of the shops in his market place he do not exact the fine of the individual idler, or of the hamlet's quota of cloth, then all the people of the empire will be pleased, and wish to come and be his people."
6. "If a ruler can truly practice these five things, then the people in the neighboring kingdoms will look up to him as a parent. From the first birth of mankind till now, never has any one led children to attack their parent, and succeeded in his design. Thus, such a ruler will not have an enemy in all the empire, and he who has no enemy in the empire is the minister of Heaven. Never has there been a ruler in such a case who did not attain to the 'imperial dignity.'"
2. "The ancient kings had this commiserating mind, and they, as a matter of course, had likewise a commiserating government. When with a commiserating mind was practiced a commiserating government, the government of the empire was as easy a matter as the making anything go round in the palm.

3. "When I say that all men have a mind which cannot bear to see the sufferings of others, my meaning may be illustrated thus: —even nowadays, if men suddenly see a child about to fall into a well, they will without exception experience a feeling of alarm and distress. They will feel so, not as a ground on which they may gain the favor of the child's parents, nor as a ground on which they may seek the praise of their neighbors and friends, nor from a dislike to the reputations of having been unmoved by such a thing.

4. "From this case we may perceive that the feeling of commiseration is essential to man, that the feeling of shame and dislike is essential to man, that the feeling of modesty and complaisance is essential to man, and that the feeling of approving and disapproving is essential to man.

5. "The feeling of commiseration is the principle of benevolence. The feeling of shame and dislike is the principle of righteousness."
The feeling of modesty and complaisance is the principle of propriety. The feeling of approving and disapproving is the principle of knowledge.

6. “Men have these four principles just as they have their four limbs. When men, having these four principles, yet say of themselves that they cannot develop them, they play the thief with themselves, and he who says of his prince that he cannot develop them, plays the thief with his prince.

7. “Since all men have these four principles in themselves, let them know to give them all their development and completion, and the issue will be like that of fire which has begun to burn, or that of a spring which has begun to find vent. Let them have their complete development, and they will suffice to love and protect all within the four seas. Let them be denied that development, and they will not suffice for a man to serve his parents with.”
Chap VII. 1. Mencius said, "Is the arrow maker less benevolent than the maker of armor of defense? And yet, the arrow maker's only fear is lest men should not be hurt, and the armor maker's only fear is lest men should be hurt. So it is with the priest and the coffin maker. The choice of a profession, therefore, is a thing in which great caution is required.

2. "Confucius said, 'It is virtuous manners which constitute the excellence of a neighborhood. If a man, in selecting a residence, do not fix on one where such prevail, how can he be wise?' Now, benevolence is the most honorable dignity conferred by Heaven, and the quiet home in which man should dwell. Since no one can hinder us from being so, if yet we are not benevolent;—this is being not wise.

3 "From the want of benevolence and the want of wisdom will ensue the entire absence of propriety and righteousness;—he who is in such a case must be the servant of other men. To be the servant of men and yet ashamed of such servitude is like a bow maker's being ashamed to make bows, or an arrow maker's being ashamed to make arrows.

4. "If he be ashamed of his case, his best course is to practice benevolence

5 "The man who would be benevolent is
like the archer. The archer adjusts himself and then shoots. If he misses, he does not murmur against those who surpass himself. He simply turns round and seeks the cause of his failure in himself:"

第八章 1. 孟子曰，子路，人告之以有過，則喜。 2. 禹問善言，則拜。 3. 大舜有大焉，善與人同，舍己從人，樂取於人以為善。 4. 自耕稼陶漁，以至為帝，無非取於人者。 5. 取諸人以為善，是與人為善者也，故君子莫大乎與人為善。

Chap. VIII. 1. Mencius said, "When any one told Tsze-loo that he had a fault, he rejoiced.
2. "When Yu heard good words, he bowed to the speaker.
3. "The great Shun had a still greater delight in what was good. He regarded virtue as the common property of himself and others, giving up his own way to follow that of others, and delighting to learn from others to practice what was good.
4. "From the time when he plowed and sowed, exercised the potter's art, and was a fisherman, to the time when he became emperor, he was continually learning from others.
5. "To take example from others to practice virtue is to help them in the same practice. Therefore, there is no attribute of the superior man greater than his helping men to practice virtue.
1. Mencius said, "Pih-e would not serve a prince whom he did not approve, nor associate with a friend whom he did not esteem. He would not stand in a bad prince's court, nor speak with a bad man. To stand in a bad prince's court, or to speak with a bad man, would have been to him the same as to sit with his court robes and court cap amid mire and ashes. Pursuing the examination of his dislike to what was evil, we find that he thought it necessary, if he happened to be standing with a villager whose cap was not rightly adjusted, to leave him with a high air, as if he were going to be defiled. Therefore, although some of the princes made application to him with very proper messages, he would not receive their gifts.—He would not receive their gifts, counting it inconsistent with his
purity to go to them.

2. "Hwuy of Lew-hea was not ashamed to serve an impure prince, nor did he think it low to be an inferior officer. When advanced to employment, he did not conceal his virtue, but made it a point to carry out his principles. When neglected and left without office, he did not murmur. When straitened by poverty he did not grieve. Accordingly, he had the saying, 'You are you, and I am I. Although you stand by my side with breast and arms bare, or with your body naked, how can you defile me?' Therefore, self-possessed, he companied with men indifferently, at the same time not losing himself. When he wished to leave if pressed to remain in office, he would remain. — He would remain in office, when pressed to do so, not counting it required by his purity to go away."

3. Mencius said, "Pih-e was narrow-minded, and Hwuy of Lew-hea was wanting in self-respect. The superior man will not follow either narrow-mindedness or the want of self-respect."

BOOK II.

KUNG-SUN CH'OW. PART II
Chap. i. 1. Mencius said, “Opportunities of time vouchsafed by Heaven are not equal to advantages of situation afforded by the Earth, and advantages of situation afforded by the Earth are not equal to the union arising from the accord of Men.

2. “There is a city, with an inner wall of three li in circumference, and an outer wall of seven.—The enemy surround and attack it, but they are not able to take it. Now, to surround and attack it, there must have been vouchsafed to them by Heaven the opportunity of time, and in such case their not taking it is because opportunities of time vouchsafed by Heaven are not equal to advantages of situation afforded by the Earth.

3. “There is a city, whose walls are distinguished for their height, and whose moats are distinguished for their depth, where the arms of its defendants, offensive and
Chap II. 1. As Mencius was about to go to court to see the king, the king sent a person to him with this message, — "I was wishing to
defensive, are distinguished for their strength and sharpness, and the stores of rice and other grain are very large. Yet it is obliged to be given up and abandoned. This is because advantages of situation afforded by the Earth are not equal to the union arising from the accord of Men.

4. “In accordance with these principles it is said, ‘A people is bounded in, not by the limits of dikes and borders; a kingdom is secured, not by the strengths of mountains and rivers; the empire is overawed, not by the sharpness and strength of arms.’ He who finds the proper course has may to assist him. He who loses the proper course has few to assist him. When this,—the being assisted by few, —reaches its extreme point, his own relations revolt from the prince. When the being assisted by many reaches its highest point, the whole empire becomes obedient to the prince.

5. “When one to whom the whole empire is prepared to be obedient; attacks those from whom their own relations revolt, what must be the result? Therefore, the true ruler will prefer not to fight; but if he do fight, he must overcome.”
come and see you. But I have got a cold, and may not expose myself to the wind. In the morning I will hold my court. I do not know whether you will give me the opportunity of seeing you then." Mencius replied, "Unfortunately, I am unwell, and not able to go to the court."

2. Next day, he went out to pay a visit of condolence to some one of the Tung-kwoh family, when Kung-sun Ch'ow said to him, "Yesterday, you declined going to the court on the ground of being unwell, and to-day you are going to pay a visit of condolence. May this not be regarded as improper?" "Yesterday," said Mencius, "I was unwell; to-day, I am better,—why should I not pay this visit?"

3. In the meantime, the king sent a messenger to inquire about his sickness, and also a physician. Mang Chung replied to them, "Yesterday, when the king's order came, he was feeling a little unwell, and could not go to the court. To-day he was a little better, and hastened to go to court. I do not know whether he can have reached it by this time or not." Having said this, he sent several men to look for Mencius no the way, and say to him, "I beg that, before you return home, you will go to the court."

4. On this, Mencius felt himself compelled
to go to King Ch'ow's, and there stop the night. King said to him, "In the family, there is the relation of father and son; abroad, there is the relation of prince and minister. These are the two great relations among men. Between father and son the ruling principle is kindness. Between prince and minister the ruling principle is respect. I have seen the respect of the king to you, sir, but I have not seen in what way you show respect to him." Mencius replied, "Oh! what words are these? Among the people of Ts'e there is no one who speaks to the king about benevolence and righteousness. Are they thus silent because they do not think that benevolence and righteousness are admirable? No, but in their hearts they say, 'This man is not fit to be spoken with about benevolence and righteousness." Thus they manifest a disrespect than which there can be none greater. I do not dare to set forth before the king any but the ways of Yaou and Shun. There is therefore no man of Ts'e who respects the king so much as I do."

5. King said, "Not so. That was not what I meant. In the 'Book of Rites' it is said, 'When a father calls, the answer must be without a moment's hesitation. When the prince's order calls, the carriage must not be waited for.' You were certainly going to the
court, but when you heard the king’s order, then you did not carry your purpose out. This does seem as if it were not in accordance with that rule of propriety.”

6. Mencius answered him, “How can you give that meaning to my conduct? The philosopher Tsang said, ‘The wealth of Tsin and Ts’oo cannot be equaled. Let their rulers have their wealth: — I have my benevolence. Let them have their nobility: — I have my righteousness. Wherein should I be dissatisfied as inferior to them?’ Now shall we say that these sentiments are not right? Seeing that the philosopher Tsang spoke them, there is in them, I apprehend, a real principle.—In the empire there are three things universally acknowledged to be honorable. Nobility is one of them; age is one of them; virtue is one of them. In courts, nobility holds the first place of the three; in villages, age holds the first place; and for helping one’s generation and presiding over the people, the other two are not equal to virtue. How can the possession of only one of these be presumed on to despise one who possesses the other two?

7 “Therefore a prince who is to accomplish great deeds will certainly have ministers whom he does not call to go to him. When he wishes to consult with them, he goes to them.
The prince who does not honor the virtuous, and delight in their ways of doing, to this extent, is not worth having to do with.

8. "Accordingly, there was the behavior of T'ang to E-yun:—he first learned of him, and then employed him as his minister; and so without difficulty he became emperor. There was the behavior of the duke Hwan to Kwan Chung:—he first learned of him, and then employed him as his minister; and so without difficulty he became chief of all the princes.

9. "Now throughout the empire, the territories of the princes are of equal extent, and in their achievements they are on a level. Not one of them is able to exceed the others. This is from no other reason but that they love to make ministers of those whom they teach, and do not love to make ministers of those by whom they might be taught."

10. "So did T'ang behave to E-yun, and the duke Hwan to Kwan Chung, that they would not venture to call them to go to them. If Kwan Chung might not be called to him by his prince, how much less may he be called, who would not play the part of Kwan Chung!"

第三章 1. 陳臻問曰：前日於齊，王負兼金一百而不受，於宋負七十鎰而受，於薛負五十鎰而受，前日之不受是，則今日之受非也，今日之受是，則前日之不受非也，夫子必居一於此矣。 2. 孟子曰，皆是也。 3. 當在宋也，子將有遠
Chap. III. 1. Ch'in Tsin asked Mencius, saying, "Formerly, when you were in Tse, the king sent you a present of 2,400 tael of fine silver, and you refused to accept it. When you were in Sung, 1,680 tael were sent to you, which you accepted; and when you were in See, 1,200 tael were sent, which you likewise accepted. If your declining to accept the gift in the first case was right, your accepting it in the latter cases was wrong. If your accepting it in the latter cases was right, your declining to do so in the first case was wrong. You must accept, master, one of these alternatives.

2. Mencius said, "I did right in all the cases.

3. "When I was in Sung, I was about to take a long journey. Travelers must be provided with what is necessary for their expenses. The prince's message was—'A present against traveling expenses.' Why should I have declined the gift?

4. "When I was in See, I was apprehensive for my safety, and taking measures for my protection. The message was, 'I have heard that you are taking measures to protect your-
self, and send this to help you in procuring arms.' Why should I have declined the gift?

5. "But when I was in Ts’e, I had no occasion for money. To send a man a gift when he has no occasion for it is to bribe him. How is it possible that a superior man should be taken with a bribe?"

第四章 1. 孟子之平陸，謂其大夫曰，子之侍戟之士，一日而三失伍，則去之否乎，曰不待三。2. 然則子之失伍也，亦多矣。凶年饑歲，子之民，老羸轉於溝壑，壯者散而之四方者，幾千人矣。曰，此非卻心之所得為也。3. 曰，今有受人之牛羊，而為之牧之者，則必為之求牧與芻矣，求牧與芻而不得，則反詰其人乎，抑亦立而視其死與。曰，此則卻心之罪也。4. 他日，見於王曰，王之為都者，臣知五人焉，知其罪者，惟孔卻心，為王誚之。王曰，此則寡人之罪也。

Chap. iv 1 Mencius having gone to P’ing-luh, addressed the governor of it, saying, "If one of your spearmen should lose his place in the ranks three times in one day, would you, sir, put him to death or not?" "I would not wait for three times to do so," was the reply.

2. Mencius said, "Well then, you, sir, have likewise lost your place in the ranks many times. In bad calamitous years, and years of famine, the old and feeble of your people, who have been found lying in the ditches and water channels, and the able-bodied, who have been scattered about to the four quarters, have amounted to
several thousands." The governor replied, "That is a state of things in which it does not belong to me Keu-sin to act."

3. "Here," said Mencius, "is a man who receives charge of the cattle and sheep of another, and undertakes to feed them for him;—of course he must search for pasture ground and grass for them. If, after searching for those, he cannot find them, will he return his charge to the owner? or will he stand by and see them die?" "Herein," said the officer, "I am guilty."

4. Another day, Mencius had an audience of the king, and said to him, "Of the governors of Your Majesty's cities I am acquainted with five, but the only one of them who knows his faults is K'ung Keu-sin." He then repeated the conversation to the king, who said, "In this matter, I am the guilty one."

孟子
THE WORKS OF MENCIUS

第五章 1. 孟子謂咄咄日，子之辭靈丘，而請士師，似也，其可以言也，今既數月矣，未可以言與。2. 咄咄詆於王而不用，致為臣而去。3. 齊人曰，所以為咄咄則善矣，所以自為，則吾不知也。4. 公都子以告。5. 曰，吾聞之也，有官守者，不得其職則去，有言責者，不得其言則去，我無官守，我無言責，則吾進退，豈不緜緜然有餘裕哉。

Chap. v. 1. Mencius said to Ch'e Wa, "There seemed to be reason in your declining the governorship of Ling-k'ew, and requesting..."
to be appointed chief criminal judge, because the latter office would afford you the opportunity of speaking your views. Now several months have elapsed, and have you yet found nothing of which you might speak?"

2. *On this*, Ch‘e Wa remonstrated on some matter with the king, and, his counsel not being taken, resigned his office, and went away.

3. The people of Ts‘e said, "In the course which he marked out for Ch‘e Wa, he did well, but we do not know as to the course which he pursues for himself."

4. His disciple, Kung-too told him these remarks.

5. *Mencius* said, "I have heard that he who is in charge of an office, when he is prevented from fulfilling its duties, ought to take his departure, and that he on whom is the responsibility of giving his opinion, when he finds his words unattended to, ought to do the same. But I am in charge of no office; on me devolves no duty of speaking out my opinion:—may not I therefore act freely and without any constraint, either in going forward or in retiring?"

第六章 1. 孟子為卿於齊,出弔於滕,王使蓋大夫,王驍為輔行,王驍朝暮見,反齊滕之路,未嘗與之言行事也。2. 公孫丑曰,齊卿之位,不為小矣,齊滕之路,不為近矣,反之,而未嘗與言行事何也。曰,夫既或治之,予何言哉。
Chap. vi. 1. Mencius, occupying the position of a high dignitary in Ts‘e, went on a mission of condolence to T‘ang. The king also sent Wang Hwan, the governor of Ka, as assistant commissioner. Wang Hwan, morning and evening, waited upon Mencius, who, during all the way to T‘ang and back, never spoke to him about the business of their mission.

2. Kung-sun Ch‘ow said to Mencius, “The position of a high dignitary of Ts‘e is not a small one; the road from Ts‘e to T‘ang is not short. How was it that during all the way there and back, you never spoke to Hwan about the matters of your mission?” Mencius replied, “There were the proper officers who attended to them. What occasion had I to speak to him about them?”

第七章 1. 孟子自齊葬於魯, 反於齊, 止於嬴, 充虞請曰, 前日, 不知虞之不肖, 使虞敦匠事, 慶, 虞不敢請, 今願問有請也, 木若以美然。2. 曰, 古者, 槐梓無度, 中古槐七寸, 悖稱之, 自天子達於庶人, 非直爲觀美也, 然後盡於人心。3. 不得, 不可以爲悅, 無財, 不可以爲悦, 得之有財, 古之人皆用之, 吾何爲獨不然。4. 且比化者, 無使土親疎, 於人心獨無悖乎。5. 吾聞之也, 君子不以天下僉其親。

Chap. vii. 1. Mencius went from Ts‘e to Loo to bury his mother. On his return to Ts‘e, he stopped at Ying, where Ch‘ung Yu begged to put a question to him, and said, “Formerly, in
ignorance of my incompetency, you employed me to superintend the making of the coffin. As you were then pressed by the urgency of the business, I did not venture to put any question to you. Now, however, I wish to take the liberty to submit the matter. The wood of the coffin, it appeared to me, was too good."

2. *Mencius* replied, "Anciently, there was no rule for the size of either the inner or the outer coffin. In middle antiquity, the inner coffin was made seven inches thick, and the outer one the same. This was done by all, from the emperor to the common people, and not simply for the beauty of the appearance, but because they thus satisfied the natural feelings of their hearts.

3. "If prevented by statutory regulations from making their coffins in this way, men cannot have the feeling of pleasure. If they have not the money to make them, in this way, they cannot have the feeling of pleasure. When they were not prevented, and had the money, the ancients all used this style. Why should I alone not do so?

4. "And moreover, is there no satisfaction to the natural feelings of a man, in preventing the earth from getting near to the bodies of his dead?

5. "I have heard that the superior man.
will not for all the world be niggardly to his parents."

第八章 1. 汶同以其私問曰, 燕可伐與。孟子曰, 可, 子售不得與人燕, 子之不得受燕於子售, 有仕於此, 而子悅之, 不告於王, 而私與之吾子之祿爵, 夫士也, 亦無王命, 而私受之於子, 則可乎, 何以異於是。 2. 齊人伐燕, 或問曰, 勸齊伐燕。有讌。曰, 未也, 汶同問燕可伐與, 吾應之曰, 可, 彼然而伐之也, 彼如曰, 務可以伐之, 則將應之曰, 為天吏, 則可以伐之, 今有殺人者, 或問之曰, 人可殺與, 則將應之曰, 可, 彼如曰, 勿可以殺之, 則將應之曰, 為士師, 則可以殺之, 今以燕伐燕, 何爲勸之哉。

Chap. - VIII. 1. Shin T'ung, on his own impulse, asked Mencius, saying, "May Yen be smitten?" Mencius replied, "It may. Tsze-k'wae had no right to give Yen to another man, and Tsze-che had no right to receive Yén from Tsze-k'wae. Suppose there were an officer here, with whom you, sir, were pleased, and that, without informing the king, you were privately to give to him your salary and rank; and suppose that this officer, also without the king's orders, were privately to receive them from you:—would such a transaction be allowable? And where is the difference between the case of Yen and this?"

2. The people of Ts'e smote Yen. Some one asked Mencius, saying, "Is it really the case that you advised Ts'e to smite Yen?" He
replied, "No. Shin T'ung asked me whether Yen might be smitten, and I answered him, 'It may.' They accordingly went and smote it. If he had asked me—'Who may smite it?' I would have answered him, 'He who is the minister of Heaven may smite it.' Suppose the case of a murderer, and that one asks me—'May this man be put to death?' I will answer him—'He may,' If he ask me—'Who may put him to death?' I will answer him,—'The chief criminal judge may put him to death.' But now with one Yen to smite another Yen:—how should I have advised this?"

第IX章 1. 燕人畔，王曰，吾甚恥於孟子。2. 陳賈曰，王無恥焉，王自以爲與周公，孰仁且智。王曰，惡，是何言也。曰，周公使管叔監殷，管叔以殷畔，知而使之，是不仁也，不知而使之，是不智也，仁智，周公未之盡也，而况於王乎，賈請見而解之。3. 見孟子，問曰，周公何人也。曰，古聖人也。曰，使管叔監殷，管叔以殷畔也，有諸。曰，然。曰，周公知其將畔而使之與。曰，不知也。然則聖人且有過與。曰，周公，失也，管叔，兄也，周公之過，不亦宜乎。4. 且古之君子，遇則改之，今之君子，遇則順之。古之君子，其過也，如日月之食，民皆見之，及其更也。民皆仰之，今之君子，豈徒順之，又從為之辭。

Chap. IX. 1. The people of Yen having rebelled, the king of T'se said, "I feel very much ashamed when I think of Mencius.'

2. Ch'in Kea said to him, "Let not Your Majesty be grieved. Whether does Your
Majesty consider yourself or Chow-kung the more benevolent and wise?” The king replied, “Oh! what words are those?” “The duke of Chow,” said Kea, “appointed Kwan-shuh to oversee the heir of Yin, but Kwan-shuh with the power of the Yin state rebelled. If knowing that this would happen he appointed Kwan-shuh, he was deficient in benevolence. If he appointed him, not knowing that it would happen, he was deficient in knowledge. If the duke of Chow was not completely benevolent and wise, how much less can Your Majesty be expected to be so! I beg to go and see Mencius, and relieve Your Majesty from that feeling.”

3. Ch’in Kea accordingly saw Mencius, and asked him, saying, “What kind of man was the duke of Chow?” An ancient sage,” was the reply. “Is it the fact that he appointed Kwan-shuh to oversee the heir of Yin, and that Kwan-shuh with the state of Yin rebelled?” “It is.” “Did the duke of Chow know that he would rebel, and purposely appoint him to that office?” Mencius said, “He did not know.” “Then, though a sage, he still fell into error?” “The duke of Chow,” answered Mencius, “was the younger brother. Kwan-shuh was his elder brother. Was not the error of Chow-kung in accordance with what is right?”
4. “Moreover, when the superior men of old had errors, they reformed them. The superior men of the present time, when they have errors, persist in them. The errors of the superior men of old were like eclipses of the sun and moon. All the people witnessed them, and when they had reformed them, all the people looked up to them with their former admiration. But do the superior men of the present day only persist in their errors? They go on to raise apologizing discussions about them likewise.”

Chap. x. 1. Mencius gave up his office, and made arrangements for returning to his native state.
2. The king came to visit him, and said, "Formerly, I wished to see you, but in vain. Then, I got the opportunity of being by your side, and all my court joyed exceedingly along with me. Now again you abandon me, and are returning home. I do not know if hereafter I may expect to have another opportunity of seeing you." Mencius replied, "I dare not request permission to visit you at any particular time, but, indeed, it is what I desire."

3. Another day, the king said to the officer She, "I wish to give Mencius a house, somewhere in the middle of the kingdom, and to support his disciples with an allowance of 10,000 chung, that all the officers and the people may have such an example to reverence and imitate. Had you not better tell him this for me?"

4. She took advantage to convey this message by means of the disciple Ch'in, who reported his words to Mencius.

5. Mencius said, "Yes; but how should the officer She know that the thing may not be? Suppose that I wanted to be rich, having formerly declined 100,000 chung, would my now accepting 10,000 be the conduct of one desiring riches?

6. "Ke-sun said, 'A strange man was Tsze-shuh E. He pushed himself into the service of government. His prince declining to employ
him, he had to retire indeed, but he again schemed that his son or younger brother should be made a high officer. Who, indeed, is there of men but wishes for riches and honor? But he only, among the seekers of these, tried to monopolize the conspicuous mound.

7 "Of old time, the market dealers exchanged the articles which they had for others which they had not, and simply had certain officers to keep order among them. It happened that there was a mean fellow, who made it a point to look out for a conspicuous mound, and get up upon it. Thence he looked right and left, to catch in his net the whole gain of the market. The people all thought his conduct mean, and therefore they proceeded to lay a tax upon his wares. The taxing of traders took its rise from this mean fellow."

Chap. xi. 1. Mencius, having taken his leave of Ts'ie, was passing the night in Chow.

2. A person who wished to detain him on behalf of the king, came and sat down, and
began to speak to him. Mencius gave him no answer, but leaned upon his stool and slept.

3. The stranger was displeased, and said, "I passed the night in careful vigil, before I would venture to speak to you, and you, master, sleep and do not listen to me. Allow me to request that I may not again presume to see you." Mencius replied, "Sit down, and I will explain the case clearly to you. Formerly, if the duke Muh had not kept a person by the side of Tsze-sze, he could not have induced Tsze-sze to remain with him. If See Lew and Shin Ts'ieang had not had a remembrancer by the side of the duke Muh, he would not have been able to make them feel at home and remain with him.

4. "You anxiously form plans with reference to me, but you do not treat me as Tsze-sze was treated. Is it you, sir, who cut me? Or is it I, who cut you?"
Chap. xii. 1. When Mencius had left Ts'e, Yin Sze spoke about him to others, saying, "If he did not know that the king could not be made a T'ang or a Woo, that showed his want of intelligence. If he knew that he could not be made such, and came notwithstanding, that shows he was seeking his own benefit. He came a thousand li to wait on the king; because he did not find in him a ruler to suit him, he took his leave, but how dilatory and lingering was his departure, stopping three nights before he quit Chow! I am dissatisfied on account of this."

2. The disciple Kaou informed Mencius of these remarks.

3. Mencius said, "How should Yin Sze know me! When I came a thousand li to wait on the king, it was what I desired to do. When I went away because I did not find in him a ruler to suit me, was that what I desired to do? I felt myself constrained to do it.

4. "When I stopped three nights before I quit Chow, in my own mind I still considered my departure speedy. I was hoping that the king might change. If the king had changed, he would certainly have recalled me."
5. "When I quit Chow, and the king had not sent after me, then, and only till then, was my mind resolutely bent on returning to Tsow. But, notwithstanding that, how can it be said that I give up the king? The king, after all, is one who may be made to do what is good. If he were to use me, would it be for the happiness of the people of Ts'e only? It would be for the happiness of the people of the whole empire. I am hoping that the king will change. I am daily hoping for this.

6. "Am I like one of your little-minded people? They will remonstrate with their prince, and on their remonstrance not being accepted, they get angry; and, with their passion displayed in their countenance, they take their leave, and travel with all their strength for a whole day, before they will stop for the night."

7. When Yin Sze heard this explanation, he said, "I am indeed a small man."

Chap. xiii. 1. When Mencius left Ts'e, Ch'ung Yu questioned him upon the way, saying, "Master, you look like one who carries an air of dissatisfaction in his countenance. But
formerly I heard you say—'The superior man does not murmur against Heaven, nor grudge against men.'"

2. *Mencius* said, "That was one time, and this is another.

3. "It is a rule that a true imperial sovereign should arise in the course of five hundred years, and that during that time there should be men illustrious in their generation.

4. "From the commencement of the Chow dynasty till now, more than 700 years have elapsed. Judging numerically, the date is past. Examining the character of the present time, we might expect the rise of such individuals in it.

5. "But Heaven does not yet wish that the empire should enjoy tranquillity and good order. If it wished this, who is there besides me to bring it about? How should I be otherwise than dissatisfied?"

Chap. XIV. 1. When Mencius left Ts‘e, he dwelt in Hew. There Kung-sun Ch‘ow asked him, saying, "Was it the way of the ancient to hold office without receiving salary?"

2. *Mencius replied*, "No; when I first saw the king in Ts‘ung, it was my intention, on
retiring from the interview, to go away. Because I did not wish to change this intention, I declined to receive any salary.

3. “Immediately after came orders for the collection of troops when it would have been improper for me to beg permission to leave. But to remain so long in Ts‘e was not my purpose.”

BOOK III

T‘ANG WAN KUNG. PART I

Chap. I. 1. When the duke Wan of T‘ang was crown prince, having to go to Ts‘oo, he went by way of Sung, and visited Mencius.

2. Mencius discoursed to him how the nature of man is good, and, when speaking, always made laudatory reference to Yaou and Shun.

3. When the crown prince was returning
from Ts‘oo, he again visited Mencius. Mencius said to him, "Prince, do you doubt my words? The path is one, and only one.

4. "Shing" Kan said to the duke of Ts‘e, 'They were men. I am a man. Why should I stand in awe of them?' Yen Yuen said, 'What kind of man was Shun? What kind of man am I? He who exerts himself will also become such as he was.' Kung-ming E said, 'King Wan is my teacher. How should the duke of Chow deceive me by those words?"

5. "Now, T‘ang, taking its length with its breadth, will amount, I suppose, to fifty li. It is small, but still sufficient to make a good kingdom. It is said in the 'Book of History,' 'If medicine do not raise a commotion in the patient, his disease will not be cured by it.'"

第二章 1. 革定公薨, 世子謂然友曰, 昔者孟子嘗與吾言於宋, 於心終不忘, 今也不幸, 至於大故, 吾欲使子問於孟子, 然後行事。2. 然友之鄙問於孟子, 孟子曰, 不亦善乎, 親喪固所自盡也, 曾子曰, 生事之以禮, 死葬之以禮, 祭之以禮, 可謂孝矣, 嘗有之禮, 吾未之學也, 雖然, 吾嘗聞之矣, 三年之喪, 齊疏之服, 餔粥之食, 自天子達於庶人, 三代共之。3. 然友反命, 定為三年之喪, 父兄百官皆不欲, 曰, 吾宗國魯先君莫之行, 吾先君, 亦莫之行也, 至於子之身而反之, 不可, 且志曰, 親祭從先祖, 曰, 吾有所受之也。4. 謂然友曰, 吾他日未嘗學問, 好駟馬試劍, 今也, 父兄百官, 不我見也, 恐其不能盡於大事, 子為我問孟子, 然友復之鄙, 問孟
Chap. II. 1. When the duke Ting of T'ang died, the crown prince said to Yen Yew, "Formerly, Mencius spoke with me in Sung, and in my mind I have never forgotten his words. Now, alas! this great duty to my father devolves upon me; I wish to send you to ask the advice of Mencius, and then to proceed to its various services."

2. Yen Yew accordingly proceeded to Tsow, and consulted Mencius. Mencius said, "Is this not good? In discharging the funeral duties to parents, men indeed feel constrained to do their utmost. The philosopher Tsang said, 'When parents are alive, they should be served according to propriety; when they are dead, they should be buried according to propriety; and they should be sacrificed to according to propriety:—this may be called filial piety.' The ceremonies to be observed by the princes I have not learned, but I have heard these points:—that the three years' mourning, the garment of coarse colth with its lower edge even, and the eating of congee, were equally prescribed by three dynas-
ties, and binding on all, from the emperor to the mass of the people."

3. Yen Yew reported the execution of his commission, and the prince determined that the three years' mourning should be observed. His aged relatives, and the body of the officers, did not wish that it should be so, and said, "The former princes of Loo, that kingdom which we honor, have, none of them, observed this practice, neither have any of our own former princes observed it. For you to act contrary to their example is not proper. Moreover, the History says,—'In the observances of mourning and sacrifice, ancestors are to be followed,' meaning that they received those things from a proper source to hand them down."

4. The prince said again to Yen Yew, "Hitherto, I have not given myself to the pursuit of learning, but have found my pleasure in horsemanship and sword exercise and now I don't come up to the wishes of my aged relatives and the officers. I am afraid I may not be able to discharge my duty in the great business that I have entered on, do you again consult Mencius for me." On this, Yen Yew went again to Tsow, and consulted Mencius. Mencius said, "It is so, but he may not seek a remedy in others but only in himself. Confucius said, 'When a prince dies, his successor intrusts
the administration to the prime minister. He sips the congee. His face is of a deep black. He approaches the place of mourning, and weeps. Of all the officers and inferior ministers there is not one who will presume not to join in the lamentation, he setting them this example. What the superior loves, his inferiors will be found to love exceedingly. The relation between superiors and inferiors is like that between the wind and grass. The grass must bend, when the wind blows upon it. The business depends on the prince.”

5. Yen Yew returned with this answer to his commission, and the prince said, “It is so. The matter does indeed depend on me.” So for five months he dwelt in the shed, without issuing an order or a caution. All the officers and his relatives said, “He may be said to understand the ceremonies.” When the time of interment arrived, from all quarters of the state, they came to witness it. Those who had come from other states to condole with him, were greatly pleased with the deep dejection of his countenance and the mournfulness of his wailing and weeping.

Chap. Ⅲ. 1. The duke Wan of T'ang asked
Mencius about the proper way of governing a kingdom.

2. Mencius said, "The business of the people may not be remissly attended to. It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'In the daylight, go and gather the grass
And at night twist your ropes;
Then get up quickly on the roofs;—
Soon must we begin sowing again the grain.'

3. "The way of the people is this.—If they have a certain livelihood, they will have a fixed heart. If they have not a certain livelihood, they have not a fixed heart. And if they have not a fixed heart, there is nothing which they will not do in the way of self—abandonment, of moral deflection of depravity, and of wild license. When they have thus been involved in crime, to follow them up and punish them:—this is to entrap the people. How can such a thing as entrapping the people be done under the rule of a benevolent man?

4. "Therefore, a ruler who is endowed with talents and virtue will be gravely complaisant and economical showing a respectful politeness to his ministers, and taking from the people only in accordance with regulated limits.

5. "Yang Hoo said, 'He who seeks to be
rich will not be benevolent. He who wishes to be benevolent will not be rich,'

6. "The sovereign of the Hea dynasty enacted the fifty mow allotment, and the payment of a tax. The founder of the Yin enacted the seventy mow allotment, and the system of mutual aid. The founder of the Chow enacted the hundred mow allotment, and the share system. In reality, what was paid in all these was a tithe. The share system means mutual division. The aid system means mutual dependence.

7. "Lung said, 'For regulating the lands, there is no better system than that of mutual aid, and none which is not better than that of taxing. By the tax system, the regular amount was fixed by taking the average of several years. In good years, when the grain lies about in abundance, much might be taken without its being oppressive, and the actual exaction would be small. But in bad years, the produce being not sufficient to repay the manuring of the fields, this system still requires the taking of the full amount. When the parent of the people causes the people to wear looks of distress, and, after the whole year's toil, yet not to be able to nourish their parents, so that they proceed to borrowing to increase their means, till the old people and children
are found lying in the ditches and water channels:—where, in such a case, is his parental relation to the people?

8. "As to the system of hereditary salaries, that is already observed in T‘ang.

9. "It is said in the ‘Book of Poetry,’

‘May the rain come down on our public field,

And then upon our private fields!’

It is only in the system of mutual aid that there is a public field, and from this passage we perceive that even in the Chow dynasty this system has been recognized.

10. "Establish ts‘eang, seu, heo, and heaou,—all those educational institutions,—for the instruction of the people. The name ts‘eang indicates nourishing as its object; heaou indicates teaching; and seu indicates archery. By the Hea dynasty, the name heaou was used; by the Yin, that of seu; and by the Chow, that of ts‘eang. As to the heo, they belonged to the three dynasties, and by that name. The object of them all is to illustrate the human relations. When those are thus illustrated by superiors, kindly feeling will prevail among the inferior people below.

11. "Should a real sovereign arise, he will certainly come and take an example from you; and thus you will be the teacher of the true sovereign."
12. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'Although Chow was an old country,
It received a new destiny.'

That is said with reference to King Wan. Do you practice those things with vigor and you also will by them make new your kingdom."

13. The duke afterwards sent Peih Chen to consult Mencius about the nine-squares system of dividing the land. Mencius said to him, "Since your prince, wishing to put in practice a benevolent government, has made choice of you and put you into this employment, you must exert yourself to the utmost. Now, the first thing towards a benevolent government must be to lay down the boundaries. If the boundaries be not defined correctly, the division of the land into squares will not be equal, and the produce available for salaries will not be evenly distributed. On this account, oppressive rulers and impure ministers are sure to neglect this defining of the boundaries. When the boundaries have been defined correctly, the division of the fields and the regulation of allowances may be determined by you, sitting at your ease.

14. "Although the territory of T'ang is narrow and small, yet there must be in it men of a superior grade, and there must be in it countrymen. If there were not men of a superior grade, there would be none to rule
the countrymen. If there were not countrymen, there would be none to support the men of superior grade.

15. "I would ask you, in the remoter districts, observing the nine-squares division, to reserve one division to be cultivated on the system of mutual aid, and in the more central parts of the kingdom, to make the people pay for themselves a tenth part of their produce.

16. "From the highest officers down to the lowest, each one must have his holy field, consisting of fifty mow.

17. "Let the supernumerary males have their twenty-five mow.

18. "On occasions of death, or removal from one dwelling to another, there will be no quitting the district. In the fields of a district, those who belong to the same nine squares render all friendly offices to one another in their going out and coming in, aid one another in keeping watch and ward, and sustain one another in sickness. Thus the people are brought to live in affection and harmony.

19. "A square li covers nine squares of land, which nine squares contain nine hundred mow. The central square is the public field, and eight families, each having its private hundred mow, cultivate in common the public field. And not till public work is finished,
may they presume to attend to their private affairs. This is the way by which the countrymen are distinguished from those of a superior grade.

20. "Those are the great outlines of the system. Happily to modify and adapt it depends on the prince and you."

第四章 1. 有為神農之言者, 許行, 自楚之滕, 隨門而告文公曰, 遠方之人, 聞君行仁政, 願受一麾而為氓。文公與之處。其徒數十人, 皆衣褐, 衙屬, 織席, 以爲食。 2. 陳良之徒陳相, 以其弟辛, 負耒耜, 而自宋之滕, 曰, 聞君行聖人之政, 是亦聖人也, 願爲聖人氓。 3. 陳相見許行而大悅, 盡棄其學而學焉, 陳相見孟子, 謂許行之言, 曰, 職君, 則誠賢君也, 雖然, 未聞道也, 賢者, 與民並耕而食, 竟殲而治。今也, 隕有倉廪府庫, 則是厲民而以自養也, 悪得賢。 4. 孟子曰, 許子必種粟而後食乎, 曰, 然, 許子必織布而後衣乎, 曰, 否, 許子衣褐, 曰, 許子冠, 曰, 冠, 曰, 帽冠, 曰, 冠素, 曰, 自織之與, 曰, 否, 以粟易之。曰, 許子奚爲不自織, 曰, 害於耕, 曰, 許子以釜餈饕, 以鐵耕乎, 曰, 然, 自爲之與, 曰, 否, 以粟易之。 5. 以粟易械器者, 不爲厲陶治, 陶治亦以其械器易粟者, 亦爲厉農夫, 且許子何不爲陶治, 皆皆取諸其宮中而用之, 何爲紛紛然, 以百工交易, 何許子之不懼煩, 曰, 百工之事, 固不可耕且爲也。 6. 然則治天下, 獨可耕且兼爲從, 有大入之事, 有小入之事, 且一人之身, 而百工之所爲備。如必自爲而後用之, 是率天下而路也, 故曰, 或勞心, 或勞力, 勞心者, 治人, 勞力者, 治於人。治於人者, 食人。治人者食於人, 天下之通義也。 7. 當堯之時, 天下猶未平, 洪水橫流, 汜
溢於天下，草木暢茂，禽獸繁殖，五穀不登，禽獸傷人，狐兔興。

鳥之跡之道，交於中國，堯獨憂之，舉舜而敷治焉，舜使益掌火，益烈山澤而焚之，禽獸逃匿，禹疏九河，汕濟濁而注諸海，決汝漢，排淮泗，而注之江，然後中國可得而食也，當是時也，禹八年於外，三過其門而不入，豈欲耕得乎。8. 后稷教民稼穡，樹藝五穀，五穀熟，而民人育，人之有道也，飽食暖衣，逸居而無教，則近於禽獸。聖人有憂之，使契為司徒，教以人倫，父子有親，君臣有義，夫婦有別，長幼有序，朋友有信，放勲曰，勞之，來之，匡之，直之，輔之，翼之，使自得之，又從而振德之，聖人之憂民如此，而暇耕乎。9. 堯以不得舜為己憂，舜以不得禹為己憂，夫以百畝之不易為己憂者，農夫也。10. 分人以財，謂之惠，教人以善，謂之忠，為天下得人者，謂之仁，是故以天下與人易，為天下得人難。11. 孔子曰，大哉，堯之為君，惟天為大，惟堯則之，穆穆乎，民無能名焉，君哉，舜也，巍巍乎，有天下而不與焉，堯舜之治天下，豈無所用其心哉，亦不用於耕耳。12. 吾聞用夏變夷者，未聞變於夷者也，陳良，楚產也，悅周公仲尼之道，北學於中國，北方之學者，未能或之先也，彼所謂豪傑之士也，子之兄弟，事之數十年，師死，而遂倍之。13. 孔子沒，三年之外，門人治任將歸，入揖於子貢，相顧而哭，皆失聲，然後歸，子貢反，築室於場，獨居三年，然後歸，他日，子夏，子張，子游，以有若似聖人，欲以所事孔子事之，強曾子，曾子曰，不可，江漢以濯之，秋陽以暴之，晝晝乎，不可尚已。14. 今也，南蠻鈍舌之人，非先王之道，子倍子之師而學之，亦異於曾子矣。15. 吾聞出於幽谷，遷于喬木者，未聞下喬木而入於幽谷者。16. 魯陽曰，戎狄是膺，荆
Chap. IV 1. There came from Ts'oo to T'ang one Heu Hing, who gave out that he acted according to the words of Shin-nung. Coming right to his gate, he addressed the duke Wan, saying, "A man of a distant region, I have heard that you, prince, are practicing a benevolent government, and I wish to receive a site for a house, and to become one of your people." The duke Wan gave him a dwelling place. His disciples, amounting to several tens, all wore clothes of haircloth, and made sandals of hemp and wove mats for a living.

2. At the same time, Ch'in Seang, a disciple of Ch'in Leang, and his younger brother Sin, with their plow handles and shares on their backs, came from Sung to T'ang, saying, "We have heard that you, prince, are putting into practice the government of the ancient sages, showing that you are likewise a sage. We wish to become the subjects of a sage."
3. When Ch'in Seang saw Heu Hing, he was greatly pleased with him, and, abandoning entirely whatever he had learned, became his disciple. Having an interview with Mencius, he related to him with approbation the words of Heu Hing to the following effect: — "The prince of T'ang is indeed a worthy prince. He has not yet heard, however, the real doctrines of antiquity. Now, wise and able princes should cultivate the ground equally and along with their people, and eat the fruit of their labor. They should prepare their own meals, morning and evening, while at the same time they carry on their government. But now, the prince of T'ang has his granaries, treasuries, and arsenals, which is an oppressing of the people to nourish himself. — How can he be deemed a real worthy prince?"

4. Mencius said, "I suppose that Heu Hing sows grain and eats the produce. Is it not so?" "It is so," was the answer. "I suppose also he weaves cloth, and wears his own manufacture. Is it not so?" "No, Heu wears clothes of haircloth." "Does he wear a cap?" "He wears a cap." "What kind of cap?" "A plain cap." "Is it woven by himself?" "No, he gets it in exchange for grain." "Why does Heu not weave it himself?" "That would injure his husbandry." "Does Heu cook his food in boilers
and earthenware pans, and does he plow with an iron share?" "Yes." "Does he make those articles himself?" "No, he gets them in exchange for grain."

5. *Mencius then said*, "The getting those various articles in exchange for grain, is not oppressive to the potter and the founder, and the potter and the founder in their turn, in exchanging their various articles for grain are not oppressive to the husbandman. How should such a thing be supposed? And moreover, why does not Heu act the potter and founder, supplying himself with the articles which he uses solely from his own establishment? Why does he go confusedly dealing and exchanging with the handicraftsmen? Why does he not spare himself so much trouble?" *Ch'in Seang replied*, "The business of the handicraftsman can by no means be carried on along with the business of husbandry."

6. *Mencius resumed*, "Then, is it the government of the empire which alone can be carried on along with the practice of husbandry? Great men have their proper business, and little men have their proper business. Moreover, in the case of any single individual, whatever articles he can require are ready to his hand, being produced by the various handicraftsmen:—if he must first make them for his own
use, this way of doing would keep the whole empire running about upon the roads. Hence, there is the saying. 'Some labor with their minds, and some labor with their strength. Those who labor with their minds govern others; those who labor with their strength are governed by others. Those who are governed by others support them; those who govern others are supported by them.' This is a principle universally recognized.

7. "In the time of Yaou, when the world had not yet been perfectly reduced to order, the vast waters, flowing out of their channels, made a universal inundation. Vegetation was luxuriant, and birds and beasts swarmed. The various kinds of grain could not be grown. The birds and beasts pressed upon men. The paths marked by the feet of beasts and prints of birds, crossed one another throughout the Middle Kingdom. To Yaou alone this caused anxious sorrow. He raised Shun to office, and measures to regulate the disorder were set forth. Shun committed to Yih the direction of the fire to be employed, and Yih set fire to, and consumed, the forests and vegetation on the mountains and in the marshes, so that the birds and beasts fled away to hide themselves. Yu separated the nine streams, cleared the courses of the Tse and T'ah, and
led them all to the sea. He opened a vent also for the Joo and Han, and regulated the course of the Hwae and Sze, so that they all flowed into the Keang. When this was done, it became possible for the people of Middle Kingdom to cultivate the ground and get food for themselves. During that time, Yu was eight years away from his home, and though he thrice passed the door of it, he did not enter. Although he had wished to cultivate the ground, could he have done so?

3. "The minister of agriculture taught the people to sow and reap, cultivating the five kinds of gram. When the five kinds of grain were brought to maturity, the people all enjoyed a comfortable subsistence. Now men possess a moral nature; but if they are well fed, warmly clad, and comfortably lodged, without being taught at the same time, they become almost like the beasts. This was a subject of anxious solicitude to the sage Shun, and he appointed See to be the minister of instruction, to teach the relations of humanity:—how, between father and son, there should be affection; between sovereign and minister, righteousness; between husband and wife, attention to their separate functions; between old and young, a proper order; and between friends, fidelity. The highly meritorious emperor said to him, 'Encourage
them; lead them on; rectify them; straighten them; help them; give them wings;—thus causing them to become possessors of themselves. Then follow this up by stimulating them, and conferring benefits on them.’ When the sages were exercising their solicitude for the people in this way, had they leisure to cultivate the ground?

9. “What Yaou felt giving him anxiety, was the not getting Shun. What Shun felt giving him anxiety was the not getting Yu and Kaou-yaou. But he whose anxiety is about his hundred mow not being properly cultivated, is a mere husbandman.

10. “The imparting by a man to others of his wealth is called ‘a kindness. The teaching others what is good is called ‘the exercise of fidelity.’ The finding a man who shall benefit the empire is called ‘benevolence.’ Hence to give the empire to another man would be easy; to find a man who shall benefit the empire is difficult.

11. “Confucius said, ‘Great indeed was Yaou as a sovereign. It is only heaven that is great, and only Yaou corresponded to it. How vast was his virtue! The people could find no name for it. Princely indeed was Shun! How majestic was he, having possession of the empire, and yet seeming as if it were nothing.
to him!' In their governing the empire, were there no subjects on which Yaou and Shun employed their minds? There were subjects, only they did not employ their minds on the cultivation of the ground.

12. 'I have heard of men using the doctrines of our great land to change barbarians, but I have never yet heard of any being changed by barbarians. Ch'üan Leang was a native of Ts'oo. Pleased with the doctrines of Chow-kung and Chung-ne, he came northwards to the Middle Kingdom and studied them. Among the scholars of the northern regions, there was perhaps none who excelled him. He was what you call a scholar of high and distinguished qualities. You and your brother followed him some tens of years, and when your master died, you have forthwith turned away from him.

13. Formerly, when Confucius died, after three years had elapsed, his disciples collected their baggage, and prepared to return to their several homes. But on entering to take their leave of Tse-kung, as they looked towards one another they wailed, till they all lost their voices. After this they returned to their homes, but Tse-kung went back, and built a house for himself on the altar ground, where he lived alone other three years, before he returned home. On another occasion, Tse-hea, Tse—
chang, and Tsze-yew, thinking that Yew Jo resembled the sage, wished to render to him the same observances which they had rendered to Confucius. They tried to force the disciple Tsang to join with them, but he said, "This may not be done. What has been washed in the waters of the Keang and Han, and bleached in the autumn sun:—how glistening is it! Nothing can be added to it.'

14. "Now here is this shrike-tongued barbarian of the south, whose doctrines are not those of the ancient kings. You turn away from your master and become his disciple. Your conduct is different indeed from that of the philosopher Tsang.

15. "I have heard of birds leaving dark valleys to remove to lofty trees, but I have not heard of their descending from lofty trees to enter into dark valleys.

16. "In the Praise Songs of Loo it is said, 'He smote the barbarians of the west and the north, He punished King and seu.' Thus Chow-kung would be sure to smite them, and you become their disciple again; it appears that your change is not good.'

17. Ch' in Seang said, "If Heu's doctrines were followed, then there would not be two prices in the market; nor any deceit in the
kingdom. If a body of five cubits were sent to the market, no one would impose on him; linen and silk of the same length would be of the same price. So it would be with bundles of hemp and silk, being of the same weight; with the different hanks of grain, being the same in quantity; and with shoes which were of the same size.”

18. Mencius replied, “It is the nature of things to be of unequal quality. Some are twice, some five times, some ten times, some a hundred times, some a thousand times, some ten thousand times as valuable as others. If you reduce them all to the same standard, that must throw the empire into confusion. If large shoes and small shoes were of the same price, who would make them? For people to follow the doctrines of Heu, would be for them to lead one another on to practice deceit. How can they avail for the government of a state?”
Chap. v. 1 The Mihist, E Che, sought, through Seu Peih, to see Mencius. Mencius said, “I indeed wish to see him, but at present I am still unwell. When I am better, I will myself go and see him. E need not come here again.”

2. Next day, E Che again sought to see Mencius. Mencius said, “To-day I am able to see him. But if I do not correct his errors, the true principles will not be fully evident. Let me first correct him. I have heard that E is a Mihist. Now Mih considers that in the regulation of funeral matters a spare simplicity should be the rule. E thinks with Mih’s doctrines to change the customs of the empire;—how does he regard them as if they were wrong, and not honor them? Notwithstanding his views. E buried his parents in a sumptuous manner, and so he served them in the way which his doctrines discountenance.”

3. The disciple Seu informed E of these remarks. E said, “Even according to the prin-
ciples of the learned, we find that the ancients acted towards the people, 'as if they were watching over an infant.' What does this expression mean? To me it sounds that we are to love all without difference of degree; but the manifestation of love must begin with our parents.' Seu reported this reply to Mencius, who said, "Now, does E really think that a man's affection for the child of his brother is merely like his affection for the infant of a neighbor? What is to be laid hold of in that expression is simply this:—that if an infant crawling about is about to fall into a well, it is no crime in the infant. Moreover, Heaven gives birth to creatures in such a way that they have one root, and E makes them to have two roots. This is the cause of his error.

4. "And, in the most ancient times, there were some who did not inter their parents. When their parents died, they took them up and threw them into some water channel. Afterwards, when passing by them, they saw foxes and wild cats devouring them, and flies and gnats biting at them. The perspiration started out upon their foreheads, and they looked away, unable to bear the sight. It was not on account of other people that this perspiration flowed. The emotions of their hearts
affected their faces and eyes, and instantly they went home, and came back with baskets and spades and covered the bodies. If the covering them thus was indeed right, you may see that the filial son and virtuous man, in interring in a handsome manner their parents, act according to a proper rule."

5. The disciple Seu informed E of what Mencius had said. E was thoughtful for a short time, and then said, "He has instructed me."

**BOOK III**

T'ANG WAN KUNG. PART II

第一章 1. 王子曰: 不見诸侯，宜若小然，今一見之，大則以王，小則以霸，且志曰: 正尺而直尋，宜若可為也。 2. 孟子曰: 昔，齊景公田，招虞人以旌，不至，將殺之，志士不忘在溝壑，勇士不忘喪其元。孔子奚取焉，取非其招不往也，如不待其招而往，何哉。 3. 且夫枉尺而直尋者，以利言也，如以利，則枉尋直尺而利，亦可為與。 4. 昔者，趙簡子使王良與嬖奚乘，終日而不獲一禽。嬖奚反命曰，天下之賤工也，或以告王良。良曰: 請復之，彊而後可，一朝而獲十禽。嬖奚反命曰，天下之良工也。簡子曰: 我使妾與女乘，謂王良，良不可，曰，吾之為範我馳騖，終日不獲一，為之誣訛，一朝而獲十。詩云，不失其馳，舍矢如破，我不貶與小人乘。請辭。
Chap. 1. 1. Ch'in Tae said to Mencius, "In not going to wait upon any of the princes, you seem to me to be standing on a small point. If now you were once to wait upon them, the result might be so great that you would make one of them emperor, or, if smaller, that you would make one of them chief of all the other princes. Moreover, the History says, 'By bending only one cubit, you make eight cubits straight.' It appears to me like a thing which might be done."

2. Mencius said, "Formerly, the duke King of Ts'e once when he was hunting, called his forester to him by a flag. The forester would not come, and the duke was going to kill him. With reference to this incident, Confucius said, 'The determined officer never forgets that his end may be in a ditch or a stream; the brave officer never forgets that he may lose his head.' What was it in the forester that Confucius thus approved? He approved his not going to the duke when, summoned by the article which was not appropriate to him. If one go to see the princes without waiting to be invited, what can be thought of him?

3. "Moreover, that sentence, 'By bending only one cubit, you make eight cubits straight,'
is spoken with reference to the gain that may be got. If gain be the object, then, if it can be got by bending eight cubits to make one cubit straight, may we likewise do that?

4. "Formerly, the officer Chaou Keen made Wang Leang act as charioteer for his favorite He, when, in the course of a whole day, they did not get a single bird. The favorite He reported this result saying, 'He is the poorest charioteer in the world.' Some one told this to Wang Leang, who said, 'I beg leave to try again.' By dint of pressing, this was accorded to him, when in one morning they got ten birds. The favorite, reporting this result, said, 'He is the best charioteer in the world.' Keen said, 'I will make him always drive your carriage for you.' When he told Wang Leang so, however, Leang refused, saying, 'I drove for him, strictly observing the proper rules for driving, and in the whole day he did not get one bird. I drove for him so as deceitfully to intercept the birds, and in one morning he got ten. It is said in the "Book of Poetry."

"There is no failure in the management of their horses;
The arrows are discharged surely, like the blows of an ax."
not accustomed to drive for a mean man."
I beg leave to decline the office.'

5. "Thus this charioteer even was ashamed to bend improperly to the will of such an archer. Though, by bending to it, they would have caught birds and animals enow to form a hill, he would not do so. If I were to bend my principles and follow those princes, of what kind would my conduct be? And you are wrong. Never has a man who has bent himself been able to make others straight."

第二章 1. 景春曰：公孫衍，張儀，豈不誠大丈夫哉。一怒而諸侯懽，安居，而天下熄。 2. 孟子曰，是焉得為大丈夫乎。子未學禮乎。男子之冠也，父命之。女子之嫁也，母命之。往送之門，戒之曰，往之女家，必敬必戒，無違夫子，以順為正者，妾婦之道也。 3. 居天下之廣居，立天下之正位，行天下之大道，得志，與民由之；不得志，獨行其道。富貴不能淫，貧賤不能移，威武不能屈，此之謂大丈夫。

Chap. 11. I. King Ch'un said to Mencius, "Are not Kung-sun Yen and Chang E really great men? Let them once be angry, and all the princes are afraid. Let them live quietly, and the flames of trouble are extinguished throughout the empire."

2. Mencius said, "How can such men be great men? Have you not read the Ritual Usages?—'At the capping of a young man, his father admonishes him. At the marriage of a young woman, her mother admonishes her,
accompanying her to the door on her leaving, and cautioning her with these words, *You are going to your home. You must be respectful; you must be careful. Do not disobey your husband.* Thus, to look upon compliance as their correct course is the rule for women.

3. “To dwell in the wide house of the world, to stand in the correct seat of the world, and to walk in the great path of the world; when he obtains his desire for office, to practice his principles for the good of the people; and when that desire is disappointed, to practice them alone; to be above the power of riches and honors to make dissipated, of poverty and mean condition to make swerve from principle, and of power and force to make bend—these characteristics constitute the great man.”
Chap. iii. 1. Chow Seaou asked Mencius, saying, "Did superior men of old time take office?" Mencius replied, "They did. The Record says, 'If Confucius was three months without being employed by some sovereign, he looked anxious and unhappy. When he passed from the boundary of a state, he was sure to carry with him his proper gift of introduction.' Kung-ming E said, 'Among the ancients, if an officer was three months unemployed by a sovereign, he was condoled with.'"

2. Seaou said, "Did not this condoling, on being three months unemployed by a sovereign, show a too great urgency?"

3. Mencius answered, "The loss of his place to an officer is like the loss of his kingdom to a prince. It is said in the 'Book of Rites,' 'A prince plows himself, and is assisted by the people, to supply the millet for sacrifice. His wife keeps silkworms, and unwinds their cocoons, to make the garments for sacrifice. If the victims be not perfect, the millet not pure, and the dress not complete, he does not presume to sacrifice. 'And the scholar who, out of office, has no holy field, in the same way, does not sacrifice.' The victims for slaughter, the vessels, and the garments, not being all complete, he
does not presume to sacrifice, and then neither may he dare to feel happy. Is there not here sufficient ground also for condolence?"

4. Seaou again asked, "What was the meaning of Confucius's always carrying his proper gift of introduction with him, when he passed over the boundaries of the state where he had been?"

5. "An officer's being in office," was the reply, "is like the plowing of a husbandman. Does a husbandman part with his plow, because he goes from one state to another?"

6. Seaou pursued, "The kingdom of Tsin is one, as well as others, of official employments, but I have not heard of any being thus earnest about being in office. If there should be this urgency about being in office, why does a superior man make any difficulty about the taking it?" Mencius answered, "When a son is born, what is desired for him is that he may have a wife; when a daughter is born, what is desired for her is that she may have a husband. This feeling of the parents is possessed by all men. If the young people, without waiting for the orders of their parents, and the arrangements of the go-betweens, shall bore holes to steal a sight of each other, or get over the wall to be with each other, then their parents and all other people will despise them."
The ancients did indeed always desire to be in office, but they also hated being so by any improper way. To go to get office by an improper way is of a class with young people’s boring holes."

Chap. iv. 1. P‘ang Kang asked Mencius, saying, “Is it not an extravagant procedure to go from one prince to another and live upon them, followed by several tens of carriages, and attended by several hundred men?” Mencius replied, “If there be not a proper ground for taking it, a single bamboo cup of rice may not be received from a man. If there be such a proper ground, then Shûn’s receiving the empire from Yaou is not to be considered excessive.
Do you think it was excessive?

2. Kang said, “No. But for a scholar performing no service to receive his support notwithstanding is improper.”

3. Mencius answered, “If you do not have an intercommunication of the productions of labor, and an interchange of men’s services, so that one from his overplus may supply the deficiency of another, then husbandmen will have a superfluity of grain, and women will have a superfluity of cloth. If you have such an interchange, carpenters and carriage wrights may all get their food from you. Here now is a man, who, at home, is filial, and abroad, respectful to his elders; who watches over the principles of the ancient kings, awaiting the rise of future learners:—and yet you will refuse to support him. How is it that you give honor to the carpenter and carriage wright, and slight him who practices benevolence and righteousness?”

4. Pang Kang said, “The aim of the carpenter and carriage wright is by their trades to seek for a living. Is it also the aim of the superior man in his practice of principles thereby to seek for a living?” “What have you to do,” returned Mencius, “with his purpose? He is of service to you. He deserves to be supported, and should be supported. And let
me ask,—Do you remunerate a man's intention, or do you remunerate his service." To this Kang replied, "I remunerate his intention."

5. Mencius said, "There is a man here, who breaks your tiles, and draws unsightly figures on your walls;—his purpose may be thereby to seek for his living, but will you indeed remunerate him?" "No," said Kang; and Mencius then concluded, "That being the case, it is not the purpose which you remunerate, but the work done."

第五章 1.萬章問曰，朱，小國也，今將行王政，齊楚惡而伐之則如之何。 2. 孟子曰，湯居亳，與葛爲隸，葛伯放而不祀，湯使人問之曰，何爲不祀，曰，無以供犧牲也。湯使遺之牛羊，葛伯食之，又不以祀，湯又使人問之曰，何爲不祀，曰，無以供粢盛也。湯使貉往爲之耕，老弱饑食，葛伯率其民，要其有酒食黍稻者奪之，不授者殺之，有童子以黍肉餉，殺而奪之，書曰，葛伯仇餉，此之謂也。 3. 爲其殺是童子而徬之，四海之內，皆曰，非富天下也，爲匹夫匹婦復讎也。 4. 湯始徵，自葛載，十一徵，而無敵於天下，東面而征，西夷怨，南面而征，其狄怨，曰，奚爲後我，民之望之，若大旱之望雨也，歸市者弗止，芸者不變，誅其君，弒其民，如時雨降。民大悅，書曰，從我后，后來其無罰。 5. 有攸不爲臣，東徵，綏厥士女，匪厥玄黃，紹我周王見休，惟臣附于大邑周，其君子實玄黃于篚，以迎其君子，其小人韋食粢粱，以迎其小人，敟民於水火之中，取其殘而已矣。 6. 太誓曰，我武惟揚，侵蚤之疆，則取予殘，殺伐用張，予湯有光。 7. 不行王
Chap. V. 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius, saying, “Sung is a small state. Its ruler is now setting about to practice the true royal government, and Ts'e and Ts'oo hate and attack him. What in this case is to be done?”

2. Mencius replied, “When T'ang dwelt in Po, he adjoined to the state of Ko, the chief of which was living in a dissolute state and neglecting his proper sacrifices. T'ang sent messengers to inquire why he did not sacrifice. He replied, ‘I have no means of supplying the necessary victims.’ On this, T'ang caused oxen and sheep to be sent to him, but he ate them, and still continued not to sacrifice. T'ang again sent messengers to ask him the same question as before, when he replied, ‘I have no means of obtaining the necessary millet.’ On this, T'ang sent the mass of the people of Po to go and till the ground for him, while the old and feeble carried their food to them. The chief of Ko red his people to intercept those who were thus charged with wine, cooked rice, millet, and paddy, and took their stores from them, while they killed those who refused to give them up. There was a boy who had some millet and flesh for the laborers, who was thus slain and robbed. What is said in the ‘Book
THE WORKS OF MENGCIUS

of History,' 'The chief of Ko behaved as an enemy to the provision carriers,' has reference to this.

3. "Because of his murder of this boy, T'ang proceeded to punish him. All within the four seas said, 'It is not because he desires the riches of the empire, but to avenge a common man and woman.'

4. "When T'ang began his work of executing justice, he commenced with Ko, and though he punished eleven princes, he had not an enemy in the empire. When he pursued his work in the east, the rude tribes in the west murmured. So did those on the north, when he was engaged in the south. Their cry was—'Why does he make us last?' Thus, the people's longing for him was like their longing for rain in a time of great drought. The frequenters of the markets stopped not. Those engaged in weeding in the fields made no change in their operations. While he punished their rulers, he consoled the people. His progress was like the falling of opportune rain, and the people were delighted. It is said in the 'Book of History,' 'We have waited for our prince. When our prince comes, we may escape from the punishments under which we suffer.'

5. "There being some who would not become the subjects of Chow, King Woo
proceeded to punish them on the east. He gave tranquillity to their people, who welcomed him with baskets full of their black and yellow silks, saying—'From henceforth we shall serve the sovereign of our dynasty of Chow, that we may be made happy by him.' So they joined themselves, as subjects, to the great city of Chow. Thus, the men of station of Shang took baskets full of black and yellow silks to meet the men of station of Chow, and the lower classes of the one met those of the other, with baskets of rice and vessels of congee. Woo saved the people from the midst of fire and water, seizing only their oppressors, and destroying them.

6. "In the Great Declaration it is said, 'My power shall be put forth, and invading the territories of Shang, I will seize the oppressor. I will put him to death to punish him:—so shall the greatness of my work appear, more glorious than that of T'ang.'

7. "Sung is not, as you say, practicing true royal government, and so forth. If it were practicing royal government, all within the four seas would be lifting up their heads, and looking for its prince, wishing to have him for their sovereign. Great as Ts'e and Ts'oo are, what would there be to fear from them?"
Chap VI. 1. Mencius said to Tae Puh-shing, "I see that you are desiring your king to be virtuous, and I will plainly tell you how he may be made so. Suppose that there is a great officer of Ts‘oo here, who wishes his son to learn the speech of Ts‘e. Will he in that case employ a man of Ts‘e as his tutor, or a man of Ts‘oo?" "He will employ a man of Ts‘e to teach him." said Puh-shing. Mencius went on, "If but one man of Ts‘e be teaching him, and there be a multitude of men of Ts‘oo continually shouting out about him, although his father beat him every day, wishing him to learn the speech of Ts‘e it will be impossible for him to do so. But in the same way, if he were to be taken and placed for several years in Chwang or Yoh, though his father should beat him, wishing him to speak the language of Ts‘oo, it would be impossible for him to do so.

2. "You supposed that See Keu-chow was
a scholar of virtue, and you have got him placed in attendance on the king. Suppose that all in attendance on the king, old and young, high and low, were See Keu-chows, whom would the king have to do evil with? And suppose that all in attendance on the king, old and young, high and low, are not See Keu-chows, whom will the king have to do good with? What can one See Keu-chow do alone for the king of Sung?"

第七章 1. 公孫丑問曰, 不見諸侯, 何義。孟子曰, 古者, 不為臣不見。2. 段干木, 髡面而辟之, 撒柳閉門而不內, 是皆已甚, 迫, 斯可以見矣。3. 陽貨欲見孔子, 而惡無禮, 大夫有賜於士, 不得受於其家, 則往拜其門, 陽貨見孔子之亡也, 而飯孔子燕豚, 孔子亦餬其亡也, 而往拜之, 當是時, 陽貨先, 豈得不見。4. 曾子曰, 脊損詠笑, 病於夏畦。子路曰, 未同而言, 視其色赧赧然, 非由之所知也。由是觀之, 則君子之所養, 可知已矣。

Chap. VII. 1. Kung-sun Chow asked Mencius, saying, "What is the point of righteousness involved in your not going to see the princes?" Mencius replied, "Among the ancients, if one had not been a minister in a state, he did not go to see the sovereign.

2. "Twan Kan-muh leaped over his wall to avoid the prince. See Lew shut his door, and would not admit the prince. These two, however, carried their scrupulosity to excess."
When a prince is urgent, it is not improper to see him.

3. "Yang Ho wished to get Confucius to go to see him, but disliked doing so by any want of propriety. As it is the rule, therefore, that when a great officer sends a gift to a scholar, if the latter be not at home to receive it, he must go to the officer's to pay his respects, Yang Ho watched when Confucius was out, and sent him a roasted pig. Confucius, in his turn, watched when Ho was out, and went to pay his respects to him. At that time, Yang Ho had taken the initiative; — how could Confucius decline going to see him?

4. "The philosopher Tsang said, 'They who shrug up their shoulders, and laugh in a flattering way, toil harder than the summer laborer in the fields.' Tsze-loo said, 'There are those who talk with people with whom they have no great community of feeling. If you look at their countenances, they are full of blushes. I do not desire to know such persons.' By considering these remarks, the spirit which the superior man nourishes may be known."
Chap. III. 1. Tae Ying-che said to Mencius, "I am not able at present and immediately to do with the levying of a tithe only, and abolishing the duties charged at the passes and in the markets. With your leave I will lighten, however, both the tax and the duties, until next year, and will then make an end of them. What do you think of such a course?"

2. Mencius said, "Here is a man, who every day appropriates some of his neighbor's strayed fowls. Some one says to him, 'Such is not the way of a good man'; and he replies, 'With your leave I will diminish my appropriations, and will take only one fowl a month, until next year, when I will make an end of the practice.'"

3. "If you know that the thing is unrighteous, then use all dispatch in putting an end to it:—why wait till next year?"
Chap. ix. 1. The disciple Kung-too said to Mencius, "Master, the people beyond our school all speak of you as being fond of disputing. I venture to ask whether it be so." Mencius replied, "Indeed, I am not fond of disputing, but I am compelled to do it.

2. "A long time has elapsed since this
world of men received its being, and there has been along its history now a period of good order, and now a period of confusion.

3. “In the time of Yaou, the waters, flowing out of their channels, inundated the Middle Kingdom. Snakes and dragons occupied it, and the people had no place where they could settle themselves. In the low grounds they made nests for themselves, and in the high grounds they made caves. It is said in the ‘Book of History,’ ‘The waters in their wild course warned me.’ Those ‘waters in their wild course’ were the waters of the great inundation.

4. “Shun employed Yu to reduce the waters to order. Yu dug open their obstructed channels, and conducted them to the sea. He drove away the snakes and dragons, and forced them into the grassy marshes. On this, the waters pursued their course through the country, even the waters of the Keang, the Hwae, the Ho, and the Han, and the dangers and obstructions which they had occasioned were removed. The birds and beasts which had injured the people also disappeared, and after this men found the plains available for them, and occupied them.

5. “After the death of Yaou and Shum, the principles that mark sages fell into decay.
Oppressive sovereigns arose one after another, who pulled down houses to make ponds and lakes, so that the people knew not where they could rest in quiet, and threw fields out of cultivation to form gardens and parks, so that the people could not get clothes and food. Afterwards, corrupt speakings and oppressive deeds became more rife; gardens and parks, ponds and lakes, thickets and marshes, became more numerous, and birds and beasts swarmed. By the time of Chow, the empire was again in a state of great confusion.

6. "Chow-kung assisted King Woo, and destroyed Chow. He smote Yen, and after three years put its sovereign to death. He drove Fei-leen to a corner by the sea, and slew him. The states which he extinguished amounted to fifty. He drove far away also the tigers, leopards, rhinoceroses, and elephants; —and the empire was greatly delighted. It is said in the 'Book of History,' 'Great and splendid were the plans of King Wan! Greatly were they carried out by the energy of King Woo! They are for the assistance and instruction of us who are of an after day. They are all in principle correct, and deficient in nothing.'

7. "Again the world fell into decay; and principles faded away. Perverse speakings
and oppressive deeds waxed rife again. There were instances of ministers who murdered their sovereigns, and of sons who murdered their fathers.

8. "Confucius was afraid, and made the 'Spring and Autumn.' What the 'Spring and Autumn' contains are matters proper to the emperor. On this account Confucius said, 'Yes! It is the "Spring and Autumn" which will make men know me, and it is the "Spring and Autumn" which will make men condemn me.'

9. "Once more, sage emperors cease to arise, and the princes of the states give the reins to their lusts. Unemployed scholars indulge in unreasonable discussions. The words of Yang Choo and Mih Teih fill the empire. If you listen to people's discourses throughout it, you will find that they have adopted the views either of Yang or of Mih. Now, Yang's principle is—'each one for himself,' which does not acknowledge the claims of the sovereign. Mih's principle is—'to love all equally,' which does not acknowledge the peculiar affection due to a father. But to acknowledge neither king nor father is to be in the state of a beast. Kung-ming E said 'In their kitchens, there is fat meat. In their stables, there are fat horses. But their people have the look of hunger, and on the wilds there are those who have died of famine. This is
leading on beasts to devour men.' If the principles of Yang and Mih are not stopped, and the principles of Confucius not set forth, then those perverse speakings will delude the people, and stop up the path of benevolence and righteousness. When benevolence and righteousness are stopped up, beasts will be led on to devour men, and men will devour one another.

10. "I am alarmed by these things, and address myself to the defense of the doctrines of the former sages, and to oppose Yang and Mih. I drive away their licentious expressions, so that such perverse speakers may not be able to show themselves. Their delusions spring up in men's minds, and do injury to their practice of affairs. Shown in their practice of affairs, they are pernicious to their government. When sages shall rise up again, they will not change my words.

11. "In former times, Yu repressed the vast waters of the inundation, and the empire was reduced to order. Chow-kung's achievements extended even to the barbarous tribes of the west and north, and he drove away all ferocious animals, and the people enjoyed repose. Confucius completed the 'Spring and Autumn,' and rebellious ministers and villainous sons were struck with terror.

12. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'
'He smote the barbarians of the west and the north
He punished King and Seu;
And no one dared to resist us.'

These fatner deniers and king deniers would have been smitten by Chow-kung.

13. "I also wish to rectify men's hearts, and to put an end to those perverse doctrines, to oppose their one-sided actions and banish away their licentious expressions;—and thus to carry on the work of the three sages. Do I do so because I am fond of disputing? I am compelled to do it.

14. "Whoever is able to oppose Yang and Mih is a disciple of the sages."
Chap. x. 1. K'wang Chang said to Mencius, "Is not Ch'an Chung a man of true self-denying purity? He was living in Wooling, and for three days without food, till he could neither hear nor see. Over a well there grew a plum tree, the fruit of which had been more than half eaten by worms. He crawled to it, and tried to eat some of the fruit, when, after swallowing three mouthfuls, he recovered his sight and hearing.

2. Mencius replied. "Among the scholars of Ts'e, I must regard Chung as the thumb among the fingers. But still, where is the self-denying purity he pretends to? To carry out the principles which he holds, one must become an earthworm, for so only can it be done.

3. "Now, an earthworm eats the dry mold above and drinks the yellow spring below. Was the house in which Chung dwells built by a Pih-e? or was it built by a robber like Chih? Was the millet which he eats planted by a Pih-e? or was it planted by a robber like Chih? These are things which cannot be known."
4. "But," said Chang, "what does that matter? He himself weaves sandals of hemp, and his wife twists hempen threads, to barter them."

5. Mencius rejoined, "Chung belongs to an ancient and noble family of Ts'ë. His elder brother Tae received from Ko a revenus of 10,000 chung but he considered his brother's emolument to be unrighteous, and would not eat of it, and in the same way he considered his brother's house to be unrighteous, and would not dwell in it. Avoiding his brother and leaving his mother, he went and dwelt in Woo-ling. One day afterwards, he returned to their house, when it happened that someone sent his brother a present of a live goose. He, knitting his eyebrows, said, 'What are you going to use that cackling thing for?' By and by his mother killed the goose, and gave him some of it to eat. Just then his brother came into the house, and said, 'It's the flesh of that cackling thing,' upon which he went out and vomited it.

6. "Thus, what his mother gave him he would not eat, but what his wife gives him he eats. He will not dwell in his brother's house, but he dwells in Woo-ling. How can he in such circumstances complete the style of life which he professes? With such prin-
puposes as Chung holds, a man must be an earthworm, and then he can carry them out."

BOOK IV

LE LOW. PART I

離婁章句上

Mencius said, "The power of vision of Le Low, and the skill of hand of Kung-shoo, without the compass and square, could not form squares and circles. The acute ear of the music master K'wang, without the pitch tubes, could not determine correctly the five notes. The principles of Yaou and Shun, without a benevolent government, could not secure the tranquil order of the empire.

2. "There are now princes who have benevolent hearts and a reputation for benevolence, while yet the people do not receive any benefits from them, nor will they leave any example to future ages;—all because they do not put into practice the ways of the ancient kings.

3. "Hence we have the saying: 'Virtue alone is not sufficient for the exercise of government; laws alone cannot carry themselves into practice.'

4. It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'Without transgression, without forgetfulness,

Following the ancient canons.'

Never has any one fallen into error, who followed the laws of the ancient kings.

5. "When the sages had used the vigor of their eyes, they called in to their aid the compass, the square, the level, and the line, to make things square, round, level, and straight:
—the use of the *instruments* is inexhaustible. When they had used their power of hearing to the utmost, they called in the pitch tubes to their aid to determine the five notes:—the use of those *tubes* is inexhaustible. When they had exerted to the utmost the thoughts of their hearts, they called in to their aid a government that could not endure to witness the sufferings of men:—and their benevolence overspread the empire.

6. "Hence we have the saying: 'To raise a thing high, we must begin from the top of a mound or a hill; to dig to a great depth, we must commence in the low ground of a stream or a marsh.' Can he be pronounced wise, who, in the exercise of government, does not proceed according to the ways of the former kings?

7. "Therefore only the benevolent ought to be in high stations. When a man destitute of benevolence is in a high station, he thereby disseminates his wickedness among all below him.

8. "When the prince has no principles by which he examines *his administration*, and his ministers have no laws by which they keep themselves in the discharge of their duties, then in the court obedience is not paid to principle, and in the office obedience is not paid to rule. Superiors violate the laws of
righteousness, and inferiors violate the penal laws. It is only by a fortunate chance that a kingdom in such a case is preserved.

9. "Therefore it is said, 'It is not the exterior and interior walls being incomplete, and the supply of weapons offensive and defensive not being large, which constitutes the calamity of a kingdom. It is not the cultivable area not being extended, and stores and wealth not being accumulated, which occasions the ruin of a kingdom.' When superiors do not observe the rules of propriety, and inferiors do not learn, then seditious people spring up, and that kingdom will perish in no time.

10. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,' 'When such an overthrow of Chow is being produced by Heaven, Be not ye so much at your ease!'

11. "'At your ease;'—that is, dilatory.

12. "And so dilatory may those officers be deemed, who serve their prince without righteousness, who take office and retire from it without regard to propriety, and who in their words disown the ways of the ancient kings.

13. "Therefore it is said, 'To urge one's sovereign to difficult achievements may be called showing respect for him. To set before him what is good and repress his perversities.
may be called showing reverence for him. *He who does not do these things, saying to himself, —My sovereign is incompetent to this, may be said to play the thief with him.’”

第二章 1. 孟子曰, 規矩, 方員之至也, 聖人, 人倫之至也。2. 欲為君, 盡君道, 欲為臣, 盡臣道, 兩者, 皆法堯舜而已矣, 不以堯之所以事堯事君, 不敬其君者也; 不以堯之所以治民治民, 賊其民者也。3. 孔子曰, 道二, 仁與不仁而已矣。4. 暴其民甚, 則身死國亡, 不甚, 則身危國削, 名之曰幽厲, 雖孝子慈孫, 百世不能改也。5. 詩云, 般箏不遠, 在夏后之世, 此之謂也。

Chap. II. 1. Mencius said, “The compass and square produce perfect circles and squares. By the sages, the human relations are perfectly exhibited.

2. “He who as a sovereign would perfectly discharge the duties of a sovereign, and he who as a minister would perfectly discharge the duties of a minister, have only to imitate—the one Yaou, and the other Shun. He who does not serve his sovereign as Shun served Yaou, does not respect his sovereign, and he who does not rule his people as Yaou ruled his, injures his people.

3. “Confucius said, ‘There are but two courses, which can be pursued, that of virtue and its opposite.’

4. “A sovereign who carries the oppression,
of his people to the highest pitch, will himself be slain, and his kingdom will perish. It one stop short of the highest pitch, his life will notwithstanding be in danger, and his kingdom will be weakened. He will be styled 'The dark,' or 'The cruel,' and though he may have filial sons and affectionate grandsons, they will not be able in a hundred generations to change the designation.

5. "This is what is intended in the words of the 'Book of Poetry,'

'The beacon of Yin was not remote,
It was in the time of the sovereign of Hea.'"

Chap. III. 1. Mencius said, "It was by benevolence that the three dynasties gained the empire, and by not being benevolent that they lost it.

2. "It is by the same means that the decaying and flourishing, the preservation and perishing, of states are determined.

3. "If the emperor be not benevolent, he cannot preserve the empire from passing from him. If the sovereign of a state be not bene-
volent, he cannot preserve his kingdom. If a high noble or great officer be not benevolent, he cannot preserve his ancestral temple. If a scholar or common man be not benevolent, he cannot preserve his four limbs.

4. "Now they hate death and ruin, and yet delight in being not benevolent;—this is like hating to be drunk, and yet being strong to drink wine."

第四章 1. 孟子曰, 愛人不親, 反其仁, 治人不治, 反其智, 禮人不答, 反其敬。 2. 行有不得者, 皆反求諸己, 其身正, 而天下歸之。 3. 詩云, 永言配命, 自求多福。

Chap. IV. 1. Mencius said, "If a man love others, and no responsive attachment is shown to him, let him turn inward and examine his own benevolence. If he is trying to rule others, and his government is unsuccessful, let him turn inward and examine his wisdom. If he treats others politely, and they do not return his politeness, let him turn inward and examine his own feeling of respect.

2. 'When we do not, by what we do, realize what we desire, we must turn inward, and examine ourselves in every point. When a man's person is correct, the whole empire will turn to him with recognition and submission.

3. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'Be always studious to be in harmony
with the ordinances of God,
And you will obtain much happiness.'"

第五章 孟子曰，人有恆言，皆曰，天下國家，天下之本在國，國之本在家，家之本在身。

Chap. v. Mencius said, ‘People have this common saying,—‘The empire, the state, the family.’ The root of the empire is in the state. The root of the state is in the family. The root of the family is in the person of its head.’

第六章 孟子曰，為政不難，不得罪於巨室，巨室之所慕，一國慕之，一國之所慕，天下慕之，故沛然德教溢乎四海。

Chap. vi. Mencius said, “The administration of government is not difficult;—it lies in not offending the great families. He whom the great families affect, will be affected by the whole state, and he whom any one state affects, will be affected by the whole empire. When this is the case, such a one’s virtue and teachings will spread over all within the four seas like the rush of water.”

第七章 1. 孟子曰，天下有道，小德役大德，小賢役大賢，天下無道，小役大，弱役強，斯二者，天也，順天者存，逆天者亡。2. 齊景公曰，既不能令，又不受命，是絕物也，涕出而女於吳。3. 今也，小國師大國，而恥受命焉，是猶弟子而恥受命於先師也。4. 如恥之，莫若師文王。師文王，大國五年，小國七年，必為政於天下矣。5. 詩云，商之孫子，其麗不懌，上帝既命，侯子周服，侯服于周，天命靡常，殷士勇敏，祼
Chap. VII 1. Mencius said, "When right government prevails in the empire, princes of little virtue are submissive to those of great, and those of little worth, to those of great. When bad government prevails in the empire, princes of small power are submissive to those of great, and the weak to the strong. Both these cases are the rule of Heaven. They who accord with Heaven are preserved, and they who rebel against Heaven perish.

2. "Duke King of Ts'e said, 'Not to be able to command others, and at the same time to refuse to receive their commands, is to cut one's self off from all intercourse with others.' His tears flowed forth while he gave his daughter to be married to the prince of Woo.

3. "Now the small states imitate the large, and yet are ashamed to receive their commands. This is like a scholar's being ashamed to receive the commands of his master.

4. "For a prince who is ashamed of this, the best plan is to imitate King Wan. Let one imitate King Wan, and in five years, if his state be large, or in seven years, if it be small, he will be sure to give laws to the empire.
5. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'
   'The descendants of the emperors of
   the Shang dynasty,
   Are in number more than hundreds
   of thousands;
   But, God having passed His decree,
   They are all submissive to Chow.
   They are submissive to Chow,
   Because the decree of Heaven is not
   unchanging.
   The officers of Yin, admirable and
   alert,
   Pour out the libations, and assist in
   the capital of Chow.'

Confucius said, 'As against so benevolent a
sovereign, they could not be deemed a multitude.'
Thus, if the prince of a state love benevolence,
he will have no opponent in all the empire.

6. "Now they wish to have no opponent
in all the empire, but they do not seek to attain
this by being benevolent. This is like a man
laying hold of a heated substance, and not
having first wetted his hands. It is said in
the 'Book of Poetry',
   'Who can take up a heated substance,
Without wetting his hands?"
Chap. VIII. 1. Mencius said, "How is it possible to speak with those princes who are not benevolent? Their perils they count safety, their calamities they count profitable, and they have pleasure in the things by which they perish. If it were possible to talk with them who so violate benevolence, how could we have such destruction of kingdoms and ruin of families?

2. "There was a boy singing,
   'When the water of the Ts'ang-lang is clear,
   It does to wash the strings of my cap.
   When the water of the Ts'ang-lang is muddy,
   It does to wash my feet.'

3. "Confucius said, 'Hear what he sings, my children. When clear, then he will wash his cap strings, and when muddy, he will wash his feet with it. This different application is brought by the water on itself.'

4. "A man must first despise himself, and then others will despise him. A family must first destroy itself, and then others will destroy..."
it. A kingdom must first smite itself, and then others will smite it.

5. "This is illustrated in the passage of the T'ae Kea, 'When Heaven sends down calamities, it is still possible to escape them. When we occasion the calamities ourselves, it is not possible any longer to live.'"

Chap. IX. 1. Mencius said, "Kee and Chow's losing the empire, arose from their losing the people, and to lose the people means to lose their hearts. There is a way to get the empire:—get the people, and the empire is got. There is a way to get the people:—get their hearts, and the people are got. There is a way to get their hearts:—it is simply to collect for them what they like, and not to lay on them what they dislike.

2. "The people turn to a benevolent rule
as water flows downward, and as wild beasts fly to the wilderness.

3. "Accordingly, as the otter aids the deep waters, driving the fish into them, and the hawk aids the thickets, driving the little birds to them, so Kee and Chow aided T'ang and Woo, driving the people to them.

4. "If among the present sovereigns of the empire, there were one who loved benevolence, all the other princes would aid him, by driving the people to him. Although he wished not to become emperor, he could not avoid becoming so.

5. "The case of one of the present princes wishing to become emperor, is like the having to seek mugwort of three years old, to cure a seven years' sickness. If it have not been kept in store, the patient may all his life not get it. If the princes do not set their wills on benevolence, all their days will be in sorrow and disgrace, and they will be involved in death and ruin.

6. "This is illustrated by what is said in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'How otherwise can you improve the empire?
You will only with it go to ruin.'"
Chap. x. 1. Mencius said, "With those who do violence to themselves, it is impossible to speak. With those who throw themselves away, it is impossible to do anything. To disown in his conversation propriety and righteousness, is what we mean by doing violence to one's self. To say—'I am not able to dwell in benevolence or pursue the path of righteousness,' is what we mean by throwing one's self away.

2. "Benevolence is the tranquil habitation of man, and righteousness is his straight path.

3. "Alas for them, who leave the tranquil dwelling empty, and do not reside in it, and who abandon the right path and do not pursue it!"

Chap. xi. Mencius said, "The path of duty lies in what is near and men seek for it in what is remote. The work of duty lies in what is easy, and men seek for it in what is difficult. If each man would love his parents and show the due respect to his elders, the whole empire would enjoy tranquillity."
Chap. xii. 1. Mencius said "When those occupying inferior situations do not obtain the confidence of the sovereign, they cannot succeed in governing the people. There is a way to obtain the confidence of the sovereign:—if one is not trusted by his friends, he will not obtain the confidence of his sovereign. There is a way of being trusted by one's friends:—if one do not serve his parents so as to make them pleased, he will not be trusted by his friends. There is a way to make one's parents pleased:—if one, on turning his thoughts inward finds a want of sincerity, he will not give pleasure to his parents. There is a way to the attainment of sincerity in one's self:—if a man do not understand what is good, he will not attain sincerity in himself.

2. "Therefore, sincerity is the way of Heaven. To think how to be sincere is the way of man.

3. "Never has there been one possessed of complete sincerity, who did not move others. Never has there been one who had not sincerity
Chap. xiii. 1. Mencius said, "Pih-e, that he might avoid Chow, was dwelling on the coast of the northern sea. When he heard of the rise of King Wan, he roused himself, and said, 'Why should I not go and follow him? I have heard that the chief of the west knows well how to nourish the old.' T'ae-kung, that he might avoid Chow, was dwelling on the coast of the eastern sea. When he heard of the rise of King Wan, he roused himself, and said, 'Why should I not go and follow him? I have heard that the chief of the west knows well how to nourish the old.'

2. "Those two old men were the greatest old men of the empire. When they came to follow King Wan, it was the fathers of the empire coming to follow him. When the fathers of the empire joined him, how could the sons go to any others?

3. "Were any of the princes to practice the government of King Wan, within seven years he would be sure to be giving laws to the empire."
Chap. xiv. 1. Mencius said, "K'un acted as chief officer to the head of the Ke family, whose evil ways he was unable to change, while he exacted from the people double the grain formerly paid. Confucius said, 'He is no disciple of mine. Little children, beat the drum and assail him.'

2. "Looking at the subject from this case, we perceive that when a prince was not practicing benevolent government, all his ministers who enriched him were rejected by Confucius:—how much more would he have rejected those who are vehement to fight for their prince! When contentions about territory are the ground on which they fight, they slaughter men till the fields are filled with them. When some struggle for a city is the ground on which they fight, they slaughter men till the city is filled with them. This is what is called 'leading on the land to devour human flesh.' Death is not enough for such a crime.

3. "Therefore those who are skillful to
fight should suffer the highest punishment. Next to them should be punished those who unite the princes in leagues; and next to them, those who take in grassy commons, imposing the cultivation of the ground on the people."

第十五章 1. 孟子曰, 存乎人者, 莫良於眸子, 眸子不能掩其恶, 胸中正, 則眸子瞭焉; 胸中不正, 則眸子眊焉。 2. 聽其言也, 觀其眸子, 人焉廋哉。

Chap. xv. I. Mencius said, "Of all the parts of a man’s body there is none more excellent than the pupil of the eye. The pupil cannot be used to hide a man’s wickedness. If within the breast all be correct, the pupil is bright. If within the breast all be not correct, the pupil is dull.

2. "Listen to a man’s words and look at the pupil of his eye. How can a man conceal his character?"

第十六章 孟子曰, 恭者不侮人, 儉者不奪人, 奢奪人之君, 惡不順焉, 悪得為恭儉, 恭儉, 豈可以聲音笑貌為哉。

Chap. xvi. Mencius said, "The respectful do not despise others. The economical do not plunder others. The prince who treats men with despite and plunders them, is only afraid that they may not prove obedient to him:—how can he be regarded as respectful or economical? How can respectfulness and economy be made out of tones of the voice and a smiling manner?"
Chap. xvii. 1. Shun-yu K'wan said, "Is it the rule that males and females shall not allow their hands to touch in giving or receiving anything?" Mencius replied, "It is the rule." K'wan asked, "If a man's sister-in-law be drowning, shall he rescue her with his hand?" Mencius said, "He who would not so rescue a drowning woman is a wolf. For males and females not to allow their hands to touch in giving and receiving is the general rule; when a sister-in-law is drowning, to rescue her with the hand is a peculiar exigency."

2. K'wan said, "The whole empire is drowning. How strange it is that you will not rescue it!"

3. Mencius answered, "A drowning empire must be rescued with right principles, as a drowning sister-in-law has to be rescued with the hand. Do you wish me to rescue the empire with my hand?"
Chap XVII. 1. Kung-sun Ch'ow said, "Why is it that the superior man does not himself teach his son?"

2. Mencius replied, "The circumstances of the case forbid its being done. The teacher must inculcate what is correct. When he inculcates what is correct, and his lessons are not practiced he follows them up with being angry. When he follows them up with being angry, then, contrary to what should be, he is offended with his son. At the same time, the pupil says, 'My master inculcates on me what is correct, and he himself does not proceed in a correct path.' The result of this is, that father and son are offended with each other. When father and son come to be offended with each other, the case is evil.

3. "The ancients exchanged sons, and one taught the son of another.

4. "Between father and son, there should be no reproving admonitions to what is good. Such reproofs lead to alienation, and than alienation, there is nothing more inauspicious."
Chap. XIX. 1. Mencius said, "Of services which is the greatest? The service of parents is the greatest. Of charges which is the greatest? The charge of one's self is the greatest. That those who do not fail to keep themselves are able to serve their parents is what I have heard. But I have never heard of any, who having failed to keep themselves, were able notwithstanding to serve their parents.

2. "There are many services, but the service of parents is the root of all others. There are many charges, but the charge of one's self is the root of all others.

3. "The philosopher Tsang, in nourishing Tsang Seih, was always sure to have wine and flesh provided. And when they were being removed, he would ask respectfully to whom he should give what was left. If his father asked whether there was anything left, he was sure to say, 'There is.' After the death of Tsang Seih, when Tsang Yuen came to nourish the philosopher Tsang, he was always sure to have wine and flesh provided. But when the things were being removed, he did not ask to whom he should give what was left, and if his
father asked whether there was anything left, he would answer 'No';—intending to bring them fn again. This was what is called—‘nourishing the mouth and body.’ We may call the philosopher Tsang’s practice—‘nourishing the will.’

4. “To serve one’s parents as the philosopher Ts’ang served his may be accepted as filial piety.”

Chap. xx. Mencius said, “It is not enough to remonstrate with a sovereign on account of the malemployment of ministers, nor to blame errors of government. It is only the great man who can rectify what is wrong in the sovereign’s mind. Let the prince be benevolent, and all his acts will be benevolent. Let the prince be righteous, and all his acts will be righteous. Let the prince be correct, and everything will be correct. Once rectify the prince, and the kingdom will be firmly settled.”

Chap. xxii. Mencius said, “There are cases of praise which could not be expected, and of reproach when the parties have been seeking to be perfect.”
Chap. XXII. Mencius said, "Men's being ready with their tongues arises simply from their not having been reproved."

Chap. XXIII. Mencius said, "The evil of men is that they like to be teachers of others,"

Chap. XXIV. 1. The disciple Yo-ching went in the train of Tsze-gaou to Ts'ê.

2. He came to see Mencius, who said to him, "Are you also come to see me?" Yo-ching replied, "Master, why do you speak such words?" "How many days have you been here?" Asked Mencius. "I came yesterday." "Yesterday! Is it not with reason, then, that I thus speak?" "My lodging house was not arranged." "Have you heard that a scholar's lodging house must be arranged before he visit his elder?"

3. Yo-ching said, "I have done wrong."
the train of Tsze-gaou was only because of the food and the drink. I could not have thought that you, having learned the doctrine of the ancients, would have acted with a view to eating and drinking.”

Chap. xxvi. 1. Mencius said, “There are three things which are unfilial, and to have no posterity is the greatest of them.

2. “Shun married, without informing his parents, because of this,—lest he should have no posterity. Superior men consider that his doing so was the same as if he had informed them.”

Chap. xxvii. 1. Mencius said, “The richest fruit of benevolence is this,—the service of one’s parents. The richest fruit of righteousness is this,—the obeying one’s elder brothers.

2. “The richest fruit of wisdom is this;—the knowing those two things, and not departing from them. The richest fruit of propriety is this,—the ordering and adorning those two things. The richest fruit of music is this,—the
rejoicing in those two things. When they are rejoiced in, they grow. Growing, how can they be repressed? When they come to this state that they cannot be repressed, then unconsciously the feet begin to dance and the hands to move.'

第二十八章 1. 孟子曰，天下大悦而將歸己，視天下悅而歸己，猶草芥也。惟舜為然。不得乎親，不可以為人；不順乎親，不可以為子。

Chap xxviii. 1. Mencius said, "Suppose the case of the whole empire turning in great delight to an individual to submit to him.—To regard the whole empire thus turning to him in great delight but as a bundle of grass;—only Shun was capable of this. He considered that if one could not get the hearts of his parents he could not be considered a man, and that if he could not get to an entire accord with his parents, he could not be considered a son.

2. "By Shun's completely fulfilling everything by which parent could be served, Koo-sow was brought to find delight in what was good. When Koo-sow was brought to find that delight, the whole empire was transformed. When Koo-sow was brought to find that delight, all fathers and sons in the empire were established in their respective duties.
This is called great filial piety."

BOOK IV

LE LOW. PART II

1. Mencius said, "Shun was born in Choo-fung, removed to Foo-hea, and died in Ming-t'eaou;—a man near the wild tribes on the east.

2. "King Wan was born in Chow by Mount K'e, and died in Peih-ying;—a man near the wild tribes on the west.

3. "Those regions were distant from one another more than a thousand li, and the age of the one sage was posterior to that of the other more than a thousand years. But when they got their wish, and carried their principles into practice throughout the Middle Kingdom, it was like uniting the two halves of a seal.

4. "When we examine the sages,—both the earlier and the later,—their principles are found to be the same."
Chap. 11. 1. When Tsze-chen was chief minister of the state of Ch'ing, he would convey people across the Tsin and Wei in his own carriage.

2. Mencius said, "It was kind, but showed that he did not understand the practice of government.

3. "When in the eleventh month of the year the footbridges are completed, and the carriage bridges in the twelfth month, the people have not the trouble of wading.

4. "Let a governor conduct his rule on principles of equal justice, and when he goes abroad, he may cause people to be removed out of his path. But how can he convey everybody across the rivers?

5. "It follows that if a governor will try to please everybody, he will find the days not sufficient for his work."
Chap. III. 1. Mencius said to the king Seuen of Ts'e, "When the prince regards his ministers as his hands and feet, his ministers regard their prince as their belly and heart; when he regards them as his dogs and horses, they regard him as any other man; when he regards them as the ground or as grass, they regard him as a robber and an enemy."

2. The king said, "According to the rules of propriety, a minister wears mourning when he has left the service of a prince. How must a prince behave that his old ministers may thus go into mourning?"

3. Mencius replied, "The admonitions of a minister having been followed, and his advice listened to, so that blessings have descended on the people, if for some cause he leaves the country, the prince sends an escort to conduct him beyond the boundaries. He also anticipates with recommendatory intimations his arrival in the country to which he is proceeding. When he has been gone three years and does not return, only then at length does he take back his fields and residence. This treatment is what is called 'a thrice-repeated display of consideration.'
When a prince acts thus, mourning will be worn on leaving his service.

4. “Nowadays, the remonstrances of a minister are not followed, and his advice is not listened to, so that no blessings descend on the people. When for any cause he leaves the country, the prince tries to seize him and hold him a prisoner. He also pushes him to extremity in the country to which he has gone, and on the very day of his departure, he takes back his fields and residence. This treatment shows him to be what we call a robber and an enemy. What mourning can be worn for a robber and an enemy?”

Chap. iv. Mencius said, “When scholars are put to death without any crime, the great officers may leave the country. When the people are slaughtered without any crime, the scholars may remove.”

Chap. v. Mencius said, “If the sovereign be benevolent, all will be benevolent. If the sovereign be righteous, all will be righteous.

Chap. vi. Mencius said, “Acts of propriety, which are not really proper, and acts of right-
eousness which are not really righteous, the great man does not do."

第章 孟子曰，中也，義不中，才也，義不才，故人樂有賢父兄也，如中也棄不中，才也棄不才，則賢不肖之相去，其間不能以寸。

Chap. vii. Mencius said, "Those who keep the mean, train up those who do not, and those who have abilities, train up those who have not, and hence men rejoice in having fathers and elder brothers who are possessed of virtue and talent. If they who keep the mean spurn those who do not, and they who have abilities spurn those who have not, then the space between them—those so gifted and the ungifted—will not admit an inch."

第八章 孟子曰，人有不為也，而後可以有為。

Chap. viii. Mencius said, "Men must be decided on what they will NOT do, and then they are able to act with vigor in what they ought to do."

第九章 孟子曰，言人之不善，當如後患何。

Chap. ix. Mencius said, "What future misery have they and ought they to endure, who talk of what is not good in others!"

第十章 孟子曰，仲尼不為已甚者。

Chap. x. Mencius said, "Chung-ne did not do extraordinary things."
Chap. xi. Mencius said, "The great man does not think beforehand of his words that they may be sincere, nor of his actions that they may be resolute—he simply speaks and does what is right."

Chap. xii. Mencius said, "The great man is he who does not lose his child's-heart."

Chap. xiii. Mencius said, "The nourishment of parents when living is not sufficient to be accounted the great thing. It is only in the performing their obsequies when dead, that we have what can be considered the great thing."

Chap. xiv. Mencius said, "The superior man makes his advances in what he is learning with deep earnestness and by the proper course, wishing to get hold of it as in himself. Having got hold of it in himself, he abides in it calmly and firmly. Abiding in it calmly and firmly, he reposes a deep reliance on it. Reposing a deep reliance on it, he seizes it on the left and
right, meeting everywhere with it as a fountain from which things flow. It is on this account that the superior man wishes to get hold of what he is learning as in himself.”

Chap. xv. Mencius said, “In learning extensively and discussing minutely what is learned, the object of the superior man is that he may be able to go back and set forth in brief what is essential.”

Chap. xvi. Mencius said, “Never has he who would by his excellence subdue men been able to subdue them. Let a prince seek by his excellence to nourish men, and he will be able to subdue the whole empire. It is impossible that any one should become ruler of the empire to whom it has not yielded the subjection of the heart.”

Chap. xvii. Mencius said, “Words which are not true are inauspicious, and the words which are most truly obnoxious to the name of inauspicious, are those which throw into the shade men of talents and virtue.”

Chap. xviii. 1. Duxue said, 仲尼亟稱於水曰, 水哉水哉, 何取於水
Chap. XVIII. 1. The disciple Seu said, “Chung-ne often praised water, saying, ‘O water! O water! What did he find in water to praise?’

2. Mencius replied, “There is a spring of water; how it gushes out! It rests not day nor night. It fills up every hole, and then advances, flowing on to the four seas. Such is water having a spring! It was this which he found in it to praise.

3. “But suppose that the water has no spring. — In the seventh and eighth months when the rain falls abundantly, the channels in the fields are all filled, but their being dried up again may be expected in a short time. So a superior man is ashamed of a reputation beyond his merits.”

Chap. XIX. 1. Mencius said, "That whereby man differs from the lower animals is but small. The mass of people cast it away, while superior men preserve it.

2. “Shun clearly understood the multitude of things, and closely observed the relations of
humanity. He walked along the path of benevolence and righteousness; he did not need to pursue benevolence and righteousness."

Chap. xx. 1. Mencius said, "Yu hated the pleasant wine, and loved good words.

2. "T‘ang held fast the mean, and employed men of talents and virtue without regard to where they came from.

3. "King Wan looked on the people as he would on a man who was wounded, and he looked towards the right path as if he could not see it.

4. "King Woo did not slight the near, and did not forget the distant.

5. "The duke of Chow desired to unite in himself the virtues of those kings, those founders of the three dynasties, that he might display in his practice the four things which they did. If he saw any thing in them not suited to his time, he looked up and thought about it, from daytime into the night, and when he was fortunate enough to master the difficulty, he sat waiting for the morning."
Chap. XXI. 1. Mencius said, "The traces of imperial rule were extinguished, and the imperial odes ceased to be made. When those odes ceased to be made, then the ‘Ch‘un Ts‘ew’ was produced.

2. "The ‘Shing’ of Tsin, the ‘Taou Wuh’ of Ts‘oo, and the ‘Ch‘un Ts‘ew’ of Loo were books of the same character.

3. "The subject of the Ch‘un Ts‘ew was the affairs of Hwan of Ts‘e and Wan of Tsin, and its style was the historical. Confucius said, ‘Its righteous decisions I ventured to make.’"

Chap. XXII. 1. Mencius said, "The influence of a sovereign sage terminates in the fifth generation. The influence of a mere sage does the same.

2. "Although I could not be a disciple of Confucius himself, I have endeavored to cultivate my virtue by means of others who were.

Chap. XXIII. Mencius said, "When it appears
proper to take a thing, and afterwards not proper, to take it is contrary to moderation. When it appears proper to give a thing and afterwards not proper, to give it is contrary to kindness. When it appears proper to sacrifice one’s life, and afterwards not proper, to sacrifice it is contrary to bravery.'

Chap. xxiv. 1. P’ang Mung learned archery of E. When he had acquired completely all the science of E, he thought that in all the empire only E was superior to himself, and so he slew him. Mencius said, ‘In this case E also was to blame.’ Kung-ming E indeed said, ‘It would appear as if he were not to be blamed,’ but he thereby only meant that his
blame was slight. How can he be held without any blame?"

2. "The people of Ch'ing sent Tsze-cho-Yu to make a stealthy attack on Wei, which sent Yu-kung Sze to pursue him. Tsze-cho-Yu said, 'To-day I feel unwell, so that I cannot hold my bow. I am a dead man!' At the same time he asked his driver, 'Who is it that is pursuing me?' The driver said, 'It is Yu-kung Sze,' on which he exclaimed, 'I shall live.' The driver said, 'Yu-kung Sze is the best archer of Wei, what do you mean by saying—I shall live?' Yu replied, 'Yu-kung Sze learned archery from Yin-kung T'o, who again learned it from me. Now, Yin-kung T'o is an upright man, and the friends of his selection must be upright also.' When Yu-kung Sze came up, he said, 'Master, why are you not holding your bow?' Yu answered him, 'To-day I am feeling unwell, and cannot hold my bow.' On this Sze said, 'I learned archery from Yin-kung T'o, who again learned it from you. I cannot bear to injure you with your own science. The business of to-day, however, is the prince's business, which I dare not neglect.' He then took his arrows, knocked off their steel points against the carriage wheel, discharged four of them, and returned."
Chap. XXV. 1. Mencius said, "If the lady Se had been covered with a filthy headdress, all people would have stopped their noses in passing her.

2. "Though a man may be wicked, yet if he adjust his thoughts, fast, and bathe, he may sacrifice to God."

Chap. XXVI. 1. Mencius said, "All who speak about the natures of things, have in fact only their phenomena to reason from, and the value of a phenomenon is in its being natural.

2. "What I dislike in your wise men is their boring out their conclusions. If those wise men would only act as Yu did when he conveyed away the waters, there would be nothing to dislike in their wisdom. The manner in which Yu conveyed away the waters was by doing what gave him no trouble. If your wise men would also do that which gave them no trouble, their knowledge would also be great.

3. "There is heaven so high; there are the
stars so distant. If we have investigated their phenomena, we may, while sitting in our places, go back to the solstice of a thousand years ago.'

第二十七章 1. 公行子有子之喪,右師往弔,入門,有進而與右師言者,有就右師之位,而與右師言者. 2. 孟子不與右師言,右師不悅,曰,諸君子皆與驪言,孟子獨不與驪言,是簡驪也. 3. 孟子聞之曰,禮,朝廷不歴位,而相與言,不踐階而相揖也,我欲行禮,子敖以我為簡,不亦異乎.

Chap. XXVII. 1. The officer Kung-hang having on hand the funeral of one of his sons, the Master of the Right went to condole with him. When this noble entered the door, some called him to them and spoke with him, and some went to his place and spoke with him.

2. Mencius did not speak with him, so that he was displeased, and said, "All the gentlemen have spoken with me. There is only Mencius who does not speak to me, thereby slighting me."

3 Mencius, having heard of this remark, said, "According to the prescribed rules, in the court, individuals may not change their places to speak with one another, nor may they pass from their ranks to bow to one another. I was wishing to observe this rule, and Tsze-gaou understands it that I was slighting him:—is not this strange?"
Chap xxviii. 1. Mencius said, "That whereby the superior man is distinguished from other men is what he preserves in his heart;—namely, benevolence and propriety.

2. "The benevolent man loves others. The man of propriety shows respect to others.

3. "He who loves others is constantly loved by them. He who respects others is constantly respected by them.

4. "Here is a man, who treats me in a perverse and unreasonable manner. The superior man in such a case will turn round upon himself— I must have been wanting in benevolence; I must have been wanting in
propriety:—how should this have happened to me?’

5. “He examines himself, and is specially benevolent. He turns round upon himself, and is specially observant of propriety. The perversity and unreasonableness of the other, however, are still the same. The superior man will again turn round on himself—’I must have been failing to do my utmost.’

6. “He turns round upon himself, and proceeds to do his utmost, but still the perversity and unreasonableness of the other are repeated. On this the superior man says, ’This is a man utterly lost indeed! Since he conducts himself so, what is there to choose between him and a brute? Why should I go to contend with a brute?’

7. “Thus it is that the superior man has a life-long anxiety and not one morning’s calamity. As to what is matter of anxiety to him, that he has.—He says, ’Shun was a man, and I also am a man. But Shun became an example to the empire, and his conduct was worthy to be handed down to after ages, while I am nothing better than a villager.’ This indeed is proper matter of anxiety to him. And in what way is he anxious about it? Just that he may be like Shun:—then only will he stop. As to what the superior man would
feel to be a calamity, there is no such thing. He does nothing which is not according to propriety. If there should be fall him one morning's calamity, the superior man does not account it a calamity.”

**Chap. xxix.** 1. Yu and Tseih, in an age of tranquilizing government, thrice passed their doors without entering them. Confucius praised them.

2. The disciple Yen, in a age of confusion, dwelt in a mean narrow lane, having his single bamboo cup of rice, and his single gourd dish of water; other men could not have endured the distress, but he did not allow his joy to be affected by it. Confucius praised him.


4. “Yu thought that if any one in the empire were drowned, it was as if he drowned him. Tseih thought that if any one in the
empire suffered hunger, it was as if he famished him. It was on this account that they were so earnest.

5  "If Yu and Tseih, and the philosopher Yen had exchanged places, each would have done what the other did.

6. "Here now in the same apartment with you are people fighting: — you ought to part them. Though you part them with your cap simply tied over your unbound hair, your conduct will be allowable.

7  "If the fighting be only in the village or neighborhood, if you go to put an end to it with your cap tied over your hair unbound, you will be in error. Although you should shut your door in such a case, your conduct would be allowable."
Chap xxx. 1 The disciple Kung-too said, "Throughout the whole kingdom everybody pronounces K'wang unfilial. But you, Master, keep company with him, and moreover treat him with politeness. I venture to ask why you do so."

2. Mencius replied, "There are five things which are said in the common practice of the age to be unfilial. The first is laziness in the use of one's four limbs, without attending to the nourishment of his parents. The second is gambling and chess playing, and being fond of wine, without attending to the nourishment of his parents. The third is being fond of goods and money, and selfishly attached to his wife and children, without attending to the nourishment of his parents. The fourth is following the desires of one's ears and eyes, so as to bring his parents to disgrace. The fifth is being fond of bravery, fighting and quarreling so as to endanger his parents. Is Chang guilty of any one of these things?

3. "Now between Chang and his father there arose disagreement, he, the son, reproving his father, to urge him to what was good.

4. "To urge one another to what is good by reproofs is the way of friends. But such urging between father and son is the greatest
injury to the kindness which should prevail between them.

5. "Moreover, did not Chang wish to have in his family the relationships of husband and wife, child and mother? But because he had offended his father, and was not permitted to approach him, he sent away his wife, and drove forth his son, and all his life receives no cherishing attention from them. He settled it in his mind that if he did not act in this way, his would be one of the greatest of crimes. — Such and nothing more is the case of Chang.

Chap. xxxi. 1 When the philosopher Tsang dwelt in Woosung, there came a band from Yue to plunder it. Some one said to him. "The plunderers are coming:—why not leave this?" Tsang on this left the city, saying to the man in charge of the house, "Do not lodge
any persons in my house, lest they break and injure the plants and trees." When the plunderers withdrew, be sent word to him, saying, "Repair the walls of my house. I am about to return." When the plunderers retired, the philosopher Tsang returned accordingly. His disciples said, "Since our master was treated with so much sincerity and respect, for him to be the first to go away on the arrival of the plunderers, so as to be observed by the people, and then to return on their retiring, appears to us to be improper." Shin-yew Hing said, "You do not understand this matter. Formerly, when Shin-yew was exposed to the outbreak of the grass carriers, there were seventy disciples in our master's following, and none of them took part in the matter."

2. When Tsze-sze was living in Wei, there came a band from Ts'e to plunder. Some one said to him, "The plunderers are coming; — why not leave this?" Tsze-sze said, "If I go away, whom will the prince have to guard the stole with?"

3. Mencius said, "The philosopher Tsang and Tsze-sze agreed in the principle of their conduct. Tsang was a teacher — in the place of a sather or elder brother. Tsze-sze was a minister — in a meaner place. If the philosophers Tsang and Tsze-sze had exchanged
places, the one would have done what the other did."

第三十二章 儒子曰,王使人問夫子,果有以異於人乎,孟子曰,何以異於人哉,堯舜與人同耳。

Chap. XXXII. The officer Ch'oo said to Mencius, "Master, the king sent persons to spy out whether you were really different from other men." Mencius said, "How should I be different from other men! Yaou and Shun were just the same as other men.

第三十三章 1. 齊人有一妻一妾,而處室者,其良人出,則必鬱酒肉而後反,其妻問所與飲食者,則盡富貴也,其妻告其妾曰,良人出,則必鬱酒肉而後反,問其所與飲食者,盡富貴也,而未嘗有顯者來,吾將闢良人之所之也,蚤起,施從良人之所之,循國中,無與立談者,卒之東郭墦間之祭者,乞其餘,不足,又願而之他,此其為富足之道也。其妻歸告其妾曰,良人者,所仰望而終身也,今若此,與其妾訛其良人,而相泣於中庭,而良人未之知也,施施從外來,驕其妻妾。2. 由君子觀之,則人之所以求富貴利達者,其妻妾不差也,而不相泣者幾希矣。

Chap. XXXIII. 1 A man of Tse had a wife and a concubine, and lived together with them in his house. When their husband went out, he would get himself well filled with wine and flesh, and then return, and, on his wife's asking him with whom he ate and drank, they
were sure to be all wealthy and honorable people. The wife informed the concubine, saying, "When our good man goes out, he is sure to come back having partaken plentifully of wins and flesh. I asked with whom he ate and drank, and they are all. It seems, wealthy and honorable people. And yet no people of distinction ever come here. I will spy out where our good man goes." Accordingly, she got up early in the morning, and privately followed wherever her husband went. Throughout the whole city, there was no one who stood or talked with him. At last, he came to those who were sacrificing among the tombs beyond the outer wall on the east, and begged what they had over. Not being satisfied, he looked about, and went to another party:—and this was the way in which he got himself satiated. His wife returned, and informed the concubine, saying, "It was to our husband that we looked up in hopeful contemplation with whom our lot is cast for life;—and now these are his waps!" On this, along with the concubine she reviled their husband, and they wept together in the middle hall. In the meantime the husband, knowing nothing of all this, came in with a jaunty air, carrying himself proudly to his wife and concubine.

2. In the view of a superior man, as to the
waye by which men seek for riches, honors, gain, and advancement, there are few of their wives and concubines who would not be ashamed and weep together on account of them.

BOOK V

WAN CHANG PA

萬章篇上

第一章 1. 萬章問曰, 舜往于田, 號泣于旻天, 何為其號泣也。孟子曰, 怨慕也。2. 萬章曰, 父母愛之, 喜而不忘, 父母惡之, 勢而不怨, 然則舜怨乎。曰, 長息問於公明高曰, 舜往于田, 則吾既得聞命矣。號泣于旻天, 于父母, 則吾不知也。公明高曰, 是非爾所知也。夫公明高以孝子之心, 爲不若是恕, 我竭力耕田, 共為子職而已矣。父母之不我愛, 於我何哉。3. 帝使其子九男二女, 百官牛羊, 倉廪備, 以事舜於畎畝之中。天下之士多就之者。帝將胥天下而遷之焉。為不順於父母, 如窮人無所歸。1. 天下之士悅之。人之所欲也, 而不足以解憂, 好色, 人之所欲, 妻帝之二女, 而不足以解憂, 富, 人之所欲, 富有天下。而不足以解憂, 貴, 人之所欲, 貴為天子, 而不足以解憂, 人悅之。好色, 富貴, 無足以解憂者。惟順於父母可以解憂。5. 人少, 則慕父母, 知好色, 則慕少艾, 有妻子, 則慕妻子, 仕則慕君, 不得於君, 則熱中。大孝終身慕父母, 五十而慕者, 子於大舜見之矣。

Chap. I. 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius, saying, When ‘Shun went into the fields, he
cried out and wept towards the pitying heavens. Why did he cry out and weep? Mencius replied, "He was dissatisfied, and full of earnest desire."

2. Wan Chang said, "When his parents love him, a son rejoices and forgets them not. When his parents hate him, though they punish him, he does not murmur. Was Shun then murmuring against his parents?" Mencius answered, "Ch'ang Seih asked Kung-ming Kaou, saying, 'As to Shun's going into the fields, I have received your instructions, but I do not know about his weeping and crying out to the pitying heavens and to his parents.' Kung-ming Kaou answered him, 'You do not understand that matter.' Now, Kung-ming Kaou supposed that the heart of the filial son could not be so free of sorrow. Shun would say, 'I exert my strength to cultivate the fields, but I am there by only discharging my office as a son. What can there be in me that my parents do not love me?'

3. "The emperor caused his own children, nine sons and two daughters, the various officers, oxen and sheep, storehouses and granaries, all to be prepared, to serve Shun amid the channeled fields. Of the scholars of the empire there were multitudes who flocked to him. The emperor designed that Shun
should superintend the empire along with him, and then to transfer it to him entirely. But because his parents were not in accord with him, he felt like a poor man who has nowhere to turn to.

4. "To be delighted in by the scholars of the empire, is what men desire, but it was not sufficient to remove the sorrow of Shun. The possession of beauty is what men desire, and Shun had for his wives the two daughters of the emperor, but this was not sufficient to remove his sorrow. Riches are what men desire, and the empire was the rich property of Shun, but this was not sufficient to remove his sorrow. Honors are what men desire, and Shun had the dignity of being emperor, but this was not sufficient to remove his sorrow. The reason why the being the object of men's delight, the possession of beauty, riches, and honors, were not sufficient to remove his sorrow, was, that it could be removed only by his getting his parents to be in accord with him.

5. "The desire of the child is towards his father and mother. When he becomes conscious of the attractions of beauty, his desire is towards young and beautiful women. When he comes to have a wife and children, his desire is towards them. When he obtains
office, his desire is towards his sovereign:—if he cannot get the regard of his sovereign, he burns within. *But* the man of great filial piety, to the end of his life, has his desire towards his parents. *In the great Shun I see the case of one whose desire at fifty years was towards them.*

第二章 1. Wan Chang asked, *Shi, when a wife and mother demand, what is the man's duty? Men-cius said, 'If a son cannot get the regard of his parents, it is in his power to try his parents.' 2. 'When a son cannot get the regard of his parents, he is to be praised. If a son be praised, how can the wishes of the parents be neglected? But if a man be so wise as to know that his parents cannot be praised, how can he produce a wife? 3. 'If a man be a great son of filial piety, he will make his wishes towards his parents end in his life. In the great Shun I see the ease of one whose desire at fifty years was towards them.'

Chap. ii. 1. Wan Chang asked *Mencius*, saying, *“It is said in the ‘Book of Poetry, ‘In marrying a wife, how ought a man to proceed?”*
He must inform his parents.
If the rule be indeed as here expressed, no man ought to have illustrated it so well as Shun. How was it that Shun's marriage took place without his informing his parents?" Mencius replied, "If he had informed them, he would not have been able to marry. That male and female should dwell together, is the greatest of human relations. If Shun had informed his parents, he must have made void this greatest of human relations, thereby incurring their resentment. On this account, he did not inform them."

2. Wan Chang said, "As to Shun's marrying without informing his parents, I have heard your instructions: but how was it that the emperor gave him his daughters as wives without informing Shun's parents?" Mencius said, "The emperor also knew that if he informed them, he could not marry his daughters to him."

3. Wan Chang said, "His parents set Shun to repair a granary, to which, the ladder having been removed, Koo-sow set fire. They also made him dig a well. He got out, but they, not knowing that, proceeded to cover him up. Seang said, Of the scheme to cover up the city-forming prince the merit is all mine. Let my parents have his oxen and sheep. Let
them have his storehouses and granaries. His shield and spear shall be mine. His lute shall be mine. His bow shall be mine. His two wives I shall make attend for me to my bed.'

Seang then went away into Shun's palace, and there was Shun on his couch playing on his lute. Seang said, 'I am come simply because I was thinking anxiously about you.' *At the same time,* he blushed deeply. Shun said to him, 'There are all my officers: do you undertake the government of them for me.' I do not know whether shun was ignorant of seang's wishing to kill him." Mencius answered, "How could he be ignorant of that? But when Seang was sorrowful, he was also sorrowful; when Seang was joyful, he was also joyful."

4. Chang said, "In that case, then, did not Shun rejoice hypocritically?" Mencius replied, "No. Formerly, some one sent a present of a live fish to Tsze-ch'an of Ch'ing. Tsze-ch'an ordered his pond keeper to keep it in the pond, but that officer cooked it, and reported the execution of his commission, saying, 'When I first let it go, it appeared embarrassed. In a little, it seemed to be somewhat at ease, and then it swam away joyfully.' Tsze-ch'an observed, 'It had got into its element! It had got into its element!' The pond keeper then
went out and said, 'Who calls Tsze-ch' an a wise man?' After I had cooked and eaten the fish, be says, "It had got into its element! it had got into its element!" Thus a superior man may be imposed on by what seems to be as it ought to be, but he cannot be entrapped by what is contrary to right principle. Seang came in the way in which the love of his elder brother would have made him come; therefore Shun sincerely believed him, and rejoiced. What hypocrisy was there?"

Chap. III. 1. Wan Chang said, "Seang made it his daily business to slay Shun. When Shun was made emperor, how was it that he only banished him?" Mencius said, "He raised
him to be a prince. Some supposed that it was banishing him.

2. Wan Chang said, "Shun banished the superintedent of works to Yewchow; he sent away Hwan-taou to the mountain Ts’ung; he slew the prince of San Meaou in Sauwei; and he imprisoned K’wan on the mountain Yu. When the crimes of those four were thus punished, the whole empire acquiesced: — it was a cutting off of men who were destitute of benevolence. But Seang was of all men the most destitute of benevolence, and Shun raised him to be the prince of Yewpe; — of what crimes had the people of Yewpe been guilty? Does a benevolent man really act thus? In the case of other men, he cut them off; in the case of his brother, he raised him to be a prince." Mencius replied, "A benevolent man does not lay up anger, nor cherish resentment against his brother, but only regards him with affection and love. Regarding him with affection, he wishes him to be honorable: regarding him with love, he wishes him to be rich. The appointment of Seang to be the prince of Yewpe was to enrich and ennable him. If while Shun himself was emperor, his brother had been a common man, could he have been said to regard him with affection and love?"
3  *Wan Chang* said, "I venture to ask what you mean by saying that some supposed that it was a banishing of *Seang*?"  *Mencius* replied, "*Seang* could do nothing in his state. The emperor appointed an officer to administer its government, and to pay over its revenues to him. This treatment of him led to its being said that he was banished. How indeed could he be allowed the means of oppressing the people? Nevertheless, *Shun* wished to be continually seeing him, and, by this arrangement, he came incessantly to court, as is signified in that expression—"He did not wait for the rendering of tribute, or affairs of government, to receive the prince of *Yewpe.""

### 第四章

1. 成丘蒙問曰，語云，盛德之士，君不得而臣，父不得而子，舜南面而立，堯帥諸侯北面而朝之，瞽瞍亦北面而朝之。舜見瞽瞍，其容有懼，孔子曰，於斯時也，天下殆哉烱烱乎，不識此語誠然乎哉。孟子曰，否，此非君子之言。齊東野人之語也，堯老而舜攝也。堯典曰，二十有八載，放徃乃徂落。百姓如喪考妣，三年，四海過密八音。孔子曰，天無二日，民無二王，舜既為天子矣，又帥天下諸侯。以爲堯三年喪，是二天子矣。

2. 成丘蒙曰，舜之不臣堯，則吾此既得聞命矣。詩云，普天之下，莫非王土，率土之濱，莫非王臣。而舜既為天子矣，敢問瞽瞍之非臣如何，曰，是詩也，非是之謂也，勞於王事而不得養父母也。曰，此莫非王事 我獨賢勞也。
Chap. iv. 1. Heen-k‘ew Mung asked Mencius, saying, “There is the saying. — ‘A scholar of complete virtue may not be employed as a minister by his sovereign, nor treated as a son by his father. Shun stood with his face to the south, and Yaou, at the head of all the princes, appeared before him at court with his face to the north. Koo-sow also did the same. When Shun saw Koo-sow, his countenance became discomposed. Confucius said, “At this time, in what a perilous condition was the empire! Its state was indeed unsettled.”’ — I do not know whether what is here said really took place.” Mencius replied, “No. These are not the words of a superior man. They are the sayings of an uncultivated person of the east of Ts‘e. When Yaou was old, Shun was associated with him in the government. It is said in the ‘Canon of Yaou,’ After twenty and eight years, the Highly Meritorious one deceased. The people acted as if they were mourning for a father or mother for three
years, and up to the borders of the four seas every sound of music was hushed.' Confucius said, 'There are not two suns in the sky, nor two sovereigns over the people.' Shun having been emperor, and, moreover, leading on all the princes to observe the three years' mourning for Yaou, there would have been in this case two emperors.

2. Heen-k'ew Mung said, "On the point of Shun's not treating Yaou as a minister, I have received your instructions. But it is said in the Book of Poetry, 'Under the whole heaven, Every spot is the sovereign's ground. To the borders of the land, Every individual is the sovereign's minister;'

—and Shun had become emperor. I venture to ask how it was that Koo-sow was not one of his ministers." Mencius answered, "That ode is not to be understood in that way:—it speaks of being laboriously engaged in the sovereign's business, so as not to be able to nourish one's parents, as if the author said, 'This is all the sovereign's business, and how is it that I alone am supposed to have ability, and am made to toil in it?' Therefore, those who explain the odes may not insist on one term so as to do violence to a sentence, nor on a
sentence so as to do violence to the general scope. They must try with their thoughts to meet that scope, and then we shall apprehend it. If we simply take single sentences, there is that in the ode called 'The Milky Way,'—

'Of the black-haired people of the remnant of Chow,
There is not half a one left.'
If it had been really as thus expressed, then not an individual of the people of Chow was left.

3. "Of all which a filial son can attain to, there is nothing greater than his honoring his parents. And of what can be attained to in the honoring one's parents, there is nothing greater than the nourishing them with the whole empire. Koo-sow was the father of the emperor;—this was the height of honor. Shun nourished him with the whole empire;—this was the height of nourishing. In this was verified the sentiment in the 'Book of Poetry,'

'Ever cherishing filial thoughts,
Those filial thoughts became an example to after ages.'

4. "It is said in the 'Book of History,' 'Reverently performing his duties, he waited on Koo-sow, and was full of veneration and awe. Koo-sow also believed him and conformed
to virtue.'—This is the true case of the scholar of complete virtue not being treated as a son by his father.”

Chap. v. 1. Wan Chang said, “Was it the case that Yaou gave the empire to Shun?” Mencius said, “No. The emperor cannot give the empire to another.”

2. “Yes;—but Shun had the empire. Who gave it to him?” “Heaven gave it to him,”
was the answer.

3. "'Heaven gave it to him':—did Heaven confer its appointment on him with specific injunctions?"

4. *Mencius* replied, "No. Heaven does not speak. It simply showed its will by his personal conduct, and his conduct of affairs."

5. "'It showed its will by his personal conduct and his conduct of affairs:'—how was this?" *Mencius*’s answer was, "The empire can present a man to Heaven, but he cannot make Heaven give that man the empire: A prince can present a man to the emperor, but he cannot cause the emperor to make that man a prince. A great officer can present a man to his prince, but he cannot cause the prince to make that man a great officer. *Yaou* presented *Shun* to Heaven, and the people accepted him. Therefore I say, 'Heaven does not speak. It simply indicated its will by his personal conduct and his conduct of affairs.'"

6. *Chang* said, "I presume to ask how it was that *Yaou* presented *Shun* to Heaven, and Heaven accepted him; and that he exhibited him to the people, and the people accepted him." *Mencius* replied, "He caused him to preside over the sacrifices, and all the spirits were well pleased with them;—thus Heaven accepted him. He caused him to preside over
the conduct of affairs, and affairs were well administered, so that the people reposed under him;—thus the people accepted him. Heaven gave the empire to him. The people gave it to him. Therefore I said, 'The emperor cannot give the empire to another.'

7. "Shun assisted Yaou in the government for twenty and eight years;—this was more than man could have done, and was from Heaven. After the death of Yaou, when the three years' mourning was completed, Shun withdrew from the son of Yaou to the south of South River. The princes of the empire, however, repairing to court went not to the son of Yaou, but they went to Shun. Litigants went not to the son of Yaou, but they went to Shun. Singers sang not the son of Yaou, but they sang Shun. Therefore I said, 'Heaven gave him the empire.' It was after these things that he went to the Middle Kingdom, and occupied the emperor's seat. If he had, before these things, taken up his residence in the palace of Yaou, and had applied pressure to the son of Yaou, it would have been an act of usurpation, and not the gift of Heaven.

8. "This sentiment is expressed in the words of The Great Declaration,—'Heaven sees according as my people see; Heaven hears according as my people hear.'"
第六章 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius saying, ‘People say, ‘When the disposal of the empire came to Yu, his virtue was inferior to that of Yaou and Shun, and he transmitted it to the worthiest but to his son.’ Was it so?’ Mencius replied, ‘No; it was not so. When Heaven gave the empire to the worthiest,
it was given to the worthiest. When Heaven gave it to the son of the preceding emperor, it was given to him. Shun presented Yu to Heaven. Seventeen years elapsed, and Shun died. When the three years' mourning was expired, Yu withdrew from the son of Shun to Yang-shing. The people of the empire followed him just as after the death of Yaou, instead of following his son, they had followed Shun. Yu presented Yih to Heaven. Seven years elapsed, and Yu died. When the three years, mourning was expired, Yih withdrew from the son of Yu to the north of Mount Ke. The princes, repairing to court, went not to Yih, but they went to K' e. Litigants did not go to Yih, but they went to K' e, saying, 'He is the son of our sovereign'; the singers did not sing Yih, but they sang K' e, saying, 'He is the son of our sovereign.'

2. "That Tan-choo was not equal to his father, and Shun's son not equal to him; that Shun assisted Yaou, and Yu assisted Shun, for many years conferring benefits on the people for a long time; that thus the length of time during which Shun, Yu, and Yih, assisted in the government was so different; and, that the sons of the emperors were—the one a man of talents and virtue, and other two inferior to their fathers:—all this was from Heaven, and
what could not be produced by man. That which is done without man's doing it is from Heaven. That which happens without man's causing it to happen is from the ordinance of Heaven.

3. "In the case of a private individual obtaining the empire, there must be in him virtue equal to that of Shun or Yu, and moreover there must be the presenting of him to Heaven by the preceding emperor. It was on this account that Confucius did not obtain the empire.

4. "When the empire is possessed by natural succession, the emperor who is displaced by Heaven must be like Kee or Chow. It was on this account that Yih, E Yin and Chow-kung did not obtain the empire.

5. "E Yin assisted T'ang so that he became sovereign over the empire. After the demise of T'ang, T'ae-ting having died before he could be appointed emperor, Wae-ping reigned two years, and Chung-jin four. T'ae-kea was then turning upside down the statutes of T'ang, when E Yin placed him in T'ung for three years. There T'ae-kea repented of his errors, was contrite, and reformed himself. In T'ung he came to dwell in benevolence and moved towards righteousness, during those three years, listening to the lessons given to him by E Yin."
Then E Yin again returned with him to Po.

6. "Chow-kung's not getting the empire was like the case of Yih and the throne of Hea, or like that of E Yin and the throne of Yin.

7. "Confucius said, 'T'ang and Yu resigned the throne to their worthy ministers, The sovereign of Hea and those of Yin and Chow transmitted it to their sons. The principle of righteousness was the same in all the cases.'

第七章 1. 萬章問曰。人有言。伊尹以割職要把湯。有諸。 2. 孟子曰。否。不然。伊尹耕於有莘之野。而樂堯舜之道焉。非其義也。非其道也。祿之以天下。弗顧也。繫馬千驄。弗視也。非其義也。非其道也。一介不以與人。一介不以取諸人。 3. 湯使人以幣聘之。囂囂然曰。我何以湯之聘幣為哉。我豈若處畎畝之中。由是以樂堯舜之道哉。 4. 湯三使往聘之。既而幡然改曰。與我處畎畝之中。由是以樂堯舜之道。吾豈若使是君為堯舜之君哉。吾豈若使是民為堯舜之民哉。吾豈若於吾身覩見之哉。 5. 天之生此民也。使先知覺後知。使先覺覺後覺也。子。天民之先覺者也。子將以斯道覺斯民也。非子覺之而誰也。 6. 思天下之民。匹夫匹婦。有不被堯舜之澤者。若己推而內之溝中。其自任以天下之重如此。故就湯而說之以伐夏救民。 7. 吾未聞枉己而正人者也。況辱己以正天下者乎。聖人之行。不同也。或遠或近。或去或不去。歸潔其身而已矣。 8. 吾聞其以堯舜之道要湯。未聞以割職也。 9. 伊訓曰。天誅造攻自牧宮。股載自亳。 Chap. vii. 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius.
saying, "People say that E Yin sought an introduction to T'ang by his knowledge of cookery. Was it so?"

2. Mencius replied, "No, it was not so. E Yin was a farmer in the lands of the prince of Sin, delighting in the principles of Yaou and Shun. In any matter contrary to the righteousness which they prescribed, or contrary to their principles, though he had been offered the empire, he would not have regarded it; though there had been yoked for him a thousand teams of horses, he would not have looked at them. In any matter contrary to the righteousness which they prescribed, or contrary to their principles, he would neither have given nor taken a single straw.

3. "T'ang sent persons with presents of silk to entreat him to enter his service. With an air of indifference and self-satisfaction he said, 'What can I do with those silks which T'ang invites me? Is it not best for me to abide in the channeled fields, and so delight myself with the principles of Yaou and Shun?'

4. "T'ang thrice sent messengers to invite him. After this, with the change of resolution displayed in his countenance, he spoke in a different style,—'Instead of abiding in the channeled fields and thereby delighting myself with the principles of Yaou and Shun, had I
not better make this prince a prince like Yaou or Shun and this people like the people of Yaou or Shun? Had I not better in my own person see these things for myself?

5. "'Heaven's plan in the production of mankind is this:—that they who are first informed should instruct those who are later in being informed, and they who first apprehend principles should instruct those who are slower to do so. I am one of Heaven's people who have first apprehended;—I will take these principles and instruct this people in them. If I do not instruct them, who will do so?"

6. "He thought that among all the people of the empire, even the private men and women, if there were any who did not enjoy such benefits as Yaou and Shun conferred, it was as if he himself pushed them into a ditch. He took upon himself the heavy charge of the empire in this way, and therefore he went to T'ang, and pressed upon him the subject of attacking Hea and saving the people.

7. "I have not heard of one who bent himself, and at the same time made others straight;—how much less could one disgrace himself, and thereby rectify the whole empire? The actions of the sages have been different. Some have kept remote from court, and some have drawn near to them; some have left their
offices, and some have not done so:—that to which those different courses all turn is simply the keeping of their persons pure.

8. “I have heard that E Yin sought an introduction to T‘ang by the doctrines of Yaou and Shun. I have not heard that he did so by his knowledge of cookery.

9. “In the ‘Instructions of E,’ it is said, ‘Heaven destroying Kee commenced attacking him in the palace of Muh. I commenced in Po.’”

Chap. VIII. 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius, saying, “Some say that Confucius, when he was in Wei, lived with the ulcer doctor, and when he was in Ts‘e, with the attendant, Tseih Hwan:—was it so?” Mencius replied, “No; it was not so. Those are the inventions of men fond of strange things.
2. "When he was in Wei, he lived with Yen Ch'ow-yew. The wives of the officer Me and Tsze-loo were sisters, and Me told Tsze-loo, 'If Confucius will lodge with me, he may attain to the dignity of a high noble of Wei.' Tsze-loo informed Confucius of this, and he said, 'That is as ordered by Heaven.' Confucius went into office according to propriety, and retired from it according to righteousness. In regard to his obtaining office or not obtaining it, he said, 'That is as ordered.' But if he had lodged with the attendant Tseih Hwan, that would neither have been according to righteousness, nor any ordering of Heaven.

3. "When Confucius, being dissatisfied in Loo and Wei, had left those states, he met with he attempt of Hwan, the Master of the Horse, of Sung, to intercept and kill him. At that time, though he was in circumstances of distress, he lodged with the city master Ching, who was toen a minister of Chow, the prince of Ch'in.

4. "I have heard that the characters of ministers about court may be discerned from those whom they entertain, and those of stranger officers, from those with whom they entertain, and those of stranger officers, from those with whom they lodge. If Confucius had lodged with the ulcer doctor, and with the
attendant Tseih Hwan, how could he have been Confucius?"

**Chap. ix.** 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius, "Some say that Pih-le He sold himself to a cattle keeper of Ts‘in, for the skins of five sheep, and fed his oxen, in order to find an introduction to the duke Muh of Ts‘in;—is this the case?" Mencius said, "No; it was not so. This story was invented by men fond of strange things.

2. "Pih-le He was a man of Yu. The people of Tsin, by the inducement of a gem of Chuy-keih, and four horses of the Keue breed, borrowed a passage through Yu to attack Kih. On that occasion, Kung Chi-k‘e remonstrated against granting their request, and Pih-le He did not remonstrate.

3. "When he knew that the duke of Yu was not to be remonstrated with, and, leaving
that state, went to Ts’in, he had reached the age of seventy. If by that time he did not know that it would be a mean-thing to seek an introduction to the duke Muh of Ts’in by feeding oxen, could he be called wise? But not remonstrating where it was of no use to remonstrate, could he be said not to be wise? Knowing that the duke of Yu would be ruined, and leaving him before that event, he cannot be said not to have been wise. Being then advanced in Ts’in, he knew that the duke Muh was one with whom he would enjoy a field for action, and became minister to him;—could he, acting thus, be said not to be wise? Having become chief minister of Ts’in, he made his prince distinguished throughout the empire, and worthy of being handed down to future ages;—could he have done this, if he had not been a man of talents and virtue? As to selling himself in order to accomplish all the aims of his prince, even a villager who had a regard for himself would not do such a thing, and shall we say that a man of talents and virtue did it?"

BOOK V

WAN CHANG PART II
Chap. 1. 1. Mencius said, "Pih-e would not allow his eyes to look on a bad sight, nor his ears to listen to a bad sound. He would not serve a prince whom he did not approve, nor command a people whom he did not esteem. In a time of good government he took office,
and on the occurrence of confusion he retired. He could not bear to dwell either in a court from which a lawless government emanated, or among lawless people. He considered his being in the same place with a villager, as if he were to sit amid mud and coals with his court robes and court cap. In the time of Chow he dwelt on the shores of the North Sea, waiting the purification of the empire. Therefore when men now hear the character of Pih-e, the corrupt become pure, and the weak acquire determination.

2. "E Yin said, 'Whom may I not serve? My serving him makes him my sovereign. What people may I not command? My commanding them makes them my people.' In a time of good government he took office, and when confusion prevailed, he also took office. He said, 'Heaven's plan in the production of mankind is this:—that they who are first informed should instruct those who are later in being informed, and they who first apprehend principles should instruct those who are slower in doing so. I am the one of Heaven's people who has first apprehended;—I will take these principles and instruct the people in them.' He thought that among all the people of the empire, even the common men and women, if there were any who did
not share in the enjoyment of such benefits as Yaou and Shun conferred, it was as if he himself pushed them into a ditch;—for he took upon himself the heavy charge of the empire.

3. "Hwuy of Lew-hea was not ashamed to serve an impure prince, nor did he think it low to be an inferior officer. When advanced to employment, he did not conceal his virtue, but made it a point to carry out his principles. When dismissed and left without office, he yet did not murmur. When straitened by poverty, he yet did not grieve. When thrown into the company of village people, he was quite at ease and could not bear to leave them. "He had a saying. 'You are you, and I am I. Although you stand by my side with breast and arms bare, or with your body naked, how can you defile me?' Therefore when men now hear the character of Hwuy of Lew-hea, the mean become generous, and the niggardly become liberal.

4. "When Confucius was leaving Ts'e, he strained off with his hand the water in which his rice was being rinsed, took the rice, and went away. When he left Loo, he said. 'I will set out by and by':—it was right he should leave the country of his parents in this way—When it was proper to go away quickly, he did so; when it was proper to delay, he did so; when
it was proper to keep in retirement, he did so; when it was proper to go into office, he did so:—this was Confucius.”

5. Mencius said, “Pih-e among the sages was the pure one; E Yin was the one most inclined to take office; Hwuy of Lew-hea was the accommodating one; and Confucius was the timeous one.

6. “In Confucius we have what is called a complete concert. A complete concert is when the large bell proclaims the commencement of the music, and the ringing stone proclaims its close. The metal sound commences the blended harmony of all the instruments, and the winding up with the stone terminates that blended harmony. The commencing that harmony is the work of wisdom. The terminating it is the work of sageness.

7. “As a comparison for wisdom, we may liken it to skill, and as a comparison for sageness, we may liken it to strength;—as in the case of shooting at a mark a thousand paces distant. That you reach it is owing to your strength, but that you hit the mark is not owing to your strength.”
Chap. II. I. Pih-kung E asked Mencius, saying, “What was the arrangement of dignities and emoluments determined by the house of Chow?”

2. Mencius replied, “The particulars of that arrangement cannot be learned, for the princes, disliking them as injurious to themselves, have all made away with the records of them. Still I have learned the general outline of them.

3. “The EMPEROR constituted one dignity; the KUNG one; the HOW one; the PIH one; and the TSZE and the NAN each one of equal rank.—altogether making five degrees of dignity. The SOVEREIGN again constituted
one dignity; the CHIEF MINISTER one; the GREAT OFFICERS one; the SCHOLARS OF THE FIRST CLASS one. THOSE OF THE MIDDLE CLASS one; and THOSE OF THE LOWEST CLASS one:—altogether making six degrees of dignity.

4. “To the emperor there was allotted a territory of a thousand li square. A Kung and a How had each a hundred li square. A Pih had seventy li, and a Tsze and a Nan had each fifty li. The assignments altogether were of four amounts. Where the territory did not amount to fifty li, the chief could not have access himself to the emperor. His land was attached to some How-ship and was called a Foo-YUNG.

5. “The chief ministers of the emperor received an amount of territory equal to that of a How; a great officer received as much as a Pih; and a scholar of the first class as much as a Tsze or a Nan.

6. In a great state, where the territory was a hundred li square, the sovereign had ten times as much income as the chief ministers; a chief minister four times as much as a great officer; a great officer twice as much as a scholar of the first class; a scholar of the first class twice as much as one of the middle; a scholar of the middle class twice as much as,
one of the lowest; the scholars of the lowest class, and such of the common people as were employed about the government offices, had the same emolument;—as much, namely, as was equal to what they would have made by tilling the fields.

7 "In a state of the next order, where the territory was seventy li square, the sovereign had ten times as much revenue as the chief minister; a chief minister three times as much as a great officer; a great officer twice as much as a scholar of the first class; a scholar of the first class twice as much as one of the middle; a scholar of the middle class twice as much as one of the lowest; the scholars of the lowest class, and such of the common people as were employed about the government offices, had the same emolument;—as much, namely, as was equal to what they would have made by tilling the fields.

8. "In a small state, where the territory was fifty li square, the sovereign had ten times as much revenue as the chief minister; a chief minister had twice as much as a great officer; a great officer twice as much as a scholar of the highest class; a scholar of the highest class twice as much as one of the middle; a scholar of the middle class twice as much as one of the lowest; scholars of the lowest class, and
such of the common people as were employed about the government offices, had the same
emolument;—as much, namely, as was equal to what they would have made by tilling the
fields.

9. “As to those who tilled the fields, each husbandman received a hundred mow. When
those mow were manured, the best husbandmen of the highest class supported nine individuals,
and those ranking next to them supported eight. The best husbandmen of the second class
supported seven individuals, and those ranking next to them supported six; while husbandmen
of the lowest class only supported five. The salaries of the common people who were
employed about the government offices were regulated according to these differences.”

第三章 1. 萬章問曰, 敬問友, 孟子曰, 不挾長, 不挾貴, 不挾
兄弟而友, 有之也, 有之也, 友其德也, 不可以有挾也。 2. 孟獻子
百乘之家也, 有友五人焉, 業正裘, 報仲, 其三人, 則子忘之矣,
獻子之與此五人者, 有之, 無獻子之家者也, 此五人者
亦有獻子之家, 則不與之友矣。 3. 非惟百乘之家爲然
也, 雖小國之君亦有之, 貧惠公曰, 吾於子思, 則師之矣, 吾
於顔般, 則友之矣, 王順長息, 則事我者也, 4. 非惟小國
之君為然也, 雖大國之君亦有之, 晉平公之於晉唐也, 入
云則入, 坐云則坐, 食云則食, 雖疏食菜羹, 案嘗不飽, 姑不
g敢不飽也, 然終於此而已矣, 幾與其天位也, 幾與治天職
也, 幾與食天祿 "，士之尊賢者也, 非王公之尊賢也。 5. 瑁
Chap. III. 1 Wan Chang asked Mencius, saying, "I venture to ask the principles of friendship." Mencius replied, "Friendship should be maintained without any presumption on the ground of one's superior age, or station, or the circumstances of his relatives. Friendship with a man is friendship with his virtue, and does not admit of assumptions of superiority.

2. "There was Mang Heen, chief of a family of a hundred chariots. He had five friends, namely Yo-ching K'ew, Muh Chung, and three others whose names I have forgotten. With those five men Heen maintained a friendship, because they thought nothing about his family. If they had thought about his family, he would not have maintained his friendship with them.

3. "Not only has the chief of a family of a hundred chariots acted thus. The same thing was exemplified by the sovereign of a small state. The duke Hwuy of Pe said, 'I treat Tsze-sze as my master, and Yen Pan as my friend. As to Wang Shun and Ch'ang Seih, they serve me.'

4. "Not only has the sovereign of a small state acted thus. The same thing has been
exemplified by the sovereign of a large state. There was the duko P'ing of Ts'in with Hae T'ang:—when T'ang told him to come into his house, he came; when he told him to be seated, he sat; when he told him to eat, he ate. There might only be coarse rice and soup of vegetables, but he always ate his fill, not daring to do otherwise. Here, however, he stopped, and went no farther. He did not call him to share any of Heaven's places, or to govern any of Heaven's offices, or to partake of any of Heaven's emoluments. His conduct was but a scholar's honoring virtue and talents, not the honoring them proper to a king or a duke.

5. "Shun went up to court and saw the emperor, who lodged him as his son-in-law in the second palace. The emperor also enjoyed there Shun's hospitality. Alternately he was host and guest. Here was the emperor maintaining friendship with a private man.

6. "Respect shown by inferiors to superiors is called giving to the noble the observance due to rank. Respect shown by superiors to inferiors is called giving honor to talents and virtue. The rightness in each case is the same."
Chap iv. 1. Wan Chang asked Mencius, saying, "I venture to ask what feeling of the mind is expressed in the presents of friendship." Mencius replied, "The feeling of respect."

2. "How is it," pursued Chang, "that the declining a present is accounted disrespectful?" The answer was, "When one of honorable rank presents a gift, to say in the mind, 'Was the way in which he got this righteous or not? I must know this before I can receive it';—this is deemed disrespectful, and therefore presents.
aro not declined."

3. *Wan Chang* asked again, "When one does not take on him in so many express words to refuse the gift, but having declined it in his heart, saying, 'It was taken by him unrighteously from the people,' and then assigns some other reason for not receiving it; —is not this a proper course?" *Mencius* said, "When the donor offers it on a ground of reason, and his manner of doing so is according to propriety; —in such a case *Confucius* would have received it."

4. *Wan Chang* said, "Here now is one who stops and robs people outside the gates of the city. He offers his gift on a ground of reason, and does so in a manner according to propriety; —would the reception of it so acquired by robbery be proper?" *Mencius* replied, "It would not be proper. In 'The Announcement to K'ang' it is said, 'When men kill others, and roll over their bodies to take their property, being reckless and fearless of death, among all the people there are none but detest them':—thus, such characters are to be put to death, without waiting to give them warning. *Yin* received this rule from *Hea*, and *Chow* received it from *Yin*. It cannot be questioned, and to the present day is clearly acknowledged. How can the gift
of a robber be received?"

5. Chang said, "The princes of the present day take from their people just as a robber despoils his victim. Yet if they put a good face of propriety on their gifts, then the superior man receives them. I venture to ask how you explain this." Mencius answered, "Do you think that, if there should arise a truly imperial sovereign, he would collect the princes of the present day, and put them all to death? Or would he admonish them, and then, on their not changing their ways, put them to death? Indeed, to call every one who takes what does not properly belong to him a robber, is pushing a point of resemblance to the utmost, and insisting on the most refined idea of righteousness. When Confucius was in office in Loo, the people struggled together for the game taken in hunting, and he also did the same. If that struggling for the captured game was proper, how much more may the gifts of the princes be received!"

6. Chang urged, "Then, are we to suppose that when Confucius held office it was not with the view to carry his doctrines into practice?" "It was with that view," Mencius replied, and Chang rejoined, "If the practice of his doctrines was his business, what had he to do with that struggling for the captured
game?" Mencius said, "Confucius first rectified his vessels of sacrifice according to the registers, and did not fill them so rectified with food gathered from every quarter." "But why did he not go away?" "He wished to make a trial of carrying his doctrines into practice. When that trial was sufficient to show they could be practiced, and they were still not practiced, then he went away, and thus it was that he never completed in any state a residence of three years.

7. "Confucius took office when he saw that the practice of his doctrines was likely; he took office when his reception was proper; he took office when he was supported by the state. In the case of his relation to Ke Hwan, he took office, seeing that the practice of his doctrines was likely: With the duke Ling of Wei he took office, because his reception was proper. With the duke Heaou of Wei he took office, because he was maintained by the state."

第五章 1. 孟子曰,仕,非為貪也,面有時乎為貪,妻妻非為養也,而有時乎為養。 2. 爲貪者,辭尊居卑,辭富居貧。 3. 辭尊居卑,辭富居貧,思乎宜乎,抱關擊柝。 4. 孔子嘗為委吏矣,曰,會計當而已矣,嘗為乘田矣,曰, 牛羊皆壯長而已矣。 5. 位卑而言高,罪也。立乎人之本朝,而道不行,恥也。

Chap. v. 1. Mencius said, "Office is not sought
on account of poverty, yet there are times when one seeks office on that account. Marriage is not entered into for the sake of being attended to by the wife, yet there are times when one marries on that account.

2. "He who takes office on account of his poverty must decline an honorable situation and occupy a low one; he must decline riches and prefer to be poor.

3. "What office will be in harmony with this declining an honorable situation, and occupying a low one, this declining riches and preferring to be poor? Such an one as that of guarding the gates, of beating the watchman's stick.

4. "Confucius was once keeper of stores, and he then said, 'My calculations must all be right. That is all I have to care about.' He was once in charge of the public fields, and he then said, 'The oxen and sheep must be fat and strong, and superior. That is all I have to care about.'

5. "When one is in a low situation, to speak of high matters is a crime. When a scholar stands in a prince's court, and his principles are not carried into practice, it is a shame to him."

第六章 1. 孟子曰: 士之不託諸侯, 何也? 孟子曰: 不敢也。諸侯失國, 而後託於諸侯, 禮也。士之託於諸侯, 非禮也。 2. 孟
Chap. vi. 1. Wan Chang said, "What is the reason that a scholar does not accept a stated support from a prince?" Mencius replied, "He does not presume to do so. When a prince loses his state, and then accepts a stated support from another prince, this is in accordance with propriety. But for a scholar to accept such support from any of the princes is not in accordance with propriety."

2. Wan Chang said, "If the prince send him a present of grain for instance, does he accept it?" "He accepts it," answered Mencius. "On what principle of rightness does he accept it?" "Why—the prince ought to assist the people in their necessities."
3. Chang pursued, "Why is it that the scholar will thus accept the prince's help, but will not accept his pay?" The answer was, "He does not presume to do so." "I venture to ask why he does not presume to do so." "Even the keepers of the gates, with their watchmen's sticks, have their regular offices for which they can take their support from the prince. He who without a regular office should receive the pay of the prince must be deemed disrespectful."

4. Chang asked, "If the prince sends a scholar a present, he accepts it. I do not know whether this present may be constantly repeated." Mencius answered, "There was the conduct of the duke Muh to Tsze-sze—He made frequent inquiries after Tsze-sze's health, and sent him frequent presents of cooked meat. Tsze-sze was displeased, and at last having motioned to the messenger to go outside the great door, he bowed his head to the ground with his face to the north, did obeisance, twice, and declined the gift, saying, 'From this time forth I shall know that the prince supports me as a dog or a horse.' And from that time a servant was no more sent with the presents. When a prince professes to be pleased with a man of talents and virtue, and can neither promote him to office, nor support him
proper way, can he be said to be pleased with him?"

5. Chang said, "I venture to ask how the sovereign of a state, when he wishes to support a superior man, must proceed, that he may be said to do so in the proper way?" Mencius answered: "At first, the present must be offered with the prince's commission, and the scholar making obeisance twice with his head bowed to the ground will receive it. But after this the storekeeper will continue to send grain, and the master of the kitchen to send meat, presenting it as if without the prince's express commission. Tsze-sze considered that the meat from the prince's caldron, giving him the annoyance of constantly doing obeisance, was not the way to support a superior man.

6. "There was Yaou's conduct to Shun:—He caused his nine sons to serve him, and gave him his two daughters in marriage; he caused the various officers, oxen and sheep, storehouses and granaries, all to be prepared to support Shun amid the channeled fields, and then he raised him to the most exalted situation. From this we have the expression—"The honoring of virtue and talents proper to a king or a duke.'"

第七章 1.萬章曰，敢問不見諸侯，何義也。孟子曰，在國曰，市井之臣，在野曰，草莽之臣，皆謂庶人，庶人不傳賈為臣，不敢見於諸侯，禮也。 2.萬章曰，庶人召之役，則往役，君欲
Chap. VII. 1. Wan Chang said, “I venture to ask what principle of righteousness is involved in a scholar’s not going to see the princes.” Mencius replied, “A scholar residing in the city, is called ‘a minister of the market place and well,’ and one residing in the country is called ‘a minister of the grass and plants.’ In both cases he is a common man, and it is the rule of propriety that common men, who have not presented the introductory present and
become ministers, should not presume to have interviews with the prince.”

2. Wan chang said, “If a common man is called to perform any service, he goes and performs it;—how is it that a scholar, when the prince, wishing to see him, calls him to his presence, refuses to go?” Mencius replied, “It is right to go and perform the service; it would not be right to go and see the prince.”

3. “And,” added Mencius, “on what account is it that the prince wishes to see the scholar?” “Because of his extensive information, or because of his talents and virtue,” was the reply. “If because of his extensive information,” said Mencius, “such a person is a teacher, and the emperor would not call him;—how much less may of the princes do so? If because of his talents and virtue, then I have not heard of any one wishing to see a person with those qualities, and calling him to his presence.

4 “During the frequent interviews of the duke Muh with Tsze-sze, he one day said to him, ‘Anciently, princes of a thousand chariots have yet been on terms of friendship with scholars;—what do you think of such an intercourse?’ Tsze-sze was displeased, and said, ‘The ancients have said, ‘The scholar should be served, how should they have merely said that he should be made a friend of?’”
When Tsze-sze was thus displeased, did he not say *within himself*,—'With regard to our stations, you are sovereign, and I am subject. How can I presume to be on terms of friendship with my sovereign? With regard to our virtue, you ought to make me your master. How may you be on terms of friendship with me?' Thus, when a prince of a thou and chariots sought to be on terms of friendship with a scholar, he could not obtain his wish:—how much less could he call him to his presence!

5. "The duke King of Ts‘e, once, when he was hunting, called his forester to him by a flag. The forester would not come, and the duke was going to kill him. With reference to this incident, Confucius said, 'The determined officer never forgets that his end may be in a ditch or a stream; the brave officer never forgets that he may lose his head.' What was in in the forester that Confucius thus approved? He approved his not going to the duke, when summoned by the article which was not appropriate to him.'

6. Chang said, "May I ask with what a forester should be summoned?" Mencius replied, "With a skin cap. A common man should be summoned with a plain banner; a scholar who has taken office, with one having
dragons embroidered on it; and a great officer, with one having feathers suspended from the top of the staff.

7. "When the forester was summoned with the article appropriate to the summoning of a great officer, he would have died rather than presume to go. If a common man were summoned with the article appropriate to the summoning of a scholar, how could he presume to go? How much more may we expect this refusal to go, when a man of talents and virtue is summoned in a way which is inappropriate to his character!

8. "When a prince wishes to see a man of talents and virtue, and does not take the proper course to get his wish, it is as if he wished him to enter his palace, and shut the door against him. Now, righteousness is the way, and propriety is the door, but it is only the superior man who can follow this way, and go out and in by this door. It is said in the 'Book of Poetry':

'The way to Chow is level like a whetstone,
And straight as an arrow
The officers tread it,
And the lower people see it.'"

9. "Wan Chang said, "When Confucius received the prince's message calling him, he
went without waiting for his carriage. And so—did Confucius do wrong?" Mencius replied, "Confucius was in office, and had its appropriate duties. And moreover, he was summoned on the business of his office."

第八章 1. 孟子謂萬章曰：一鄉之善士，斯友一鄉之善士；一國之善士，斯友一國之善士；天下之善士，斯友天下之善士。 2. 以友天下之善士爲未足，又尚論古人之言，頌其詩，讀其書，不知其人可乎，是以論其世也，是幼友也。

Chap viii. 1. Mencius said to Wan Chang, "The scholar whose virtue is most distinguished in a village shall make friends of all the virtuous scholars in the village. The scholar whose virtue is most distinguished throughout a state shall make friends of all the virtuous scholars of that state. The scholar whose virtue is most distinguished throughout the empire shall make friends of all the virtuous scholars of the empire.

2. "When a scholar feels that his friendship with all the virtuous scholars of the empire is not sufficient to satisfy him, he proceeds to ascend to consider the men of antiquity. He repeats their poems, and reads their books, and as he does not know what they were as men, to ascertain this, he considers their history. This is to ascend and make friends of the men of antiquity."
Chap ix.  1. The king Seuen of Ts'e asked about the office of chief ministers. Mencius said, "Which chief ministers is your majesty asking about?" "Are there differences among them?" inquired the king. "There are," was the reply. "There are the chief ministers who are noble and relatives of the prince, and there are those who are of a different surname." The king said, "I beg to ask about the chief ministers who are noble and relatives of the prince." Mencius answered, "If the prince have great faults, they ought to remonstrate with him, and if he do not listen to them after they have one so again and again, they ought to dethrone him."

2. The king on this looked moved, and changed countenance.

3. Mencius said, "Let not Your Majesty be offended. You asked me, and I dare not answer but according to truth."

4. The king's countenance became composed, and he then begged to ask about
chief ministers who were of a different surname from the prince. Mencius said, “When the prince has faults, they ought to remonstrate with him, and if he do not listen to them after they have done this again and again, they ought to leave the state.”

BOOK VI

KAOU TSZE  PART I

第一章 1. 吾子曰，性，猶杞柳也，義，猶桔槔也，以人性為仁義，猶以杞柳為桔槔。2. 孟子曰，子能順杞柳之性，而以爲桔槔乎，將戕賊杞柳，而後以爲桔槔也。如將戕賊杞柳而以爲桔槔，則亦將戕賊人以爲仁義與，率天下之人，而禍仁義者，必子之言夫。

Chap. 1. 1. The philosopher Kaou said, “Man’s nature is like the ke willow and righteousness is like a cup or a bowl. The fashioning benevolence and righteousness out of man’s nature is like the making cups and bowls from the ke willow.”

2. Mencius replied, “Can you, leaving untouched the nature of the willow, make with it cups and bowls? You must do violence and injury to the willow, before you can make cups and bowls with it. If you must do
violence and injury to the willow in order to make cups and bowls with it, *on your principles* you must in the same way do violence and injury to humanity in order to fashion from it benevolence and righteousness! Your words, alas! would certainly lead all men on to reckon benevolence and righteousness to be calamities."

第二章 1. 告子曰。性，猶湍水也。決諸西方則東流。決諸西方則西流。人性之無分於善不善也。猶水之無分於東西也。 2. 孟子曰。水信無分於東西。無分於上下乎。人性之善也。猶水之就下也。人無有不善。水無有不下。 3. 今夫水。搏而躍之。可使過灘。激而行之。可使在山。是豈水之性哉。其勢則然也。人之可使為不善。其性亦猶是也。  

Chap. 11. 1. The philosopher Kaou said, "Man's nature is like water whirling round in a corner. Open a passage for it to the east, and it will flow to the east; open a passage for it to the west, and it will flow to the west. Man's nature is indifferent to good and evil, just as the water is indifferent to the east and west."  

2. Mencius replied, "Water indeed _will_ flow indifferently to the east or west, but will it flow indifferently up or down? The tendency of man's nature to good is like the tendency of water to flow downwards. There are none but have this tendency to good, _just as all water flows downwards._  

3. "Now by striking water and causing it
to leap up, you may make it go over your forehead; and, by damming and leading it, you may force it up a hill;—but are such movements according to the nature of water? It is the force applied which causes them. When men are made to do what is not good, their nature is dealt with in this way.”

Chap. III. 1. The philosopher Kaou said, “Life is what is to be understood by nature.” 2. Mencius asked him, “Do you say that, by nature you mean life, just as you say that white is white?” “Yes; I do,” was the reply. Mencius added, “Is the whiteness of a white feather like that of white snow, and the whiteness of white snow like that of a white gem?” Kaou again said “Yes.” 3. “Very well,” pursued Mencius. “Is the nature of a dog like the nature of an ox, and the nature of an ox like the nature of a man?”

第四章 1. 告子曰，食色，性也。仁，內也，非外也。義，外也。非
內也。 2. 孟子曰，何以謂仁內義外也。曰，彼長，而我長之非有長於我也，猶彼白，而我自之，從其自於外也。故謂之
外也。 3. 曰，異於白馬之白也，無以提於白人之白也，不
識長馬之長也，無以異於長人之長與。且謂長者義乎，長
1. The philosopher Kaou said, “To enjoy food and delight in colors is nature. Benevolence is internal and not external; righteousness is external and not internal.”

2. Mencius asked him, “What is the ground of your saying that benevolence is internal and righteousness external?” He replied, “There is a man older than I, and I give honor to his age. It is not that there is first in me a principle of such reverence to age. It is just as when there is a white man, and I consider him white;—according as he is so externally to me. On this account, I pronounce of righteousness that it is external.”

3. Mencius said, “There is no difference between our pronouncing of a white horse to be white and our pronouncing a white man to be white. But is there no difference between the regard with which we acknowledge the age of an old horse and that with which we acknowledge the age of an old man? And what is it which is called righteousness—the fact of a man’s being old? or the fact of our giving honor to his age?”

4. Kaou said, “There is my younger
brother:—I love him. But the younger brother of a man of Ts‘in I do not love; that is, the feeling is determined by myself, and therefore I say that benevolence is internal. On the other hand, I give honor to an old man of Ts‘oo, and I also give honor to an old man of my own people: that is, the feeling is determined by the age, and therefore I say that righteousness is external.”

5. Mencius answered him, “Our enjoyment of meat roasted by a man of Ts‘in does not differ from our enjoyment of meat roasted by ourselves. Thus, what you insist on takes place also in the case of such things, and will you say likewise that our enjoyment of a roast is external?”

Chap. v. 1. The disciple Mang Ke asked Kung-too, saying, “On what ground is it said that righteousness is internal?”
2. Kung-too replied, "We then act out our feeling of respect, and therefore it is said to be internal."

3. The other objected, "Suppose the case of a villager older than your elder brother by one year, to which of them would you show the greater respect?" "To my brother," was the reply. "But for which of them would you first pour out wine at a feast?" "For the villager." Mang Ke argued, "Now your feeling of reverence rests on the one, and now the honor due to age is rendered to the other;—this is certainly determined by what is without, and does not proceed from within."

4. Kung-too was unable to reply, and told the conversation to Mencius. Mencius said, "You should ask him, 'Which do you respect most,—your uncle, or your younger brother?' He will answer, 'My uncle.' Ask him again, 'If your younger brother be personating a dead ancestor, to which do you show the greater respect,—to him or to your uncle?' He will say, 'To my younger brother.' You can go on, 'But where is the respect due as you said, to your uncle?' He will reply to this, 'I show the respect to my younger brother, because of the position which he occupies,' and you can likewise say, 'So my respect to the villager is because of the position which he occupies."
Ordinarily, my respect is rendered to my elder brother; for a brief season, on occasion, it is rendered to the villager.”

5. Mang Ke heard this and observed, “When respect is due to my uncle, I respect him, and when respect is due to my younger brother, I respect him;—the thing is certainly determined by what is without, and does not proceed from within.” Kung-too replied, “In winter we drink things hot, in summer we drink things cold; and so, on your principle, eating and drinking also depend on what is external!”

Chap. VI. 1. The disciple Kung-too said, “The philosopher Kaou says, ‘Man’s nature is neither
good nor bad.'

2. "Some say, 'Man's nature may be made to practice good, and it may be made to practice evil,' and accordingly, under Wan and Woo, the people loved what was good, while under Yew and Le, they loved what was cruel.'

3. "Some say, 'The nature of some is good, and the nature of others is bad.' Hence it was that under such a sovereign as Yaou there yet appeared Seang; that with such a father as Koo-sow there yet appeared Shun; and that with Chow for their sovereign, and the son of their elder brother besides, there were found K'e, the viscount of wei, and the prince Pe-kan.

4. "And now you say, 'The nature is good.' Then are all those wrong?"

5. Mencius said, "From the feelings proper to it, it is constituted for the practice of what is good. This is what I mean in saying that the nature is good.

6. "If men do what is not good, the blame cannot be imputed to their natural powers."

7. "The feeling of commiseration belongs to all men; so does that of shame and dislike; and that of reverence and respect; and that of approving and disapproving. The feeling of commiseration implies the principle of benevolence; that of shame an d dislike, the principle of righteousness; that of reverence and respect,
the principle of propriety; and that, approving and disapproving, the principle of knowledge. Benvolence, righteousness, propriety, and knowledge are not infused into us from without. We are certainly furnished with them. And a different view is simply from what of reflection. Hence it is said: 'Seek and you will find them. Neglect and you will lose them.' Men differ from one another in regard to them—some as much again as others, some five times as much, and some to an incalculable amount:—it is because they cannot carry out fully their natural powers.

8. 'It is said in the 'Book of Poetry':
   'Heaven, in producing mankind,
   Gave them their various faculties and relations with their specific laws.
   These are the invariable rules of nature for all to hold,
   And all love this admirable virtue.'
Confucius said, 'The marker of this ode knew indeed the principle of our nature!' We may thus see that every faculty and relation must have its law; and since there are invariable rules for all to hold, they consequently love this admirable virtue.'
Chap VII  1. Mencius said, "In good years the children of the people are most of them good, while in bad years the most of them abandon themselves to evil. It is not owing to their natural powers conferred by Heaven that they are thus different. The abandonment is owing to the circumstances through which they allow their minds to be ensnared and drowned in evil.

2. "There now is barley.—Let it be sown and covered up; the ground being the same, and the time of sowing likewise the same, it grows rapidly up, and when the full time is come, it is all found to be ripe. Although there may be inequalities of produce, that is
owing to the difference of the soil, as rich or poor, to the unequal nourishment afforded by the rains and dews, and to the different ways in which man has performed his business in reference to it.

3. "Thus all things which are the same in kind are like to one another,—why should we doubt in regard to man, as if he were a solitary exception to this? The sage and we are the same in kind.

4. "In accordance with this the scholar Lung said, 'If a man make hempen sandals without knowing the size of people's feet, yet I know that he will not make them like baskets.' Sandals are all like one another, because all men's feet are like one another.

5. "So with the mouth and flavors;—all mouths have the same relishes. Yih-ya only apprehended before me what my mouth relishes. Suppose that his mouth in its relish for flavors differed from that of other men, as is the case with dogs or horses which are not the same in kind with us, why should all men be found following Yih-ya in their relishes? In the matter of tastes the whole empire models itself after Yih-ya; that is, the mouths of all men are like one another.

3. "And so also it is with the ear. In the matter of sounds, the whole empire models
itself after the music master K'wang; that is, the ears of all men are like one another.

7 "And so also it is with the eye. In the case of Tsze-too, there is no man but would recognize that he was beautiful. Anyone who would not recognize the beauty of Tsze-too must have no eyes.

8. "Therefore I say,—Men's mouths agree in having the same relishes; their ears agree in enjoying the same sounds; their eyes agree in recognizing the same beauty:—shall their minds alone be without that which they similarly approve? What is it, then, of which they similarly approve? It is, I say, the principles of our nature, and the determinations of righteousness. The sages only apprehended before me that of which my mind approves along with other men. Therefore the principles of our nature and the determinations of righteousness agreeable to my mind, just as the flesh of grass and grain-fed animals is agreeable to my mouth."
THE WORKS OF MENCiUS

Chap. VIII. 1. Mencius said, "The trees of the New Mountain were once beautiful. Being situated, however, in the borders of a large state, they were hewn down with axes and bills;—and could they retain their beauty? Still through the activity of the vegetative life day and night, and the nourishing influence of the rain and dew, they were not without buds and sprouts springing forth, but then came the cattle and goats and browsed upon them. To these things is owing the bare and stripped appearance of the mountain, which when people see, they think it was never finely wooded. But is this the nature of the mountain?

2. "And so also of what properly belongs to man,—shall it be said that the mind of any man was without benevolence and righteousness? The way in which a man loses his proper goodness of mind is like the way in which the trees are denuded by axes and bills. Hewn down day after day, can it—the mind—retain its beauty? But there is a development of its life day and
night, and in the calm air of the morning, just between night and day, the mind feels in a degree those desires and aversions which are proper to humanity, but the feeling is not strong, and it is fettered and destroyed by what takes place during the day. This fettering taking place again and again; the restorative influence of the night is not sufficient to preserve the proper goodness of the mind; and when this proves insufficient for that purpose, the nature becomes not much different from that of the irrational animals, which when people see, they think that it never had those powers which I assert. But does this condition represent the feelings proper to humanity?

3. "Therefore, if it receive its proper nourishment, there is nothing which will not grow. If it lose its proper nourishment, there is nothing which will not decay away.

4. "Confucius said, 'Hold it fast, and it remains with you. Let it go, and you lose it. Its outgoing and incoming cannot be defined as to time or place.' It is the mind of which this is said!"
Chap. ix. 1. Mencius said, "It is not to be wondered at that the king is not wise!

2. "Suppose the case of the most easily growing thing in the world;—if you let it have one day's genial heat, and then expose it for ten days to cold, it will not be able to grow. It is but seldom that I have an audience of the king, and when I retire, there come all those who act upon him like the cold. Though I succeed in bringing out some buds of goodnes, of what avail is it!

3. "Now chess playing is but a small art, but without his whole mind being given, and his will bent to it, a man cannot succeed at it. Chess Ts'ew is the best chess player in all the kingdom. Suppose that he is teaching two men to play.—The one gives to the subject his whole mind and bends to it all his will, doing nothing but listening to Chess Ts'ew. The other, although he seems to be listening to him, has his whole mind running on a swan which he thinks is approaching, and wishes to bend his bow, adjust the string to the arrow, and shoot it. Although he is learning along with the other, he does not come up to him. Why?—because his intelligence is not equal? Not so."
Chap. x. 1. Mencius said, "I like fish and I also like bear's paws. If I cannot have the two together, I will let the fish go, and take the bear's paws. So, I like life, and I also like righteousness. If I cannot keep the two together, I will let life go and choose righteousness.

2. "I like life indeed, but there is that which I like more than life, and therefore, I will not seek to possess it by any improper ways. I dislike death indeed, but there is that which
I dislike more than death, and therefore there are occasions when I will not avoid danger.

3. "If among the things which man likes there were nothing which he liked more than life, why should he not use every means by which he could preserve it? If among the things which man dislikes there were nothing which he disliked more than death, why should he not do everything by which he could avoid danger?

4. "There are cases when men by a certain course might preserve life, and they do not employ it; when by certain things they might avoid danger, and they will not do them.

5. "Therefore, men have that which they like more than life, and that which they dislike more than death. They are not men of distinguished talents and virtue only who have this mental nature. All men have it; what belongs to such men is simply that they do not lose it.

6. "Here are a small basket of rice and a platter of soup, and the case is one in which the getting them will preserve life, and the want of them will be death;—if they are offered with an insulting voice, even a tramp will not receive them, or if you first tread upon them, even a beggar will not stoop to take them.

7. "And yet a man will accept of ten
thousand chung, without any consideration of propriety or righteousness. What can the ten thousand chung add to him? When he takes them, is it not that he may obtain beautiful mansions, that he may secure the services of wives and concubines, or that the poor and needy of his acquaintance may be helped by him?

8. "In the former case the offered bounty was not received, though it would have saved from death, and now the emolument is taken for the sake of beautiful mansions. The bounty that would have preserved from death was not received, and the emolument is taken to get the service of wives and concubines. The bounty that would have saved from death was not received, and the emolument is taken that one's poor and needy acquaintance may be helped by him. Was it then not possible likewise to decline this? This is a case of what is called—'Losing the proper nature of one's mind.'"

第十一章 1. 孟子曰,仁,人心也,義,人路也. 2. 舍其路而弗由,放其心而不知求,哀哉. 3. 人有雞犬放,則知求之,有放心而不知求. 4. 學問之道無他,求其放心而已矣.

Chap. xI. 1. Mencius said, "Benevolence is man's mind, and righteousness is man's path."
2. "How lamentable is it to neglect the path and not pursue it, to lose this mind and not know to seek it again!"
3. "When men's fowls and dogs are lost, they know to seek for them again, but they lose their mind, and do not know to seek for it.

4. "The great end of learning is nothing else but to seek for the lost mind."

Chap. xli. 1. Mencius said, "Here is a man whose fourth finger is bent and cannot be stretched out straight. It is not painful, nor does it incommode his business, and yet if there be any one who can make it straight, he will not think the way from Ts'in to Ts'oo far to go to him:—because his finger is not like the finger of other people.

2. "When a man's finger is not like those of other people, he knows to feel dissatisfied, but if his mind be not like that of other people, he does not know to feel dissatisfaction. This is called—'Ignorance of the relative importance of things.'"
Chap. xiii. Mencius said, "Anybody who wishes to cultivate the l'ung or the tsze, which may be grasped with both hands, perhaps with one, knows by what means to nourish them. In the case of their own persons, men do not know by what means to nourish them. Is it to be supposed that their regard of their own persons is inferior to their regard for a l'ung or a tsze? Their want of reflection is extreme."

第十四章 1. 孟子曰。人之於身也。棄所愛。棄五愛。則棄所養也。無尺寸之病不愛焉。則無尺寸之病不養也。所以考其善不善者。豈有他哉。於己取之而已矣。 2. 體有貴賤。有用小大。無以小害大。無以賤害貴。養其小者為小人。養其大者為大人。 3. 今有場師。舍其桔柵。養其麤肆。則為賤場師矣。 4. 養其一指。而失其肩背。而不知也。則為瘖疾人也。 5. 飲食之人。則人。(人)賤之矣。為其養小以失大也。 6. 飲食之人。無有失也。則口腹豈適為尺寸之病哉

Chap. xiv. 1. Mencius said, "There is no part of himself which a man does not love, and as he loves all, so he must nourish all. There is not an inch of skin which he does not love, and so there is not an inch of skin which he will not nourish. For examining whether his way of nourishing be good or not, what other rule is there but this, that he determine by reflecting on himself where it should be applied?

2. "Some parts of the body are noble, and some ignoble; some great, and some small.
The great must not be injured for the small, nor the noble for the ignoble. He who nourishes the little belonging to him is a little man, and he who nourishes the great is a great man.

3. "Here is a plantation keeper, who neglects his *wool* and *keen*, and cultivates his sour wild date trees;—he is a poor plantation keeper.

4. "He who nourishes one of his fingers, neglecting his shoulders or his back, without knowing that he is doing so, is a man who resembles a hurried wolf.

5. "A man who only eats and drinks is counted mean by others;—because he nourishes what is little to the neglect of what is great.

6. "If a man, fond of his eating and drinking, were not to neglect what is of more importance, how should his mouth and belly be considered as no more than an inch of skin?"

**Chap. xv.** 1. The disciple Kung-too said, "All are equally men, not some are great men, and
some are little men;—how is this?" Mencius replied, "Those who follow that part of themselves which is great are great men; those who follow that part which is little are little men."

2. Kung-too pursued, "All are equally men, but some follow that part of themselves which is great, and some follow that part which is little;—how is this?" Mencius answered, "The senses of hearing and seeing do not think, and are obscured by external things. When one thing comes into contact with another, as a matter of course, it leads it away. To the mind belongs the office of thinking. By thinking, it gets the right view of things, by neglecting to think, it fails to do this. These—the senses and the mind—are what Heaven has given to us. Let a man first stand fast in the supremacy of the nobler part of his constitution, and the inferior part will not be able to take it from him. It is simply this which makes the great man."

第十六章 1. 孟子曰, 有天爵者, 有人爵者, 仁, 義, 忠, 信, 樂善不倦, 此天爵也, 公, 卿, 夫, 此人爵也. 2. 古之人, 修其天爵, 而人爵從之. 3. 今之人, 修其天爵, 以索人爵, 既得人爵, 而棄其天爵, 則惑之甚者也. 終亦必亡而已矣.

Chap. XVI. 1. Mencius said, "There is a nobility of Heaven, and there is a nobility of
man. Benevolence, righteousness, self-consecration, and fidelity, with unwearied joy in these virtues;—these constitute the nobility of Heaven. To be a kung, a k'ing, or a tafoo,—this constitutes the nobility of man.

2. "The men of antiquity cultivated their nobility of Heaven, and the nobility of man came to them in its train.

3. "The men of the present day cultivate their nobility of Heaven in order to seek for the nobility of man, and when they have obtained that, they throw away the other:—their delusion is extreme. The issue is simply this that they must lose that nobility of man as well."

Chap. XVII. 1. Mencius said, "To desire to be honored is the common mind of men. And all men have in themselves that which is truly honorable. Only they do not think of it.

2. "The honor which men confer is not good honor. Those whom Chaou the Great ennobles he can make mean ag in.

3. "It is said in the 'Book of Poetry,
‘He has filled us with his wine,
He has satiated us with his goodness.’

‘Satiated us with his goodness,’ that is, satiated us with benevolence and righteousness, and he who is so, consequently, does not wish for the fat meat and fine millet of men. A good reputation and farreaching praise fall to him, and he does not desire the elegant embroidered garments of men.’

第十八章 1. 孟子曰. 仁之勝不仁也. 猶水勝火, 今之為仁者. 猶以一杯水, 救一車薪之火也, 不熄, 則謂之水不勝火, 此又與於不仁之甚者也。2. 亦終必亡而已矣。

Chap. xviii. 1. Mencius said, “Benevolence subdues its opposite just as water subdues fire. Those, however, who nowadays practice benevolence do it as if with one cup of water they could save a whole wagonload of fuel which was on fire, and when the flames were not extinguished, were to say that water cannot subdue fire. This conduct, moreover, greatly encourages those who are not benevolent.

2. “The final issue will simply be this—the lose of that small amount of benevolence.”

第十九章 孟子曰. 五穀者, 種之美者也. 莫為不熟, 不如薑稷. 夫仁, 亦在乎熟之而已矣。

Chap. xix. Mencius said, “Of all seeds the best are the five kinds of grain, yet if they be not ripe, they are not equal to the icago or the
pae. So the value of benevolence depends entirely on its being brought to maturity."

第廿章 1. 孟子曰，羿之教人射，必至於彀。學者亦必志於彀。 2. 大匠誨人，必以規矩，學者亦必以規矩。

Chap. xx. 1. Mencius said, "E, ik teaching men to shoot, made it a rule to draw the bow to the full, and his pupils also did the same.
2. "A master workman, in teaching others, uses the compass and square, and his pupils do the same."

BOOK VI
KAOU TSZE. PART II
告乎章句下

第一章 1. 任人有問屋廬子曰，禮，與食，執重，曰，禮重。 2. 色，與禮，執重，曰，禮重。 3. 曰，以禮食，則飢而死，不以禮食，則得食，必以禮乎，親迎，則得妻，不親迎，則不得妻，必親迎乎。 4. 屋廬子不能對，明日之鉅，以告孟子。孟子曰，於笞也何有？ 5. 不揣其本，而齊其末，方寸之木，可使高於岑樓。 6. 金重於羽者，豈謂一鈞金，與一鈞羽之謂哉？ 7. 取食之重者，與禮之輕者，而比之，奚翅食重，取色之重者，與禮之輕者，而比之，奚翅色重。 8. 往應之曰，縉兄之髪，而奪之食則得食，不縉，則不得食，則將縉之乎，踰東家牆。而攘其處子，則得妻，不攘，則不得妻，則將攘之乎。

Chap. 1. 1. A man of Jin asked the disciple
Uh-loo, saying, "Is an observance of the rules of propriety in regard to eating, or the eating, the more important?" The answer was, "The observance of the rules of propriety is the more important."

2. "Is the gratifying the appetite of sex, or the doing so only according to the rules of propriety, the more important?" The answer again was, "The observance of the rules of propriety in the matter is the more important."

3. The man pursued, "If the result of eating only according to the rules of propriety will by death by starvation, while by disregarding those rules we may get food, must they still be observed in such a case? If according to the rule that he shall go in person to meet his wife a man cannot get married, while by disregarding that rule he may get married, must he still observe the rule in such a case?"

4. Uh-loo was unable to reply to these questions, and the next day he went to Tsow, and told them to Mencius. Mencius said, "What difficulty is there in answering these inquiries?"

5. "If you do not adjust them at their lower extremities, but only put their tops on a level, a piece of wood an inch square may be made to be higher than the pointed peak of a high building."
6. "Gold is heavier than feathers;—but does that saying have reference, on the one hand, to a single clasp of gold, and, on the other, to a wagonload of feathers?"

7. "If you take a case where the eating is of the utmost importance and the observing the rules of propriety is of little importance, and compare the things together, why stop with saying merely that the eating is more important? So, taking the case where the gratifying the appetite of sex is of the utmost importance and the observing the rules of propriety is of little importance, why stop with merely saying that the gratifying the appetite is the more important?"

8. "Go and answer him thus, 'If, by twisting your elder brother's arm, and snatching from him what he is eating, you can get food for yourself, while, if you do not do so, you will not get anything to eat, will you so twist his arm? If by getting over your neighbor's wall, and dragging away his virgin daughter, you can get a wife, while if you do not do so, you will not be able to get a wife, will you so drag her away?'"
Chap. II. 1. Keaou of Tsaou asked Mencius, saying, "It is said, 'All men may be Yaous and Shuns';—is it so?" Mencius replied, "It is."

2. Keaou went on, "I have heard that King Wan was ten cubits high, and T'ang nine. Now I am nine cubits four inches in height. But I can do nothing but eat my millet. What am I to do to realize that saying?"

3. Mencius answered him, "What has this—the question of size—to do with the matter? It all lies simply in acting as such. Here is a man, whose strength was not equal to lift a duckling:—he was then a man of no strength. But to-day he says, 'I can lift 3,000 catties' weight,' and he is a man of strength. And so, he who can lift the weight which Woo Hwo lifted is just another Woo Hwo. Why should a man make a want of ability the subject of his grief? It is only that he will not do the
thing.

4. "To walk slowly, keeping behind his elders, is to perform the part of a younger. To walk quickly and precede his elders, is to violate the duty of a younger brother. Now, is it what a man cannot do—to walk slowly? It is what he does not do. The course of Yaou and Shun was simply that of filial piety and fraternal duty.

5. "Do you wear the clothes of Yaou, repeat the words of Yaou, and do the actions of Yaou, and you will just be a Yaou. And, if you wear the clothes of Kee, repeat the words of Kee, and do the actions of Kee, you will just be a Kee."

6. Keaou said, "I shall be having an interview with the prince of Tsow, and can ask him to let me have a house to lodge in. I wish to remain here, and receive instruction at your gate."

7. Mencius replied, "The way of truth is like a great road. It is not difficult to know it. The evil is only that men will not seek it. Do you go home and search for it, and you will have abundance of teachers."
1. Kung-sun Ch'ow asked about an opinion of the scholar Kaou, saying, "Kaou observed, 'The Seaou P'wan is the ode of a little man.'" Mencius asked, "Why did he say so?" "Because of the murmuring which it expresses," was the reply.

2. Mencius answered, "How stupid was that old Kaou in dealing with the ode! There is a man here, and a native of Yue bends his bow to shoot him. I will advise him not to do so, but speaking calmly and smilingly;—for no other reason but that he is not related to me. But if my own brother be bending his bow to shoot the man, then I will advise him not to do so, weeping and crying the while;—for no other reason than that he is related to me. The dissatisfaction expressed in the Seaou P'wan is the working of relative affection, and that affection shows benevolence. Stupid indeed was old Kaou's criticism on the ode."

3. Ch'ow then said, "How is it that there is no dissatisfaction expressed in the K'ae Fung?"

4. Mencius replied, "The parent's fault referred to in the K'ae Fung is small; that
referred to in the Seaou P‘wan is great. Where the parent’s fault was great, not to have murmured on account of it would have increased the want of natural affection. Where the parent’s fault was small, to have murmured on account of it would have been to act like water which frets and foams about a stone that interrupts its course. To increase the want of natural affection would have been unfilial, and to fret and foam in such a manner would also have been unfilial.

5. “Confucius said, ‘Shun was indeed perfectly filial! And yet, when he was fifty, he was full of longing desire about his parents.’”

第四章  1. 宋咳將之楚,孟子遇於石丘。  2. 日,先生將何之。  3. 日,吾聞秦楚銑兵,我將見楚王,說而罷之,楚王不悅,我將見秦王,說而罷之,二王,我將有所遇焉。  4. 日,軔也,請無問其詳,願問其指,說之,將何如。曰,我將言其不利也。日,先生之志則大矣,先生之號則不可。  5. 先生以利,説秦楚之王,秦楚之王,悦於利,以罷三軍之師,是三軍之士,樂謂而悦於利也。為人臣者,懷利以事其君,為人子者,懷利以事其父,為人弟者,懷利以事其兄,是君臣,父子,兄弟,終去仁義,懷利以相接,然而不亡者,未之有也。  6. 先生以仁義説秦楚之王,秦楚之王,悦於仁義,而罷三軍之師,是三軍之士,樂罷而悦於仁義也。為人臣者,懷仁義以事其君,為人子者,懷仁義以事其父,為人弟者,懷仁義以事其兄,是君臣,父子,兄弟,去利,懷仁義以相接也,然而不王者,未
Chap. iv. 1. Sung K'ang being about to go to Ts'oo, Mencius met him in Shih-k'ew.

2. "Master, where are you going?" asked Mencius.

3. K'ang replied, I have heard that Ts'in and Ts'oo are fighting together, and I am going to see the king of Ts'oo and persuade him to cease hostilities. If he shall not be pleased with my advice, I shall go to see the king of Ts'in, and persuade him in the same way. Of the two kings I shall surely find that I can succeed with one of them."

4. Mencius said, "I will not venture to ask about the particulars, but I should like to hear the scope of your plan. What course will you take to try to persuade them?" K'ang answered, "I will tell them how unprofitable their course is to them." "Master." said Mencius, "your aim is great, but your argument is not good.

5. "If you, starting from the point of profit, offer your persuasive counsels to the kings of Ts'in and Ts'oo, and if those kings are pleasid with the consideration of profit so as to stop the movements of their armies, then all belonging to those armies will rejoice in the cessation of war, and find their pleasure in the pursuit of profit. Ministers will serve
their sovereign for the profit of which they cherish the thought; sons will serve their fathers, and younger brothers will serve their elder brothers, from the same consideration:—and the issue will be, that, abandoning benevolence and righteousness, sovereign and minister, father and son, younger brother and elder, will carry on all their intercourse with this thought of profit cherished in their breasts. But never has there been such a state of society, without ruin being the result of it.

6. "If you, starting from the ground of benevolence and righteousness, offer your counsels to the kings of Ts‘in and Ts‘oo, and if those kings are pleased with the consideration of benevolence and righteousness so as to stop the operations of their armies, then all belonging to those armies will rejoice in the stopping from war, and find their pleasure in benevolence and righteousness. Ministers will serve their sovereign, cherishing the principles of benevolence and righteousness; sons will serve their fathers, and younger brothers will serve their elder brothers, in the same way:—and so, sovereign and minister, father and son, elder brother and younger, abandoning the thought of profit, will cherish the principles of benevolence and righteousness, and carry on all their intercourse upon them. But never
has there been such a state of society, without the state where it prevailed rising to imperial sway. Why must you use that word 'profit'?

第五章 1. 孟子居鄒，季任為任處守，以幣交，受之而不報，處於平陸，儲子為相，以幣交，受之而不報。 2. 他日，由鄒之任，見季子，由平陸之齊，不見儲子，屋廬子喜曰，連得聞矣。 3. 問曰，夫子之任，見季子，之齊，不見儲子，爲其爲相與。 4. 曰，非也，書曰，享，多儀，儀不及物，曰，不享。 惟不役志於享。 5. 爲其不成享也。 6. 屋廬子悅，或問之，屋廬子曰，季子不得之鄒，儲子得之平陸。

Chap. v. 1. When Mencius was residing in Tsow, the younger brother of the chief of Jin, who was guardian of Jin at the time, paid his respects to him by a present of silks, which Mencius received, not going to acknowledge it. When he was sojourning in P'ing-luh, Ch'oo, who was prime minister of the state, sent him a similar present, which he received in the same way.

2. Subsequently, going from Tsow to Jin, he visited the guardian, but when he went from P'ing-luh to the capital of Ts'e, he did not visit the minister Ch'oo. The disciple Uh-loo was glad, and said, "I have got an opportunity to obtain some instruction."

3. He asked accordingly, "Master, when you went to Jin, you visited the chief's brother, and when you went to Ts'e, you did not visit
Ch'oo. Was it not because he is only the minister?

4. Mencius replied, "No. It is said in the 'Book of History,' 'In presenting an offering to a superior, most depends on the demonstrations of respect. If those demonstrations are not equal to the things offered, we say there is no offering, that is, there is no act of the will in presenting the offering.'

5. "This is because the things so offered do not constitute an offering to a superior."

6. Uh-loo was pleased, and when someone asked him what Mencius meant, he said, "The younger of Jin could not go to Tsow, but the minister Ch'oo might have gone to Ping-lub.

第六章 1.淳于髡曰,先名實者,為人也,後名實者,自為也,夫子在三卿之中,名實未加於上下,而去之,仁者,固如此乎?

2. 孟子曰,居下位,不以賢事不肖者,伯夷也,五就湯,五就桀者,伊尹也,不惡污君,不辭小官者,柳下惠也,三子者,不同道,其趨一也,一者,何也,曰,仁也,君子亦仁而已矣,何必同. 3. 曰,魯繆公之時,公儀子為政,子柳子思為臣,魯之削也,滋甚,若是乎,賢者之無益於國也. 4. 曰,處不用百里奚而亡,秦穆公用之而霸,不用賢則亡,何可得與?

5. 曰,昔者,聖處於滇,而河西著謁,麟駒處於高唐,而齊有善歌舞,華周杞梁之妻,善哭其夫,而變國俗,有諸內,必形諸外,為其事,而無其功者,髡未嘗視之也,是故無賢者也,有,則髡必識之.

6. 曰,孔子為魯司寇,不用,從而祭,燔肉
Chap. vi. 1. Shun-yu K'wan said, "He who makes fame and meritorious services his first objects, acts with a regard to others. He who makes them only secondary objects, acts with a regard to himself. You, master, were ranked among the three chief ministers of the state, but before your fame and services had reached either to the prince or the people, you have left your place. Is this indeed the way of the benevolent?"

2. Mencius replied, "There was Pih-e;—he abode in an inferior situation, and would not, with his virtue, serve a degenerate prince. There was E Yin;—he five times went to T'ang, and five times went to Kee. There was Hwuy of Lew-hea;—he did not disdain to serve a vile prince, nor did he decline a small office. The courses pursued by those three worthies were different, but their aim was one. And what was their one aim? We must answer—'To be perfectly virtuous.' And so it is simply after this that superior men strive. Why must they all pursue the same course?"

3. K'wan pursued, "In the time of the duke Muh of Loo, the government was in the hands of Kung-e, while Tsze-lew and Tsze-sze were
ministers. And yet, the dismemberment of Loo then increased exceedingly. Such was the case, a specimen how your men of virtue are of no advantage to a kingdom!"

4. Mencius said, "The prince of Yu did not use Pih-le He, and thereby lost his state. The duke Muh of Ts'in used him, and became chief of all the princes. Ruin is the consequence of not employing men of virtue and talents;—how can it rest with dismemberment merely?"

5. K'wan urged again, "Formerly, when Wang P'aon dwelt on the K'e, the people on the west of the Yellow River all became skilful at singing in his abrupt manner. When Meen K'eu lived in Kaou-t'ang, the people in the parts of Ts'ê on the west became skilful at singing in his prolonged manner. The wives of Hwa Chow and Ke Leang bewailed their husbands so skilfully, that they changed the manners of the state. When there is the gift within, it manifests itself without. I have never seen the man who could do the deeds of a worthy, and did not realize the work of one. Therefore there are now no men of talents and virtue. If there were, I should know them."

6. Mencius answered, "When Confucius was chief minister of justice in Loo, the prince came not to follow his counsels. Soon after was the solstitial sacrifice, and when a part of
the flesh presented in sacrifice was not sent to him, he went away even without taking off his cap of ceremony. Those who did not know him supposed it was on account of the flesh. Those who knew him supposed that it was on account of the neglect of the usual ceremony. The fact was, that Confucius wanted to go away on occasion of some small offense, not wishing to do so without some apparent cause. All men may not be expected to understand the conduct of a superior man.”

第七章 1. 孟子曰，五霸者，三王之罪人也，今之諸侯，五霸之罪人也，今之大夫，今之諸侯之罪人也。 2. 天子适諸侯，曰巡狩，諸侯朝於天子，曰述职。春省耕，而補不足，秋省斂，而助不給，入其疆，土地辟，田野治，養老尊賢，俊傑在位，則有慶，慶以地，入其疆，土地荒蕪，遺老失賢，掊克在位，則有讓，一不朝，則輕其爵，再不朝，則削其地，三不朝，則六師移之，是故天子討而不伐，諸侯伐而不討。五霸者，握諸侯以伐諸侯者也，故曰，五霸者，三王之罪人也。 3. 五霸桓公為盛，葵丘之會諸侯，束牲載書而不歃血，初命曰，誅不孝，無易樹子，無以妾為妻，再命曰，尊賢育才，以彰有德，三命曰，敬老慈幼，無忘賓旅，四命日，士無世官，官事無攝，取士必得，無專殺大夫，五命日，無曲防，無遏虜，無封而不告，曰，凡我同盟之人，既盟之俊，言歸于好，今之諸侯，皆犯此五禁，故曰，今之諸侯，五霸之罪人也。 4. 長君之惡，其罪小，逢君之惡，其罪大，今之大夫，皆逢君之惡，故曰，今之大夫，今之諸侯之罪人也。
Chap. vii. 1. Mencius said, 'The five chiefs of the princes were sinners against the three kings. The princes of the present day are sinners against the five chiefs. The great officers of the present day are sinners against the princes.

2. "The emperor visited the princes, which was called 'a tour of inspection.' The princes attended at the court of the emperor, which was called 'giving a report of office.' It was a custom in the spring to examine the plowing, and supply any deficiency of seed, and in autumn to examine the reaping, and assist where there was a deficiency of the crop. When the emperor entered the boundaries of a state, if the new ground was being reclaimed, and the old fields well cultivated; if the old were nourished and the worthy honored; and if men of distinguished talents were placed in office: then the prince was rewarded,—rewarded with an addition to his territory. On the other hand, if, on entering a state, the ground was found left wild or overrun with weeds; if the old were neglected and the worthy unhonored; and if the offices were filled with hard taxgatherers: then the prince was reprimanded. If a prince once omitted his attendance at court, he was punished by degradation of rank; if he did so a second time, he was deprived of a portion of his
territory; if he did so a third time, the imperial forces were set in motion, and he was removed from his government. Thus the emperor commanded the punishment, but did not himself inflict it, while the princes inflicted the punishment, but did not command it. The five chiefs, however, dragged the princes to punish other princes, and hence I say that they were sinners against the three kings.

3. "Of the five chiefs the most powerful was the duke Hwan. At the assembly of the princes in K'wei-k'ew, he bound the victim and placed the writing upon it, but did not slay it to smear their mouths with the blood. The first injunction in their agreement was,—'Slay the unfilial; change not the son who has been appointed heir; exalt not a concubine to the rank of wife.' The second was,—'Honor the worthy, and maintain the talented, to give distinction to the virtuous.' The third was,—'Respect the old, and be kind to the young. Be not forgetful of strangers and travelers.' The fourth was,—'Let not offices be hereditary, nor let officers be pluralists. In the selection of officers let the object be to get the proper men. Let not a ruler take it on himself to put to death a great officer.' The fifth was, —'Follow no crooked policy in making embankments. Impose no restrictions on the
the sale of grain. Let there be no promotions without *first* announcing them to the emperor.* It was *then* said, 'All we who have united in this agreement shall hereafter maintain amicable relations.' The princes of the present day all violate these five prohibitions, and therefore I say that the princes of the present day are sinners against the five chiefs.

4. "The crime of him who connives at, and aids, the wickedness of his prince is small, but the crime of him who anticipates and excites that wickedness is great. The officers of the present day all go to meet their sovereigns' wickedness, and therefore I say that the great officers of the present day are sinners against the princes."

Chap. VIII. 1 The prince of Loo wanted to make the minister Shin commander of the
army

2. Mencius said, "To employ an uninstructed people in war may be said to be destroying the people. A destroyer of the people would not have been tolerated in the times of Yaou and Shun.

3. "Though by a single battle you should subdue Ts'e, and get possession of Nan-yang, the thing ought not to be done."

4. Shin changed countenance, and said in displeasure, "This is what I, Kuh-le, do not understand."

5. Mencius said, "I will lay the case plainly before you. The territory appropriated to the emperor is one thousand li square. Without a thousand li, he would not have sufficient for his entertainment of the princes. The territory appropriated to a How is one hundred li square. Without one hundred li, he would not have sufficient wherewith to observe the statutes kept in his ancestral temple.

6. "When Chow-kung was invested with the principality of Loo, it was a hundred li square. The territory was indeed enough, but it was not more than one hundred li. When T'ae-kung was invested with the principality of Ts'e, it was one hundred li square. The territory was indeed enough, but it was not more than one hundred li."
3. "In a country of ten thousand families, would it do to have only one potter?" Kwei replied, "No. The vessels would not be enough to use."

4. Mencius went on, "In Mih all the five kinds of grain are not grown; it only produces the millet. There are no fortified cities, no edifices, no ancestral temples, no ceremonies of sacrifice; there are no princes requiring presents and entertainments; there is no system of officers with their various subordinates. On these accounts a tax of one twentieth of the produce is sufficient there.

5. "But now it is the Middle Kingdom that we live in. To banish the relationships of men, and have no superior men;—how can such a state of things be thought of?

6. "With but few potters a kingdom cannot subsist;—how much less can it subsist without men of a higher rank than others?

7. "If we wish to make the taxation lighter than the system of Yaou and Shun, we shall just have a great Mih and a small Mih. If we wish to make it heavier, we shall just have the great Kee and the small Kee."
benevolence, to seek to enrich him is to enrich a Kee.

2. "Or they will say, 'We can for our sovereign form alliances with other states, so that our battles must be successful.' Such persons are nowadays called 'good ministers,' but anciently were called 'robbers of the people.' If a sovereign follows not the right way, nor has his mind directed to benevolence, to seek to enrich him is to enrich a Kee.

3. "Although a prince, pursuing the path of the present day, and not changing its practices, were to have the empire given to him, he could not retain it for a single morning."

第十章 1. 白圭曰，吾欲二十而取一，何如。 2. 孟子曰，子之道，貉道也。 3. 萬室之國，一人陶，則可乎。曰，不可。器不足用也。 4. 曰，夫貉五穀不生，惟黍生之，無城郭宮室宗廟祭祀之禮，無諸侯幣帛饟賑，無百官有司，故二十取一而足也。 5. 今居中國，去人倫，無君子，如之何其可也。 6. 陶以寡，且不可以為國，況無君子乎。 7. 欲輕之於堯舜之道者，大貉小貉也，欲重之於堯舜之道者，大桀小桀也。

Chap. x. 1. Pih Kwei said, "I want to take a twentieth of the produce only as the tax. What do you think of it?"

2. Mencius said, "Your way would be that of the Mih."
3. "In a country of ten thousand families, would it do to have only one potter?" Kwei replied, "No. The vessels would not be enough to use."

4. Mencius went on, "In Mih all the five kinds of grain are not grown; it only produces the millet. There are no fortified cities, no edifices, no ancestral temples, no ceremonies of sacrifice; there are no princes requiring presents and entertainments; there is no system of officers with their various subordinates. On these accounts a tax of one twentieth of the produce is sufficient there.

5. "But now it is the Middle Kingdom that we live in. To banish the relationships of men, and have no superior men;—how can such a state of things be thought of?

6. "With but few potters a kingdom cannot subsist;—how much less can it subsist without men of a higher rank than others?

7. "If we wish to make the taxation lighter than the system of Yaou and Shun, we shall just have a great Mih and a small Mih. If we wish to make it heavier, we shall just have the great Kee and the small Kee."
Chap. x. 1. Pih Kwei said, "My management of the waters is superior to that of Yu."

2. Mencius replied, "You are wrong, sir. Yu's regulation of the waters was according to the laws of water.

3. "He therefore made the four seas their receptacle, while you make the neighboring states their receptacle.

4. "Water flowing out of its channels is called an inundation. Inundating waters are a vast waste of water, and what a benevolent man detests. You are wrong, my good sir."

Chap. xii. Mencius said, "If a scholar have not faith, how shall he take a firm hold of things?"

Chap. xiii. 1. 魯欲使樂正子為政,孟子曰,吾聞之,善而不寐.
2. 公孫丑曰,樂正子強乎曰,否, 有知慮乎曰,否, 多聞識乎曰,否. 3 然則奚為善而不寐. 4. 曰,其為人也好善. 5. 好善足乎. 6. 曰, 好善優於天下 而況魯國乎. 7. 夫苟好善, 則四海之內, 皆將徙千里而來, 告之以善. 8. 夫苟不好善, 則人將曰, 誠然. 子既已知之矣, 誠然之聲音顏色, 距人於千里之外, 坐止於千里之外. 則誦誅面譴之人至矣, 善誦誅而誡之之居, 國欲治, 可得乎.

Chap. xii. 1. The prince of Loo wanting to
commit the administration of his government to the disciple Yo-ching, Mencius said, "When I heard of it, I was so glad that I could not sleep."

2. Kung-sun Ch'ow asked, "Is Yo-ching a man of vigor?" and was answered, "No." "Is he wise in council?" "No." "Is he possessed of much information?" "No."

3. "What, then, made you so glad that you could not sleep?"

4. "He is a man who loves what is good."

5. "Is the love of what is good sufficient?"

6. "The love of what is good is more than a sufficient qualification for the government of the empire;—how much more is it so for the state of Loo!"

7. "If a minister love what is good, all within the fourseas will count one thousand li but a small distance, and will come and lay their good thoughts before him.

8. "If he do not love what is good, men will say, 'How self-conceited he looks? He is saying to himself, I know it.' The language and looks of that self-conceit will keep men off at a distance of one thousand li. When good men stop one thousand li off, calumniators, flatterers, and sycophants will make their appearance. When a minister lives among calumniators, flatterers, and sycophants, though
he may wish the state to be well governed, is it possible for it to be so?"

第十四章 1. 陳子曰, 古之君子, 何如則仕。孟子曰, 所就三, 所去三。 2. 迎之致敬以有禮, 言將行其言也, 則就之。禮貌未衰, 言弗行也, 則去之。 3. 其次, 雖未行其言也, 迎之致敬以有禮, 則就之。禮貌衰, 則去之。 4. 其下, 朝不食, 夕不食, 饑餓不能出門戶, 君聞之, 曰, 吾大者, 不能行其道, 又不能從其言也, 使饑餓於我土地, 吾恥之, 周之, 亦可受也免死而已矣。

Chap. xiv 1. The disciple Ch’in said, “What were the principles on which superior men of old took office?” Mencius replied, “There were three cases in which they accepted office, and three in which they left it.

2. “If received with the utmost respect and all polite observances, and they could say to themselves that the prince would carry their words into practice, then they took office with him. Afterwards, although there might be no remission in the polite demeanor of the prince, if their words were not carried into practice, they would leave him.

3. The second case was that in which, though the prince could not be expected at once to carry their words into practice, yet being received by him with the utmost respect, they took office with him. But afterwards, if there was a remission in his polite demeanor, they
would leave him.

4. "The last case was that of the superior man who had nothing to eat, either morning or evening, and was so famished that he could not move out of his door. If the prince, on hearing of his state, said, 'I must fail in the great point,—that of carrying his doctrines into practice, neither am I able to follow his words, but I am ashamed to allow him to die of want in my country.' The assistance offered in such a case might be received, but not beyond what was sufficient to avert death."

第十五章 1. 孟子曰，舜，發於畎畝之中，傅說，舉於版築之間，膠鬲舉於魚鹽之中，管夷吾，舉於士，孫叔敖，舉於海。百里奚，舉於市。2. 故天將降大任於是人也，必先苦其心智，勞其筋骨，餓其體膚，空乏其身，行拂亂其所為，所以動心忍性，曾益其所不能。3. 人恆過，然後能改，困於心，衡於慮，而後作，徵於色，發於聲，而後喻。4. 入，則無法家拂士；出，則無敵國外患者；國恆亡。5. 然後知生於憂患，而死於安樂也。

Chap. xv. 1. Mencius said, "Shun rose from among the channeled fields. Foo Yue was called to office from the midst of his building frames; Kaou-kih, from his fish and salt; Kwan E-woo, from the hands of his jailer; Sun-shun Gaou, from his hiding by the seashore; and Pih-la He, from the market place.

2. "Thus, when Heaven is about to confer
a great office on any man, it first exercises his mind with suffering, and his sinews and bones with toil. It exposes his body to hunger, and subjects him to extreme poverty. It confounds his undertakings. By all these methods it stimulates his mind, hardens his nature, and supplies his incompetencies.

3 “Men for the most part err, and are afterwards able to reform. They are distressed in mind and perplexed in their thoughts, and then they arise to vigorous reformation. When things have been evidenced in men’s looks, and set forth in their words, then they understand them.

4. “If a prince have not about his court families attached to the laws and worthy counselors, and if abroad there are not hostile states or other external calamities, his kingdom will generally come to ruin.

5. “From these things we see how life springs from sorrow and calamity, and death from ease and pleasure.”

第十六章 孟子曰，教亦多術矣，子不屑之教诲者，是亦教诲之而已矣。

Chap. XVI. Mencius said, “There are many arts in teaching. I refuse, as inconsistent with my character, to teach a man, but I am only thereby still teaching him.”
Chap. 1. 1. Mencius said, "He who has exhausted all his mental constitution knows his nature. Knowing his nature, he knows Heaven.

2. "To preserve one's mental constitution, and nourish one's nature, is the way to serve Heaven.

3. "When neither a premature death nor long life causes a man any double-mindedness, but he waits in the cultivation of his personal character for whatever issue,—this is the way in which he establishes his Heaven-ordained being."

Chap. II. 1. Mencius said, "There is an appointment for everything. A man should receive submissively what may be correctly ascribed there to.

2. "Therefore, he who has the true idea
of what is *Heaven's* appointment will not stand beneath a precipitous wall.

3. "Death sustained in the discharge of one's duties may correctly be ascribed to the appointment of Heaven.

4. "Death under handcuffs and fetters cannot correctly be so ascribed."

第章 1. 孟子曰，求則得之，合則失之，是求有益於得也，求在我者也。 2. 求之有道，得之有命，是求無益於得也，求在於外者也。

**Chap. III.** 1. Mencius said, "When we get by our seeking and lose by our neglecting;—in that case seeking is of use to getting, and the things sought for are those which are in ourselves.

2. "When the seeking is according to the proper course, and the getting is only as appointed;—in that case the seeking is of no use to getting, and the things sought are without ourselves."

第四章 1. 孟子曰，萬物皆備於我矣。 2. 反身而誠，樂莫大焉。 3. 弧恕而行，求仁莫近焉。

**Chap. IV.** 1. Mencius said, "All things are already complete in us.

2. "There is no greater delight than to be conscious of sincerity on self-examination.

3. "If one acts with a vigorous effort at the law of reciprocity, when he seeks for
realization of perfect virtue, nothing can be closer than his approximation to it."

Chap. v. 1. Mencius said, “To act without understanding, and to do so habitually without examination, pursuing the proper path all the life without knowing its nature;—this is the way of multitudes.”

Chap. vi. Mencius said, “A man may not be without shame. When one is ashamed of having been without shame, he will afterwards not have occasion for shame.”

Chap. vii. 1. Mencius said, “The sense of shame is to a man of great importance.
2. “Those who form contrivances and versatile schemes distinguished for their autfulness, do not allow their sense of shame to come into action.
3. “When one differs from other men in not having this sense of shame, what will he have in common with them?”

Chap. vii. 1. Mencius said, “The sense of shame is to a man of great importance.
Chap. VIII. 1. Mencius said, "The able and virtuous monarchs of antiquity loved virtue and forgot power. And shall an exception be made of the able and virtuous scholars of antiquity, that they did not do the same? They delighted in their own principles, and were oblivious of the power of princes. Therefore, if kings and dukes did not show the utmost respect, and observe all forms of ceremony, they were not permitted to come frequently and visit them. If they thus found it not in their power to pay them frequent visits, how much less could they get to employ them as ministers?"

Chap. IX. 1. Mencius said to Sung Kow-ts'e'en, "Are you fond, sir, of traveling to the different courts? I will tell you about such traveling.

2. "If a prince acknowledge you and follow your counsels, be perfectly satisfied. If no one do so, be the same."

3. Kow-ts'e'en said, "What is to be done
to secure this perfect satisfaction?” Mencius replied, “Honor virtue and delight in righteousness, and so you may always be perfectly satisfied.

4. “Therefore, a scholar, though poor, does not let go his righteousness; though prosperous, he does not leave his own path.

5. “Poor and not letting righteousness go;—it is thus that the scholar holds possession of himself. Prosperous and not leaving the proper path;—it is thus that the expectations of the people are not disappointed.

6. “When the men of antiquity realized their wishes, benefits were conferred by them on the people. If they did not realize their wishes, they cultivated their personal character, and became illustrious in the world. If poor, they attended to their own virtue in solitude; if advanced to dignity, they made the whole empire virtuous as well.”

Chap. x. Mencius said, “The mass of men wait for a king Wan, and then they will receive a rousing impulse. Scholars distinguished from the mass, without a king Wan, rouse themselves.”

第十一章 孟子曰,附之以韓魏之家,如其自視欽然, 則過人遠矣.
Chap. xi. Mencius said, "Add to a man the families of Han and Wei. If he then look upon himself without being elated, he is far beyond the mass of men."

Chap. xii. Mencius said, "Let the people be employed in the way which is intended to secure their ease, and though they be toiled, they will not murmur. Let them be put to death in the way which is intended to preserve their lives, and though they die, they will not murmur at him who puts them to death."

Chap. xiii. 1. Mencius said, "Under a chief, leading all the princes, the people look brisk and cheerful. Under a true sovereign, they have an air of deep contentment.

2. "Though he slay them, they do not murmur. When he benefits them, they do not think of his merit. From day to day they make progress towards what is good, without knowing who makes them do so.

3. "Wherever the superior man passes through transformation follows: wherever he
abides, his influence is of a spiritual nature. It flows abroad above and beneath, like that of Heaven and Earth. How can it be said that he mends society but in a small way!"

第十四章 1. 孟子曰：仁言，不如仁聲之入人深也。 2. 善政，不如善教得民也。 3. 善政，民畏之，善教，民愛之，善政，得民財，善教，得民心。

Chap. xiv. 1. Mencius said, "Kindly word do not enter so deeply into men as a reputation for kindness.

2. "Good government does not lay hold of the people so much as good instructions.

3. "Good government is feared by the people, while good instructions are loved by them. Good government gets the people's wealth, while good instructions get their hearts."

第十五章 1. 孟子曰：人之所不學而能者，其良能也；所不慮而知者，其良知也。 2. 矧提之童，無不知愛其親也；及其長也，無不知敬其兄也。 3. 親親，仁也；敬長，義也；無他，達之天下也。

Chap. xv. 1. Mencius said, "The ability possessed by men without having been acquired by learning is intuitive ability, and the knowledge possessed by them without the exercise of thought is their intuitive knowledge.

2. "Children carried in the arms all know to love their parents, and when they are grown
a little, they all know to love their elder brothers.

3. "Filial affection for parents is the working of benevolence. Respect for elders is the working of righteousness. There is no other reason for those feelings:— they belong to all under heaven."

Chap. xvi. Mencius said, "When Shun was living amid the deep retired mountains, dwelling with the trees and rocks, and wandering among the deer and swine, the difference between him and the rude inhabitants of those remote hills appeared very small. But when he heard a single good word, or saw a single good action, he was like a stream or a river bursting its banks, and flowing out in an irresistible flood."

Chap. xvii. Mencius said, "Let a man not do what his own sense of righteousness tells him not to do, and let him not desire what his sense of righteousness tells him not to desire;— to act thus is all he has to do."
Chap. xviii. 1. Mencius said, "Men who are possessed of intelligent virtue and prudence in affairs will generally be found to have been in sickness and troubles.

2. "They are the friendless minister and concubine's son, who keep their hearts under a sense of peril, and use deep precautions against calamity. On this account they become distinguished for their intelligence."

Chap. xix. 1. Mencius said, "There are persons who serve the prince;—they serve the prince, that is, for the sake of his countenance and favor.

2. "There are ministers who seek the tranquillity of the state, and find their pleasure in securing that tranquillity.

3. "There are those who are the people of Heaven. They, judging that, if they were in office, they could carry out their principles, throughout the empire, proceed so to carry them out.

4. "There are those who are great men. They rectify themselves and others are
Chap. xx. 1. Mencius said, “The superior man has three things in which he delights, and to be ruler over the empire is not one of them.

2. “That his father and mother are both alive, and that the condition of his brothers affords no cause for anxiety;—this is one delight.

3. “That, when looking up, he has no occasion for shame before Heaven, and, below, he has no occasion to blush before men:—this is a second delight.

4. “That he can get from the whole empire the most talented individuals, and teach and nourish them;—this is the third delight.

5. “The superior man has three things in which he delights, and to be ruler over the empire is not one of them.”
Chap. XXI. 1. Mencius said, "Wide territory and a numerous people are desired by the superior man, but what he delights in is not here.

2. "To stand in the center of the empire, and tranquilize the people within the four seas;—the superior man delights in this, but the highest enjoyment of his nature is not here.

3. "What belongs by his nature to the superior man cannot be increased by the largeness of his sphere of action, nor diminished by his dwelling in poverty and retirement;—for this reason that it is determinately appor tioned to him by Heaven.

4. "What belongs by his nature to the superior man are benevolence, righteousness, propriety, and knowledge. These are rooted in his heart; their growth and manifestation are a mild harmony appearing in the countenance, a rich fullness in the back, and the character imparted to the four limbs. Those limbs understand to arrange themselves, without being told."
Chap. xxii. 1. Mencius said, "Pih-e, that he might avoid Chow, was dwelling on the coast of the northern sea when he heard of the rise of King Wan. He roused himself and said, "Why should I not go and follow him? I have heard that the chief of the West knows well how to nourish the old." Tae-kung, to avoid Chow, was dwelling on the coast of the eastern sea. When he heard of the rise of King Wan, he said, 'Why should I not go and follow him? I have heard that the chief of the West knows well how to nourish the old.' If there were a prince in the empire, who knew well how to nourish the old, all men of virtue would feel that he was the proper object for them to gather to.

2. "Around the homestead with its five mow, the space beneath the walls was planted with mulberry trees, with which the women nourished silkworms, and thus the old were able to have silk to wear. Each family had five brood hens and two brood sows, which were kept to their breeding seasons, and thus the old were able to have flesh to eat. The husbandmen cultivated their farms of one hundred
mow, and thus their families of eight mouths were secured against want.

3. "The expression, 'The chief of the West knows well how to nourish the old,' refers to his regulation of the fields and dwellings, his teaching them to plant the mulberry and nourish those animals, and his instructing the wives and children, so as to make them nourish their aged. At fifty, warmth cannot be maintained without silks, and at seventy flesh is necessary to satisfy the appetite. Persons not kept warm nor supplied with food are said to be starved and famished, but among the people of King Wan, there were no aged who were starved or famished. This is the meaning of the expression in question."

Chap. XXIII. 1. Mencius said, "Let it be seen to that their fields of grain and hemp are well cultivated, and make the taxes on them light;—so the people may be made rich.

2. "Let it be seen to that the people use their resources of food seasonably, and expend their wealth only on the prescribed ceremonies:—so their wealth will be more than
can be consumed.

3. "The people cannot live without water and fire, yet if you knock at a man's door in the dusk of the evening, and ask for water and fire, there is no man who will not give them, such is the abundance of these things. A sage governs the empire so as to cause pulse and grain to be as abundant as water and fire. When pulse and grain are as abundant as water and fire, how shall the people be other than virtuous?"

第二十四章 1. 孟子曰，孔子登東山而小魯，登太山而小天下，故觀於海者難為水，遊於聖人之門者，難為言。2. 視水有術，必觀其瀲，日月有明，容光必照焉。3. 流水之為物也，不盈科不行，君子之志於道也，不成章不達。

Chap. xxiv. 1. Mencius said, "Confucius ascended the eastern hill, and Loo appeared to him small. He ascended the T'ae Mountain, and all beneath the heavens appeared to him small. So, he who has contemplated the sea, finds it difficult to think anything of other waters, and he who has wandered in the gate of the sage finds it difficult to think anything of the words of others.

2. "There is an art in the contemplation of water. — It is necessary to look at it as foaming in waves. The sun and moon being possessed of brilliancy, their light admitted
even through an orifice illuminates.

3. "Flowing water is a thing which does not proceed till it has filled the hollows in its course. The student who has set his mind on the doctrines of the sage, does not advance to them but by completing one lesson after another."

第二十五章 1. 孟子曰，鵝鳴而起，孳孳為善者，舜之徒也。
2. 鵝鳴而起，孳孳為利者，蹻之徒也。 3. 欲知舜與蹻之分，無他，利與善之閒也。

Chap. xxv. 1. Mencius said, "He who rises at cockcrowing, and addresses himself earnestly to the practice of virtue, is a disciple of Shun.

2. "He who rises at cockcrowing, and addresses himself earnestly to the pursuit of gain, is a disciple of Chih.

3. "If you want to know what separates Shun from Chih, it is simply this,—the interval between the thought of gain and the thought of virtue."

第二十六章 1. 孟子曰，損子取為我，拔一毛而利天下不為也。 2. 墨子兼愛，摩頂放踵，利天下为之。 3. 子莫執中，執中為近之，執中無權，猶執一也。 4. 所惡執一者，為其敗道也，舉一而廢百也。

Chap. xxvi. 1. Mencius said, "The principle of the philosopher Yang was—'Each one for himself.' Though he might have benefited the
whole empire by plucking out a single hair, he would not have done it.

2. "The philosopher Mih loves all equally. If by rubbing smooth his whole body from the crown to the heel, he could have benefited the empire, he would have done it.

3. "Tsze-moh holds a medium between these. By holding that medium, he is nearer the right. But by holding it without leaving room for the exigency of circumstances, it becomes like their holding their one point.

4. "The reason why I hate that holding to one point is the injury it does to the way of right principle. It takes up one point and disregards a hundred others."

Chap. xxvii. 1. Mencius said, "The hungry think any food sweet, and the thirsty think the same of any drink, and thus they do not get the right taste of what they eat and drink. The hunger and thirst, in fact, injure their palate. And is it only the mouth and belly which are injured by hunger and thirst? Men's minds are also injured by them.

2. "If a man can prevent the evils of hunger and thirst from being any evils to his
mind, he need not have any sorrow about not being up with other men."

Chap. XXVIII. Mencius said, "Hwuy of Lew-hea would not for the three highest offices of state have changed his firm purpose of life."

Chap. XXIX. Mencius said, "A man with definite aims to be accomplished may be compared to one digging a well. To dig the well to a depth of seventy-two cubits, and stop without reaching the spring; is after all throwing away the well."

Chap. XXX. 1. Mencius said, "Benevolence and righteousness were natural to Yaou and Shun. T'ang and Woo made them their own. The five chiefs of the princes feigned them.

2. "Having borrowed them long and not returned them how could it be known they did not own them?"
Chap. xxxi. 1. Kung-sun Ch'ow said, "E Yin said, 'I cannot be near and see him so disobedient to reason,' and therewith he banished T'ae-kea to T'ung. The people were much pleased. When T'ae-kea became virtuous, he brought him back, and the people were again much pleased.

2. "When worthies are ministers, may they indeed banish their sovereigns in this way when they are not virtuous?"

3. Mencius replied, "If they have the same purpose as E Yin, the may. If they have not the same purpose, it would be usurpation."

第三十二章 1. 公孫丑曰，詩曰，不素餐兮，君子之不耕而食，何也。孟子曰，君子居是國也，其君用之，則安，富，尊，榮，其子弟從之，則弟，悌，忠，信，不素餐兮，孰大於是。

Chap. xxxii. 1. Kung-sun Ch'ow said, "It is said, in the 'Book of Poetry,' 'He will not eat the bread of idleness!' How is it that we see superior men eating without laboring?" Mencius replied, "When a superior man resides in a country, if its sovereign employ his counsels, he comes to tranquillity, wealth, honor, and glory. If the young in it follow his instructions, they become filial, obedient to their elders, true-hearted, and faithful. — What greater example can there
be than this of not eating the bread of idleness?"

Chap. XXXIII. 1. The king’s son, Teen, asked Mencius, saying, “What is the business of the unemployed scholar?”

2. Mencius replied, “To exalt his sim.”

3. Teen asked again, “What do you mean by exalting the aim?” The answer was, “Setting it simply on benevolence and righteousness. He thinks how to put a single innocent person to death is contrary to benevolence; how to take what one has not a right to is contrary to righteousness; that one’s dwelling should be benevolence; and one’s path should be righteousness. When benevolence is the dwelling place of the heart, and righteousness the path of the life, the business of a great man is complete.”

Chap. XXXIV. Mencius said, “Supposing that the kingdom of Ts’e were offered contrary to righteousness, to Ch’in Chung, he would not
receive it, and all people believe in him, as a man of the highest worth. But this is only the righteousness which declines a dish of rice or a platter of soup. A man can have no greater crimes than to disown his parents and relatives, and the relations of sovereign and minister, superiors and inferiors. How can it be allowed to give a man credit for the great excellencies because he possesses a small one?"

第三十五章 1. 桃應問曰，舜爲天子，皋陶爲士，瞽瞍殺人，則如之何。 2. 孟子曰，執之而已矣。 3. 然則舜不禁與。 4. 曰，夫舜惡得而禁之，夫有所受之也。 5. 然則舜如之何。 6. 曰，舜視棄天下，猶棄敝蹣也，窮負而逃，遂濱海而處，終身矜然，樂而忘天下。

Chap. xxxv. 1. Taou Ying asked, saying, "Shun being emperor, and Kaou-yaou chief minister of justice, if Koo-sow had murdered a man, what would have been done in the case?"

2. Mencius said, "Kaou-yaou would simply have apprehended him."

3. "But would not Shun have forbidden such a thing?"

4. "Indeed, how could Shun have forbidden it? Kaou-yaow had received the law from a proper source."

5. "In that case what would Shun have done?"
6. “Shun would have regarded abandoning the empire as throwing away a worn-out sandal. He would privately have taken his father on his back, and retired into concealment, living somewhere along the seacoast. There he would have been all his life, cheerful and happy, forgetting the empire.”

第三十六章 1. 孟子自范之齊，望見齊王之子，喟然歎曰，居移氣，養移體，大哉居乎，夫非盡人之子與。 2. 孟子曰，王子宮室，車馬，衣服，多與人同，而王子若彼者，其居使之然也，況居天下之廣居者乎。 3. 魯君之末，呼於垤澤之門，守者曰，此非吾君也，何其聲之似我君也，此無他，居相似也。

Chap. xxxvi. 1. Mencius, going from Fan to Ts‘e saw the king of Ts‘e’s son at a distance, and said with a sigh: “One’s position alters the air, just as the nurture affects the body. Great is the influence of position! Are not we all men’s sons?”

2. Mencius said, “The residence, the carriages and horses, and the dress of the king’s son, are mostly the same as those of other men. That he looks so is occasioned by his position. How much more should a peculiar air distinguish him whose position is in the wide house of the world!

3. “When the prince of Loo went to Sung, he called out at the Tee-chih gate, and the
keeper said, 'This is not our prince. How is it that his voice is so like that of our prince?' This was occasioned by nothing but the correspondence of their positions.'

Chap. xxxvii. 1. Mencius said, 'To feed a scholar and not love him, is to treat him as a pig. To love him and not respect him, is to keep him as a domestic animal.

2. "Honoring and respecting are what exist before any offering of gifts.

3. "If there be honoring and respecting without the reality of them, a superior man not be retained by such empty demonstrations.'

Chap. xxxviii. Mencius said, "The bodily organs with their functions belong to our Heavenconfounded nature. But a man must be a sage before he can satisfy the design of his bodily organization."
Chap. XXXIX. 1. The King Seuen of Tse wanted to shorten the period of mourning. Kung-sun Ch'ow said, "To have one whole year's mourning is better than doing away with it altogether."

2. Mencius said, "That is just as if there were one twising the arm of his elder brother, and you were merely to say to him—'Gently, gently, if you please. Your only course should be to teach such a one filial piety and fraternal duty'."

3. At that time, the mother of one of the king's sons had died, and his tutor asked for him that he might be allowed to observe a few months' mourning. Kung-sun Ch'ow asked: "What do you say of this?"

4. Mencius replied, "This is a case where the party wishes to complete the whole period, but finds it impossible to do so. The addition of even a single day is better than not mourning at all. I spoke of the case where there was no hindrance, and the party neglected the thing himself."

Chap. XL. 1. Mencius said, "There are five ways in which the superior man effects his..."
teaching.

2. "There are some on whom his influence descends like seasonable rain.

3. "There are some whose virtue he perfects, and some of whose talents he assists the development.

4. "There are some whose inquiries he answers.

5. "There are some who privately cultivate and correct themselves.

6. "These five ways are the methods in which the superior man effects his teaching."

Chap. xli. 1. Kung-sun Ch'ow said, "Lofty are your principles and admirable, but to learn them may well be likened to ascending the heavens, something which cannot be reached. Why not adapt your teaching so as to cause learners to consider them attainable, and so daily exert themselves."

2. Mencius said, "A great artificer does not, for the sake of a stupid workman, alter or do away with the marking line. E did not, for the sake of a stupid archer, change his rule for drawing the bow."
3. "The superior man draws the bow, but does not discharge the arrow. The whole thing seems to leap before the learner. Such is his standing exactly in the middle of the right path. Those who are able, follow him."

Chap. xlili. 1. Mencius said, "When right principles prevail throughout the empire, one's principles must appear along with one's person. When right principles disappear from the empire, one's person must vanish along with one's principles.

2. "I have not heard of one's principles being dependent for their manifestation on other men."

Chap. xliii. 1. The disciple Kung-too said, "When Kang of T'ang made his appearance in your school, it seemed proper that a polite consideration should be paid to him, and yet you did not answer him. Why was that?"

2. Mencius replied, "I do not answer him who questions me resuming on his nobility, nor him who presumes on his talents, nor him who presumes on his age, nor him who presumes..."
on services performed to me, nor him who presumes on old acquaintance. Two of those things were chargeable on Kang of T'ang."

Chap. XLIV. 1. Mencius said, "He who stops short where stopping is not allowable, will stop short in everything. He who behaves shabbily to those whom he ought to treat well, will behave shabbily to all.

2. "He who advances with precipitation will retire with speed."

Chap. XLV. Mencius said, "In regard to inferior creatures, the superior man is kind to them, but not loving. In regard to people generally, he is loving to them, but not affectionate. He is affectionate to his parents, and lovingly disposed to people generally. He is lovingly disposed to people generally, and kind to creatures."

Chap. XLVI. 1. Mencius said, "The wise em-
brace all knowledge, but they are most earnest about what is of the greatest importance. The benevolent embrace all in their love, but what they consider of the greatest importance is to cultivate an earnest affection for virtuous. Even the wisdom of Yaou Shun did not extend to everything, but they attended earnestly to what was important. Their benevolence did not show itself in acts of kindness to every man, but they earnestly cultivated an affection for the virtuous.

2. “Not to be able to keep the three years’ mourning, and to be very particular about that of three months, or that of five months; to eat immoderately and swill down the soup, and at the same time to inquire about the precept not to tear the meat with the teeth;—such things show what I call an ignorance of what is most important.”

BOOK VII
TSIN SIN: PART II

第一章 1. 孟子曰，不仁哉，梁惠王也，仁者，以其所愛，及其所不愛，不仁者，以其所不愛，及其所愛。2. 公孫丑曰，何謂也，梁惠王以土地之故，糜爛其民而戰之，大敗，將復之，恐不能勝，故驅其所愛子弟以殉之，是之謂以其所不愛，
Chap. 1. Mencius said, "The opposite indeed of benevolent was the king Hwuy of Leang! The benevolent, beginning with what they care for, proceed to what they do not care for. Those who are the opposite of benevolent, beginning with what they do not care for, proceed to what they care for."

2. Kung-sun Ch’ow said, "What do you mean?" Mencius answered, "The king Hwuy of Leang, for the matter of territory, tore and destroyed his people, leading them to battle. Sustaining a great defeat, he would engage again, and afraid lest they should not be able to secure the victory, urged his son whom he loved till he sacrificed him with them. This is what I call—‘beginning with what they do not care for, and proceeding to what they care for.’"

Chap II. 1 Mencius said, "In the ‘Spring and Autumn there are no righteous wars. Instances indeed there are of one war better than another.

2 "'Correction' is when the supreme authority punishes its subjects by force of arms. Hostile states do not correct one another."
Chap. 111. 1. Mencius said, "It would be better to be without the 'Book of History' than to give entire credit to it.

2. "In the 'Completion of the War,' I select two or three passages only, which I believe.

3. "The benevolent man has no enemy under heaven. When the prince, the most benevolent, was engaged against him who was the opposite, how could the blood of the people have flowed till it floated the pestles of the mortars?"

Chap IV. 1. Mencius said, "There are men who say—'I am skillful at marshaling troops, I am skillful at conducting a battle!'—They are great criminals.

2. "If the sovereign of a state love benevolence, he will have no enemy in the empire.

3. "When Tang was executing his work of correction in the south, the rude tribes on
the north murmured. When he was executing it in the east, the rude tribes on the west murmured. Their cry was—'Why does he make us last?'

4. "When King Woo punished Yin, he had only three hundred chariots of war, and three thousand life guards.

5. "The king said, "Do not fear. Let me give you repose. I am no enemy to the people! On this, they bowed their heads to the earth, like the horns of animals falling off.

6. "'Imperial correction' is but another word for rectifying. Each state wishing itself to be corrected, what need is there for fighting?"

第五章 孟子曰，梓匠，輪，輈，能與人規矩，不能使人巧。

Chap. V. Mencius—said, "A carpenter or a carriage maker may give a man the circle and square, but cannot make him skillful in the use of them."

第六章 孟子曰，舜之敟糗茹草也，若將終身焉，及其於天子也，被絖冕，鼓琴，二女果，若固有之。

Chap. VI. Mencius said, "Shun's manner of eating his parched grain and herbs was as if he were to be doing so all his life. When he became emperor, and had the embroidered robes to wear, the lute to play, and the two daughters of Yaou to wait on him, he was as
if those things belonged to him as a matter of course."

Chap. vii. Mencius said, "From this time forth I know the heavy consequences of killing a man's near relations. When a man kills another's father, that other will kill his father; when a man kills another's elder brother, that other will kill his elder brother. So he does not himself indeed do the act, but there is only an interval between him and it."

Chap. viii. 1. Mencius said, "Anciently, the establishment of the frontier gates was to guard against violence.

   2. "Nowadays, it is to exercise violence."

Chap. ix. Mencius said, "If a man himself do not walk in the right path, it will not be walked in even by his wife and children. If he do not order men according to the right way, he will not be able to get the obedience of even his wife and children."
Chap. x. Mencius said, "A bad year cannot prove the cause of death to him, whose stores of gain are large; an age of corruption cannot confound him whose equipment of virtue is complete."

Chap. xi. Mencius said, "A man who loves fame may be able to decline a kingdom of a thousand chariots, but if he be not really the man to do such a thing, it will appear in his countenance, in the matter of a dish of rice or a platter of soup."

Chap. xii. 1. Mencius said, "If men of virtue and ability be not confided in, a state will become empty and void.

2. "Without the rules of propriety and distinctions of right, the high and the low will be thrown into confusion.

3. "Without the great principles of government and their various business, there will not be wealth sufficient for the expenditure."
Chap. xiii. Mencius said, "There are instances of individuals without benevolence, who have got possession of a single state, but there has been no instance of the whole empire's being got possession of by one without benevolence."

第十四章 1. 孟子曰,民為貴,社稷次之,君為輕。 2. 是故得乎丘民,而為天子,得乎天子,為諸侯。得乎諸侯,為大夫。 3. 諸侯危社稷,則變置。 4. 犧牲既成,粢盛既洁,祭祀以時,然而旱乾水溢,則變置社稷。  

Chap. xiv. 1. Mencius said, "The people are the most important element in a nation; the spirits of the land and grain are the next; the sovereign is the lightest.  

2. "Therefore to gain the peasantry is the way to become emperor; to gain the emperor is the way to become a prince of a state; to gain the prince of a state is the way to become a great officer.  

3. "When a prince endangers the altars of the spirits of the land and grain, he is changed, and another appointed in his place.  

4. "When the sacrificial victims have been perfect, the millet in its vessels all pure, and the sacrifices offered at their proper seasons, if yet there ensue drought, or the waters overflow, the spirits of the land and grain are changed, and others appointed in their place."
Chap. xv  Mencius said, "A sage is the teacher of a hundred generations:—this is true of Pih-e and Hwuy of Lew-hea. Therefore when men now hear the character of Pih-e, the corrupt become pure, and the weak acquire determination. When they hear the character of Hwuy of Lew-hea, the mean become generous, and the niggardly become liberal. Those two made themselves distinguished hundred generations ago, and after a hundred generations, those who hear of them, are all aroused in this manner. Could such effects be produced by them, if they had not been sages? And how much more did they affect those who were in contiguity with them, and were warmed by them!"

Chap. xvi. Mencius said, "Benevolence is the distinguishing characteristic of man. As embodied in man's conduct, it is called the path of duty."
Chap. xvii. Mencius said, “When Confucius was leaving Loo, he said, ‘I will set out by and by’;—this was the way for him to leave the state of his parents. When he was leaving Ts'e, he strained off with his hand the water in which his rice was being rinsed, took the rice, and went away;—this was the way for him to leave a strange state.”

第十八章 孟子曰，君子之居於陳蔡之閒，無上下之交也。

Chap. xviii. Mencius said, “The reason why the superior man was reduced to straits between Ch'in and Ts'ae was because neither the princes of the time nor their ministers communicated with him.”

第十九章 1. 穎稽曰，稽，大不應於口。2. 孟子曰，無傷也，士憎茲多口。3. 詩云，憂心悄悄，懼于聰小，孔子也，肆不殄厥愠，亦不隕厥問，文王也。

Chap. xix. 1. Mih K' e said, “Greatly and I from anything to depend upon from the mouths of men.”

2. Mencius observed, “There is no harm in that. Scholars are more exposed than others to suffer from the mouths of men.

3. “It is said, in the ‘Book of Poetry.’

‘My heart is disquieted and grieved,
I am hated by the crowd of mean creatures.

This might have been said by Confucius. And
again,

‘Though he did not remove their wrath,
He did not let fall his own fame.’

This might be said of King Wan.’

Chap. xx. Mencius said, “Anciently, men of virtue and talents by means of their own enlightenment made others enlightened. Nowadays, it is tried, while they are themselves in darkness, and by means of that darkness, to make others enlightened.”

Chap. xxI. Mencius said to the disciple Kaou, “There are the footpaths along the hills;—if suddenly they be used, they become roads; and if, as suddenly they are not used, the wild grass fills them up. Now, the wild grass fills up your mind.”

Chap xxII. 1. The disciple Kaou said, “The music of Yu was better than that of King Wan.”
2. Mencius observed, “On what ground do you say so?” and the other replied, “Because at the pivot the knob of Yu’s bells is nearly worn through.”

3. Mencius said, “How can that be a sufficient proof? Are the ruts at the gate of a city made by a single two-horsed chariot?

第二十三章 1. 齊饑，陳臻曰，國人皆以夫子將復為發棠，殆不可復。 2. 孟子曰，是為馮婦也，晉人有馮婦者，善搏虎。卒為善士，則之野，有衆逐虎，虎負嵎，莫之敢撄。望見馮婦，趨而迎之。馮婦攘臂下車，衆皆悅之。其爲士者笑之。

Chap. XXIII. 1. When Ts'e was suffering from famine, Chin Tsin said to Mencius, “The people are all thinking that you, Master, will again ask that the granary of T’ang be opened for them. I apprehend you will not do so a second time.”

2. Mencius said, “To do it would be to act like Fung Foo. There was a man of that name in Tsin, famous for his skill in seizing tigers. Afterwards, he became a scholar of reutation, and going once out to the wild country, he found the people all in pursuit of a tiger. The tiger took refuge in a corner of a hill, where no one dared to attack him, but when they saw Fung Foo, they ran and met him. Fung Foo immediately raised his arms, and descended from the carriage. The mult-
itute were pleased with him, but those who were scholars laughed at him."

第二十四章 1. 孟子曰，口之於味也，目之於色也，耳之於聲也，鼻之於臭也，四肢之於安佚也，性也。有命焉，君子不謂性也。 2. 仁之於父子也，義之於君臣也，禮之於賓主也，智之於賢者也，聖人之於天道也，命也。有性焉，君子不謂命也。

Chap. xxiv. 1. Mencius said, "For the mouth to desire sweet tastes, the eye to desire beautiful colors, the ear to desire pleasant sounds, the nose to desire fragrant odors, and the four limbs to desire ease and rest;—these things are natural. But there is the appointment of Heaven in connection with them, and the superior man does not say of his pursuit of them, 'It is my nature.'

2. "The exercise of love between father and son, the observance of righteousness between sovereign and minister, the rules of ceremony between guest and host, the display of knowledge in recognizing the talented, and the fulfilling the heavenly course by the sage;—these are the appointment of Heaven. But there is an adaptation of our nature for them. The superior man does not say, in reference to them, 'It is the appointment of Heaven.'"
Chap. xxv. 1. Haou-sang Puh-hae asked, saying, "What sort of man is Yo-ching?" Mencius replied, "He is a good man, a real man."

2. "What do you mean by 'A good man.' A real man'?"

3. The reply was, "A man who commands our liking is what is called a good man.

4. "He whose goodness is part of himself is what is called a real man.

5. "He whose goodness has been filled up is what is called a beautiful man.

6. "He whose completed goodness is brightly displayed is what is called a great man.

7. "When this great man exercises a transforming influence, he is what is called a sage.

8. "When the sage is beyond our knowledge, he is what is called a spirit man.

9. "Yo-ching is between the two first characters, and below the four last."
Chap. xxvi. 1. Mencius said, "Those who are fleeing from the errors of Mih naturally turn to Yang, and those who are fleeing from the errors of Yang naturally turn to orthodoxy. When they so turn, they should at once and simply be received.

2. "Those who nowadays dispute with the followers of Yang and Mih, do so as if they were pursuing a stray pig, the leg of which after they have got it to enter the pen, they proceed to 'tie.'"
Chap. xxix. P'wan-shing Kwoh having obtained an official situation in Ts'e Mencius said, "He is a dead man,—P'wan-shing Kwoh!" P'wan-shing Kwoh being put to death, the disciples asked, saying, "How did you know, Master, that he would meet with death?" Mencius replied, "He was a man who had a little ability, but had not learned the great doctrines of the superior man.—He was just qualified to bring death upon himself, but for nothing more."

Chap. xxx. 1. When Mencius went to T'ang, he was lodged in the upper palace. A sandal in the process of making had been placed there in a window, and when the keeper of the place came to look for it, he could not find it.

2. On this, some one asked Mencius, saying, "Is it thus that your followers pilfer?" Mencius replied, "Do you think that they came here to pilfer the sandal?" The man said,
"I apprehend not. But you, Masthr, having arranged to give lessons, do not go back to inquire into the past, and you do not reject those who come to you. If they come with the mind to learn, you receive them without any more ado."

第十一章 1. 孟子曰, 人皆有所不忍, 達之於其所忍, 仁也。人皆有所不為, 達之於其所為, 義也。2. 人能充無欲害人之心, 而仁不可勝用也, 人能充無穿窬之心, 而義不可勝用也。3. 人能充無受爾汝之實, 無所往而不為義也。4. 士未可以言而言, 是以言過之也。可以言而不言, 是以不言過之也, 是皆穿窬之類也。

Chap. xxxi. Mencius said, "All men have some things which they cannot bear;—extend that feeling to what they can bear, and benevolence will be the result. All men have some things which they will not do;—extend that feeling to the things which they do, and righteousness will be the result."

2. "If a man can give full development to the feeling which makes him shrink from injuring others, his benevolence will be more than can be called into practice. If he can give full development to the feeling which refuses to break through, or jump over, a wall, his righteousness will be more than can be called into practice.

3. "If he can give full development to the
real feeling of dislike with which he receives the salutation, 'Thou,' 'Thou,' he will act righteous ly in all places and circumstance.

4. "When a scholar speaks what he ought not to speak, by guile of speech seeking to gain some end; and when he does not speak what he ought to speak, by guile of silence seeking to gain some end;—both these cases are of a piece with breaking through a neighbour's wall.'

Chap. XXXII. 1. Mencius said, "Words which are simple, while their meaning is far-reaching, are good words. Principles which, as held, are compendious, while their application is extensive, are good principles. The words of the superior man do not go below the girdle, but great principles are contained in them.

2. "The principle which the superior man holds is that of personal cultivation, but the empire is thereby tranquilized."

3. "The disease of men is this: that they neglect their own fields, and go to weed the fields of others, and that what they require from others is great, while what they lay upon
THE WORKS OF MENCİUS

第十三章 1. 孟子曰, 堯舜, 性者也, 湯武, 反之也。 2. 勤容 周旋中禮者, 盛德之至也。 哭死而哀, 非為生者也。 經德不同, 非以干祿也。 言語必信, 非以正行也。 3. 君子行法以 俟命而已矣。

Chap. xxxiii. 1. Mencius said, "Yaou and Shun were what they were by nature; T'ang and Woo were so by returning to natural virtue.

2. "When all the movements, in the countenance and every turn of the body, are exactly what is proper, that shows the extreme degree of the complete virtue. Weeping for the dead should be from real sorrow, and not because of the living. The regular path of virtue is to be pursued without any bend, and from no view to emolument. The word of should all necessarily sincere, not with any desire to do what is right."

3. "The superior man performs the law of right, in order that he may wait simply for what has been appointed."

第三十四章 1. 孟子曰, 堯長則處之, 勿視其巍巍然。 2. 堂高數仞, 橈屋數尺, 我得志, 弗為也, 食前方丈, 侍妾數百人, 我得志, 弗為也, 慶樂飲酒, 驅騁田獵, 後車千乘, 我得志, 弗為也, 在彼者, 皆我所不為也, 在我者, 皆古之制也, 吾 何異於彼哉。
Chap. xxxiv. 1. Mencius said, "Those who give counsel to the great should despise them, and not look at their pomp and display.

2. "Halls several times eight cubits high, with beams projecting several cubits;—these, if my wishes were to be realized, I would not have. Food spread before me over ten cubits square, and attendant girls to the amount of hundreds;—these, though my wishes were realized, I would not have. Pleasure and wine, and the dash of hunting, with thousands of chariots following after me;—these, though my wishes were realized, I would not have. What they esteem are what I would have nothing to do with; what I esteem are the rules of the ancients. — Why should I stand in awe of them?"

第三十五章 孟子曰，養心，莫善於寡欲。其為人也，寡欲。雖有不存焉者，寡矣。其為人也多欲，雖有存焉者寡矣。

Chap. xxxv. Mencius said, "To nourish the heart there is nothing better than to make the desires few. Here is a man whose desires are few: in some things he may not be able to keep his heart, but they will be few. Here is a man whose desires are many: in some things he may be able to keep his heart, but they will be few."

第三十六章 1. 曾皙嗜羊棗，而曾子不忍食羊棗。2. 公孫
Chap. XXXVI. 1. Mencius said, “Tsang Seih was fond of sheep dates, and his son, the philosopher Tsang, could not bear to eat sheep dates.”

2. Kung-sun Ch‘ow asked, saying, “Which is best,—minced meat and roasted meat, or sheep dates?” Mencius said, “Minced and roasted meat, to be sure.” Kung-sun Ch‘ow went on, “Then why did the philosopher Tsang eat minced and roasted meat, while he would not eat sheep dates?” Mencius answered, “For minced and roasted meat there is a common liking, while that for sheep dates was peculiar. We avoid the name, but do not avoid the surname. The surname is common; the name is peculiar.”
Chap. xxxvii. 1. Wan Chand asked, saying, “Confucius, when he was in Ch’in, said, ‘Let me return. The scholars of my school are ambitious but hasty. They are for advancing and seizing their object, but cannot forget their early ways.’ Why did Confucius, when he was in Ch’in, think of the ambitious scholars of Loo?”

2. Mencius replied, “Confucius not getting men pursuing the true medium, to whom he might communicate his instructions, determined to take the ardent and the cautiously-decided. The ardent would advance to seize their object; the cautiously-decided would keep themselves from certain things. It is not to be thought...
that Confucius did not wish to get men pursuing the true medium, but being unable to assure himself of finding such, he therefore thought of the next class."

3. "I venture to ask what sort of men they were who could be styled 'The ambitious'?

4. 'Such,' replied Mencius, "as K'in Chang Tsang Seih, and Muh P'ei, were those whom Confucius styled 'ambitious.'"

5. 'Why were they styled 'ambitious'?

6. The reply was, "Their aim led them to talk magniloquently, saying, 'The ancients!' 'The ancients!' But their actions, compared with their words, did not come up to them."

7. "When he found also that he could not get such as were thus ambitious, he wanted to get scholars who would consider anything impure as beneath them. Those were the cautiously-decided, —a class next to the former."

8. Chang pursued his questioning, "Confucius said, 'They are only your good careful people of the villages at whom I feel no indignation, when they pace my door without entering my house. Your good careful people of the villages are the thieves of virtue.' What sort of people were they who could be styled 'Your good careful people of the villages'?

9. Mencius replied, "They are those who
say, 'Why are they so magniloquent? Their words have not respect to their actions, and their actions have not respect to their words, but they say,—The ancients! The ancients! Why do they act so peculiarly, and are so cold and distant? Born in this age, we should be of this age, to be good is all that is needed.' Eunuchlike, flattering their generation;—such are your good careful men of the villages.'

10. Wan Chang said, "Their whole village styles those men good and careful. In all their conduct they are so. How was it that Confucius considered them the thieves of virtue?"

11. Mencius replied, "If you would blame them, you find nothing to allege. If you would criticize them, you have nothing to criticize. They agree with the current customs. They consent with an impure age. Their principles have a semblance of right-heartedness and truth. Their conduct has a semblance of disinterestedness and purity. All men are pleased with them, and they think themselves right, so that it is impossible to proceed with them to the principles of Yaou and Shun. On this account they are called 'The thieves of virtue.'"

12. "Confucius said, 'I hate a semblance which is not the reality. I hate the darnel,
llest it be confounded with the corn. I hate glib-tonguedness, lest it be confounded with righteousness. I hate sharpness of tongue, lest it be confounded with sincerity. I hate the music of Ch'ing, lest it be confounded with the true music. I hate the reddish blue, lest it be confounded with vermilion. I hate your good careful men of the villages, lest they be confounded with the truly virtuous.'

13. "The superior man seeks simply to bring back the unchanging standard, and that being rectified, the masses are roused to virtue. When they are so aroused, forthwith perversities and glossed wickedness disappear."

第三十八章 1. 孟子曰,由堯舜至於湯,五百有餘歲,若禹,皋陶,則見而知之,若湯,則聞而知之。2. 由湯至於文王,五百餘歲,若伊尹,姜太公,則見而知之,若文王,則聞而知之。3. 由王至於孔子,五百有餘歲,若太公望,號宜生,則見而知之,若孔子,則聞而知之。4. 由孔子而來,至於今,百有餘歲,去聖人之世,若此其未遠也,近聖人之居,若此其甚也,然而無有乎爾,則亦無有乎爾。

Chap. xxxviii. 1. Mencius said, "From Yaou and Shun down to T'ang were five hundred years and more. As to Yu and Kaou-yaou, they saw those earliest sages, and so knew their doctrines, while T'ang heard their doctrines as transmitted, and so knew them."
2. "From T'ang to King Wan were five hundred years and more. As to E Yin and Lae Choo, they saw T'ang and knew his doctrines, while King Wan heard them as transmitted, and so knew them.

3. "From King Wan to Confucius were five hundred years and more. As to T'ae-kung Wang and San E-sang, they saw Wan, and so knew his doctrines, while Confucius heard them as transmitted, and so knew them.

4. "From Confucius downwards until now, there are only one hundred years and somewhat more. The distance in time from the sage is so far from being remote, and so very near at hand was the sage's residence. In these circumstances, is there no one to transmit his doctrines? Yea, is there no one to do so?"
華英對照四書

出版者：萬國出版社

發行人：合群書局

經售者：各大書局

平裝本身定價港幣四元
精裝本身定價港幣六元
PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

PL  Ssu shu
2463  The four books
N55